

# Development of Learner and Teaching Learning Process

DEDU402

Edited by:  
Dinesh Kumar



**L** OVELY  
**P** ROFESSIONAL  
**U** NIVERSITY



# **DEVELOPMENT OF LEARNER AND TEACHING LEARNING PROCESS**

Edited By  
Dinesh Kumar

Printed by  
**LAXMI PUBLICATIONS (P) LTD.**  
113, Golden House, Daryaganj,  
New Delhi-110002  
for  
Lovely Professional University  
Phagwara

## SYLLABUS

### Development of Learner and Teaching Learning Process

*Objectives:*

- To acquire knowledge about the diverse changes during various stages of human development.
- To acquaint themselves with the educational implications of various concepts of Psychology.
- To understand the nature and process of learning and the factors responsible for teaching-learning process.

Sr. No.	Content
1	Psychology: Meaning, nature, branches and schools of Psychology; Educational Psychology: Meaning, nature and scope; Methods of Educational Psychology: Observation, Experimental, Case Study.
2	Growth and development –Meaning and Principles; Stage specific development: Infancy, childhood and Adolescence; Learning: Meaning, Nature and Process; Nature of teaching and learning, factors affecting teaching-learning process
3	Theories of learning: Thorndike’s theory of learning and its educational implications, Pavlov’s classical conditioning and its educational implications, Skinner’s operant conditioning theory and its educational implications, Insightful learning theory and its educational implications.
4	Transfer of learning: meaning, types and strategies to achieve maximum positive transfer of Learning; Motivation: Meaning, types and techniques of motivating learner.
5	Intelligence: Meaning, nature and types, Measurement of Intelligence, Theories of Intelligence: Unifactor, Two factor, multifactor theory, SOI and their educational implications
6	Memory: meaning, types, factors influencing memory;Forgetting: Meaning, types and theories of forgetting; the trace decay theory, interface theory and repression theory
7	Individual differences: Meaning, types and their educational implications, Factors influencing individual differences, Personality: Meaning, nature types of Personality, Assessment of personality; Creativity: Meaning, concept and measurement;
8	Mental health: Meaning, definition, factors influencing mental health. Stress: Meaning,

	Types of stress and stress management strategies. Anxiety: Meaning, types & causes.
<b>9</b>	Adjustment: Concept, types and mechanism of adjustment; Adolescence: characteristics, problems, needs & aspirations; Behavioural problems: Concepts, some common behavioural problem of students, their preventive and remedial measures.
<b>10</b>	Attitude: Concept, factors influencing formation of attitude and measurement of attitude; Aptitude: Meaning, nature, classification and measurement of Aptitude; Psychology of thinking, reasoning and problem solving: meaning, nature and factors affecting thinking, reasoning and problem solving.

## CONTENT

<b>Unit 1:</b>	Nature, Branches and Schools of Psychology <i>Dinesh Kumar, Lovely Professional University</i>	1
<b>Unit 2:</b>	Educational Psychology : Meaning, Nature and Scope <i>Dinesh Kumar, Lovely Professional University</i>	17
<b>Unit 3:</b>	Methods of Educational Psychology <i>Dinesh Kumar, Lovely Professional University</i>	25
<b>Unit 4:</b>	The General Nature of Growth and Development <i>Kulwinder Pal, Lovely Professional University</i>	33
<b>Unit 5:</b>	Stages of Development <i>Kulwinder Pal, Lovely Professional University</i>	39
<b>Unit 6:</b>	Learning <i>Kulwinder Pal, Lovely Professional University</i>	57
<b>Unit 7:</b>	Nature of Education Theory <i>Dinesh Kumar, Lovely Professional University</i>	65
<b>Unit 8:</b>	Theories of Learning : Thorndike’s Theory of Learning and its Educational Implications <i>Dinesh Kumar, Lovely Professional University</i>	72
<b>Unit 9:</b>	Pavlov’s Conditioned Theory and its Educational Implications <i>Kulwinder Pal, Lovely Professional University</i>	82
<b>Unit 10:</b>	Skinner’s Operant Conditioning Theory <i>Kulwinder Pal, Lovely Professional University</i>	89
<b>Unit 11:</b>	Kohler’s Insight Theory <i>Dinesh Kumar, Lovely Professional University</i>	98
<b>Unit 12:</b>	Transfer of Training or Learning <i>Dinesh Kumar, Lovely Professional University</i>	105
<b>Unit 13:</b>	Motivation in Learning <i>Dinesh Kumar, Lovely Professional University</i>	112
<b>Unit 14:</b>	Nature and Theories of Intelligence <i>Kulwinder Pal, Lovely Professional University</i>	119
<b>Unit 15:</b>	Intelligence Tests <i>Kulwinder Pal, Lovely Professional University</i>	125
<b>Unit 16:</b>	Theories of Intelligence <i>Kulwinder Pal, Lovely Professional University</i>	138
<b>Unit 17:</b>	Memory <i>Dinesh Kumar, Lovely Professional University</i>	146

<b>Unit 18:</b>	Forgetting <i>Dinesh Kumar, Lovely Professional University</i>	153
<b>Unit 19:</b>	Nature, Types and Development of Personality <i>Dinesh Kumar, Lovely Professional University</i>	162
<b>Unit 20:</b>	Measurement of Personality <i>Kulwinder Pal, Lovely Professional University</i>	170
<b>Unit 21:</b>	Creativity <i>Kulwinder Pal, Lovely Professional University</i>	177
<b>Unit 22:</b>	Attitude <i>Dinesh Kumar, Lovely Professional University</i>	187
<b>Unit 23:</b>	Aptitude <i>Dinesh Kumar, Lovely Professional University</i>	224
<b>Unit 24:</b>	Individual Differences <i>Dinesh Kumar, Lovely Professional University</i>	230
<b>Unit 25:</b>	Factors affecting Individual differences <i>Kulwinder Pal, Lovely Professional University</i>	238
<b>Unit 26:</b>	Mental health <i>Dinesh Kumar, Lovely Professional University</i>	241
<b>Unit 27:</b>	Meaning and Characteristics of Stress <i>Dinesh Kumar, Lovely Professional University</i>	247
<b>Unit 28:</b>	Anxiety <i>Kulwinder Pal, Lovely Professional University</i>	266
<b>Unit 29:</b>	Adjustment <i>Dinesh Kumar, Lovely Professional University</i>	274
<b>Unit 30:</b>	Adolescence <i>Dinesh Kumar, Lovely Professional University</i>	283
<b>Unit 31:</b>	Behavioral Problems <i>Kulwinder Pal, Lovely Professional University</i>	294
<b>Unit 32:</b>	Thinking, Reasoning and Problem- Solving <i>Kulwinder Pal, Lovely Professional University</i>	300

## Unit-1: Nature, Branches and Schools of Psychology

### CONTENTS

Objectives

Introduction

- 1.1 Meaning of Psychology
- 1.2 The Scope and Methods of Psychology
- 1.3 Psychology is a Science
- 1.4 Branches of Psychology
- 1.5 Summary
- 1.6 Keywords
- 1.7 Review Questions
- 1.8 Further Readings

### Objectives

After going through this unit, the students will be able to—

- Understand the meaning, scope and methods of Psychology.
- Understand Psychology is a Science.
- Collect the information of various branches of Psychology.

### Introduction

Psychology is the study of human behavior. The basis of the study of Psychology is the micro study of the inner mental incidents that takes place within a human mind. The human behavior is both natural and acquired thus the two are studied in the scientific ways within the fold of Psychology. Animal behavior is studied as well so that a comparison can be drawn between the human and the animal behavior and the inferences drawn are conclusive. Various fields and techniques have been developed to study human behavior.

### 1.1 Meaning of Psychology

The word Psychology has been derived from two Greek words—'Psyche' which means soul and 'logos' which means study. According to the literal meaning of Psychology is a subject that studies

**Notes**

about the soul. The ancient famous philosophers like Aristotle and Plato considered Psychology a subject that studies about the soul by keeping its literal meaning. The definition given by these ancient thinkers and philosophers is now considered obsolete as historical definition.

The philosophers of the 17<sup>th</sup> and 18<sup>th</sup> century like Leibnitz, Hobbes, Locke, Kant, Hume etc. are worth mentioning. These philosophers said that the word 'Psyche' is mind and the object of study of Psychology is 'Mind'. Therefore, Psychology was accepted as the study of mental science in other words study of mind. Till 1870 the definition given by these philosophers was accepted and psychology was studied as a branch of Philosophy and the object of study was the mind.

There were primarily two defects found in the definition given by these Philosophers. First, 'Soul' and 'Mind'. Mind is an abstract object that can neither be seen nor heard. Therefore, the study through scientific techniques is not possible nor any kind of practical can be applied on it. Second, after accepting psychology as study of mind or soul its object remains unclear as these words are used in different meanings and it is difficult to say in which context it is used in Psychology.

As mentioned earlier psychology was a branch of philosophy. In 1879 Wilhelm Wundt set up a first laboratory of philosophy in the Lipzing University (later the name changed to Karl Marx University) in Germany. Gradually psychology came to be a different subject, different from Philosophy. As a result the subject matter of psychology ceased to be not mind or the soul but 'mental activities' or the Conscious Experience. The Psychologists who advocated this theory of psychology are called Structuralists. Wilhelm Wundt and Titchener are the standing pioneers of this theory. According to them Psychology is the study of the Conscious Experience and the Immediate Experience. Here the meaning of conscious experience or immediate experience is related to sensation, imagination, image, feeling and other mental activities. According to Wundt sensation was called as the objective element of conscious experience whereas feeling, the subjective element of conscious experience. But there were many defects found in this definition of structuralists. The major defect was described that, because the conscious experience cannot be studied through objective method, hence this definition of psychology is not able to explain the practical nature of psychology. This definition only emphasizes on the study of conscious experience, however all experiences of human are not conscious but they are mainly conscious. So this definition does not give a clear picture that psychology studies all the aspects of human mind or not.

Since there were many defects in the definition of structuralists so another definition of psychology was introduced by behaviourists, J. B. Watson is important among the behaviourists. They accepted psychology as positive science of behavior. This definition clarifies that conscious experience was diversified from the object of psychology and behavior replaced it, which was more objective because that can be seen and heard, Running, crying, smiling, thinking etc are the few main examples of behavior. In this definition, Psychology was accepted as positive science, because it studies all three aspects such as what, why, and how related to the behavior. In this definition the main defect was described that the behavior alone is meaningless. The fact is that the explanation of any kind of behavior is based on the basis of our own experiences then only we get the real meaning.

The meaning of Psychology introduced by the Modern Psychologists is seems to be the juncture of both the definitions mentioned above. Atkinson, Smith and Hilgard have said describing Psychology – "Psychology is the scientific study of behavior and mental process." This definition clarifies that Psychology is not only the study of behavior but also studies about those mental processes that cannot be seen but only assumed on the basis of the behavior. Morgan, King, Weisz and Schopler have also clarified that psychology is the science of study of human and animal behavior. They have further clarified that while calling Psychology a science of behavior, mind or internal mental events are not being differentiated but it is also included in the same. In the words of Morgan, King, Weisz and Scoplal - "When we define psychology as a science of behavior we do not differentiate mind we only say that whatever human does means his behavior is the avenue through which the study of internal mental event is been done."

Thus, we can say that in the modern era Psychology means a science in which both behavior and mental processes are studied.

Notes

## 1.2 The Scope and Methods of Psychology

### The Nature of Psychology

To understand the importance of the subject Psychology it is necessary to understand its nature. To understand the nature we have to find out that what is Psychology all about, what kind of science it is, its branches, what are its purposes and problems? What is human according to psychology and what is the contribution of psychology to the mankind? By studying these aspects the nature of psychology can be understood properly.

In the beginning for centuries Psychology was considered as a part of Philosophy. In the past fifty years psychologists introduced psychology as independent subject and gave it a nature of science. For this reason, Independent department of psychology have been segmented in various universities and is taught as an independent subject.

The nature of psychology that we have now was different in the beginning. It was considered as a science of soul initially. The purpose of this subject that time was investigation and thinking of soul. Thus, the psychology was related to spiritualism and was part of philosophy. Till sixteenth century psychology was considered as science of the soul. People could neither see the soul nor define it. Therefore, they became hesitant to accept it as science of soul. In order to bring out the change people started calling it 'Science of mind'. But the nature of mind is also not certain like soul and so could not be defined. That is why Psychology was not accepted as the science of mind and till now psychology could not get the place as Pure science.

After studying minutely psychologists observed the influence of consciousness on human behavior. Therefore, psychology was also accepted as science of consciousness, but few psychologists observed the behavior of human is not overpowered by consciousness always but sometimes unconsciousness takes place in his behavior. Thus psychology was accepted as the science of unconsciousness, but further this definition was not accepted by the people and nature of psychology kept on changing.

Now psychology is considered as the science of human and animal behavior. In psychology the goal is to study human behavior, but the basis of this study includes animal behavior too. Initially with the help of psychology the experimental study of animal behavior takes place and then the comparison between human and animal behavior brings success in the study of human. There are two kinds of human behavior, natural and acquired or learned. The study of both behaviors consists in modern Psychology. Thus the nature of psychology centralized on animal behavior instead of Spiritualism.



*Did u know?*

Initially study of psychology was considered as a branch of philosophy. In 1879 William Wundt founded the very first laboratory of psychology in Lipzing University of Germany and with this step psychology gradually became separate from Philosophy.

Notes

### 1.3 Psychology is a Science

Psychology is a science of the study of human and animal behavior. It is now considered as a complete science. As in pure science certain principles and rules are being set on the basis of experiments. Likewise in psychology too the principles and rules are determined related to behavior. The study of human behavior is being done on the basis of these rules and principles. These bases conclude the discovery of the reason of behavior and the possibilities of past and future of behavior are also discovered. Psychology is not the subject of mere thinking but these evidences are collected by using experimental kind of scientific techniques. Whatever responses human reflects towards its own environmental stimulates, psychology studies the same. Therefore, we can say – “Psychology is the science of human behavior or is the study of the science of its own reflection of response towards the stimulants based in the environment.”

In fact, Psychology is the science of human behavior. It cannot be considered as material science. We can also call it Natural Science. There is a specific and fundamental difference between Psychology and material science. In material science we can keep control over the substance and attain success by doing desirable experiments in the laboratory. Opposite to that Psychology taken as subject is human instead of substance is not controllable as substance. Speed of mind is not controllable. One moment you think of New York and the next Peiking. If someone is busy hearing, something else instantly revolves around the thought of mind. Thus it is not possible to control the human mind like substance.



Notes

When mental behavior is being studied or mental related rules and principles are determined on the basis of psychological experiments the inferences and the possibilities are necessarily be present. Thus psychology is not a pure science as of Physics or Chemistry.

Second, difference between psychology and material science is that Universality is found in material science, while individualness and individual differences are always there in psychology. For example, when a psychologist studies human behavior in the laboratory his subject would be the mind of a particular human through which his behavior would be conducted. If any other subject would be tested instead of this subject, the study being done at present and the study done earlier will not be same. Same way if a scientist does an experiment on an elephant, he will observe the reaction of all human towards the elephant and will set a general rule but when a psychologist will study the reaction of human towards elephant he has to study the reaction of every individual. On the basis of there reaction he cannot set a general rule.

Psychology accepts the three main techniques of natural science – Observation, Experimentation, and Description. This is why it is called natural science. It uses the scientific techniques when it studies human or particular as subject. Psychology does not mere discuss about doctrine of ideology like philosophy ethics or aesthetics.

### 1.4 Branches of Psychology

Keeping objects in mind we can divide psychology into two main branches –

- (1) Normal or General Psychology
- (2) Abnormal Psychology

Normal or general psychology is the scientific study of entire behavior of human Human and animal. But abnormal psychology is the study of sick or abnormal state of human. These two branches are further divided into other sub-branches like general or normal psychology is divided into individual,

group, social, applied and other sub-branches. Abnormal psychology is divided into only two sub-branches individual and group. There are a few more sub-branches other than these sub-branches but that will not be described here.

Notes

Applied psychology influences only these scopes like educational psychology, Industrial Psychology, religious Psychology are the other sub-branches of applied psychology. Here we will study about educational psychology.

## Schools of Psychology

Education and Psychology are closely related, this topic has been enlightened in the previous chapters too. Through psychology we gain knowledge about human mind. Therefore, its relationship with education is mandatory. In the field of psychology, Psychologists have explained behavior through different means. Educational Psychology is applied branch of psychology. To study the behavior of people from different point of views and instructor needs to have a thorough knowledge of serial development of psychology. So that he brings change in the behavior of his pupil by influencing him in order to attain the desirable result. Difference in the ideas of psychologists in the development of psychology and the explanation of behavior resulted the origin of different schools. These schools explained not only the nature of behavior but also brought changes in the ideas of educational psychology, studies methods and scope.

**Meaning of the Schools of Psychology** – Here the meaning of school indicates towards the method of thinking and ideas of organized group of the people working in the field of psychology.

Psychologists **Woodworth** opinion is – “For us a ‘School’ is group of Psychologists who put forward a certain system of ideas designed to point the way that all must follow if Psychology is ever to be made a genuine productive service of both theoretical and practical value.” – R.S. Woodworth

This statement clarifies that the school of psychology is such a group of people who do theoretical determination in the field of psychology and gives it a nature of scientific research.

In the 20th century psychologists experimented on the behavior of the living things and gave explanations through different means. That is why in psychology many schools of different ideas originated. These schools gave the solution of the same problem through different point of views. Each group has different scope and thinking system. In educational psychology co-ordination between different ideologies to solve the education related problem is not required. These schools can be helpful in the process of education by giving contribution in their own specific field.

The main motto of educational psychology is to help in the holistic development of a child. The different schools of psychology try to understand human mind through their own point of views. Each school has studied the mental problems minutely. In the field of education a few schools have researched on the subjects related to learning process, mental development, personality development etc. and influenced the process of education. A few important schools of psychology will be briefly described here. Schools that have directly influenced the field of education and educational psychology are as follows:

1. Structuralism
2. Functionalism
3. Behaviourism
4. Psychoanalysis
5. Gestalt School
6. Field Theory
7. Holistic Psychology
8. Purposivism

**Notes**

**1. Structuralism**

In psychology **Wundt and Titchener** are the founders of the ideology of structuralism. In 1879 they founded the very first psychological laboratory in **Leipzig**, Germany. In this laboratory the experimental study started of mental structure and activities. According to the structuralists consciousness of human is the combination of different mental abilities and activities. In this ideology they have tried to explain the nature of the structure of mind, consciousness and experience. School of structuralism is such a thinking system of psychology whose subject scope and objective are the nature of the conscious experience of a living thing. It's main motto is to study the conscious experience through scientific methods. Psychology surveys the internal experiences. Due to this idea a few psychologists have called this school inter philosophical. This is based on the method of internal philosophy. Through this method the different aspects and experiences of consciousness can be studied properly.

**Characteristics of School of Structuralism**

1. They consider nervous system the basis of experience that helps to gain experience. According to Titchner the unit of the human experiences is mental element. Experience is the conscious internal structure of a human.
2. In this the information of mind and consciousness is gained through disintegration. The three element of consciousness are – **sense, talent** and **feeling**. Sense is related to tangibility, talent is related to ideas, and feeling is related to emotions.
3. Mind and body both have independent existence and they collectively make arrangements to mental process happen.

**Contribution of Structuralism in the Field of Education** – This ideology has not only influenced psychology but education too.

1. This ideology considered education as mental action and growth of experiences as motto of education.
2. They emphasized on scientific study in the field of education and educational psychology.
3. Emphasized on the serial inspection of the nature and structure of mental actions.
4. This ideology has historical importance of the development of psychology through scientific method.

**Limitations of Structuralism –**

1. Because of accepting the method of inter philosophy this school has worked in a limited field of psychology.
2. They did not work in the direction of entire mind.
3. They did not pay attention towards the problems related to the subjects, Motivation and Personality.

This school was badly criticized in the beginning of 20<sup>th</sup> century. William James was the main critique. According to his view it is useless to analyze or study the elements of consciousness. We should rather concentrate on how does consciousness effect the various parts of our body. It resulted the origin of a new ideology that is called Fuctionalism.

**2. Functionalism**

This ideology was developed in America (In 1842–1910). It was developed as a reaction of school of structuralism. This ideology is influenced by Durven's theory of development. John D. V. and Ronelds Angel gave functionalism a true nature. Its philosophical background is Pragmaticism. Why? and What? Are the basis of this sect, according to **Woodworth** – "A Psychology that gives a correct and arranged answer to the question, what humans do? And also the further questions how do they

do that? And why do they do? Is called the school of functionalism. Due to functionalism, knowing, willing and feeling were incorporated in psychology. This ideology emphasizes on the motion of the strength of mind.

Functionalism was embraced by different psychologists of various countries. Its main three schools are as follows:

**Chicago Community** – In this John D.V., James Roneld Angel and Harberker are worth mentioning. John D.V. has specially emphasized on the utility of mind and brain the field of psychology, they enlightened that how the process of thinking works to solve the problem. **John D.V.** has emphasized in one of his write-ups, “The reflex is concept of psychology”, that mental function is a continuous process. It keeps on happening without the break of a moment. He discovered the relation between action and excitement. Human’s entire mental work has some motive or purpose. He did not accept that mind and consciousness is the combination mental elements like structuralism, but emphasized of the functions of the mental elements. He has emphasized on mental function.

**James Roneld Angel** – He has given a cleared theory of functionalism. According to him where structuralism is related to element or substance, functionalism is related to the function or process. According to this he emphasizes on the information of nature of mental process and how does it work. Mental functions are edited according to the circumstances. Mind and body collectively work and help the individual to cooperate with his environment. All mental activities or functions are based on the combination of the collective effort of mind and body. Functionalism does not accept mind and body as two different things. **Harvekar** has called the psychology the science of mental activities. The subjects of psychology of functionalism are why? and How?

**Colombia Community** – He founder of the school were **James Kettle, Edward Thirndike and Robert Woodworth** of university of Colombia. Kettle worked on association, tangible knowledge and mental physics. Thirndike worked on wisdom and learning process. **Robert Woodworth** earned name by writing the book “Contemporary schools of Psychology”. He has also written a book on ‘Experimental Psychology’ on the basis of various experiments he did. Due to emphasize on co-operation in functionalism dynamic psychology developed, he gave importance to motivation in behavior. Functionalism studied mind and behavior of human and animal. This resulted the origin of behaviorism.

**Contribution of Functionalism in the field of Education** – In the field of education contributions of this school are as follows –

1. This school emphasized on environment and co-operation in learning process.
2. Followers of this school did lot of research on individual difference, learning, wisdom, co-operation, examination and evaluation that influenced education.
3. This ideology considered a child important in the process of education and contributed in the development of child psychology.
4. They emphasized to understand on the needs of a child on different levels of age during the process of education.
5. They discovered the theory of Utility. They considered only those subjects important in syllabus that is useful for man and society.
6. They emphasized on the collective activeness of mind and body. According to their idea mind without body and body without mind are incomplete. Mind and body worked together. That is why they emphasized on the following on three rules as study techniques.
  - (a) **Physical Rule** – In this they have tried to study the physical base of every action.
  - (b) **Study Technique in Different Situations** – In this living is observed in different situations.
  - (c) **Introspection Technique.**

Notes

3. Behaviourism

In the beginning of 20<sup>th</sup> century behaviorism was founded due to the criticism of structuralism and functionalism. Before this the emphasis was on the study of the element of consciousness. But a few psychologists considered it useless and said that the study that tells us about the effect of consciousness on our body is useful. Therefore the work of consciousness was more emphasized instead of its construction. But after sometime the technique inter philosophical method that studied consciousness was badly criticized. **William James** was the main critique among on the critique. Father of behaviorism was J. B. Watson. The object of behaviorism is to study behavior. Watson did not accept consciousness by considering it unclear. According to him to understand a living thing, it is important to observe and understand works of his body. Examination of entire personality of human happens through behavior and activity. Thus only study of consciousness is not useful but instead of emotions, feeling, talent, and memories. Attention should be paid towards his efforts and behavior that is tangible. These efforts and behavior are both natural and acquired that are studied by the psychologists. School of behaviorism is a group of those psychologists who study both natural and acquired behavior of a living that is tangible. Max Mayor, **P. Bis, Hull and Tallman and B. F. Skinner** are among the main behaviorists.

In the year of 1912-14 when the movement of behaviourism was going on in America the Psychologists **Weshref** and **Pavlov** (1857-1936) were experimenting on associated reflex action, conditioned reflex action and motor reflexes. They experimented both on human and animal.

According to the view of Behaviorism a living thing responses due to the incitement present in the atmosphere. This discourse thought over the action of the living thing and studied the actions of muscles and glands. In this the " Theory of Stinulu-Response" has been given an important place, resulted human behaves in order to cope up or become friendly with circumstances and atmosphere.

In the origin of behaviourism Sir Thorndike's contribution in the field of animal psychology is worthwhile. He did many experiments on fish, cats and hen. These experiments proved that because of lack of wisdom they learn many things through trial and error. An animal attains success to complete the work by trying again and again. These experiments are fully described in the chapter learning.

**Contribution of Behaviourism in Education –**

- (1) Experiments done by behavioristic psychologists on animals demonstrated the rules and theories of learning. Method of trial and error was implemented in learning.
- (2) Study of child psychology got encouragement.
- (3) Effect of atmosphere was emphasized in the development and improvement of humen.
- (4) Psychologists belong to the school of behaviourism enlightened methods of learning, rules and theories of learning, sensational behavior and habits related to root instinct that causes the progress of educational psychology.
- (5) Education is related to human behaviour. Behaviour has both personal and social aspects. This sect believes that the entire human behavior is fulfilled because of a continuous interaction of human behavior with atmosphere.
- (6) "Pre decided learning" developed as an educative method.
- (7) This school emphasized on inspection and measurement.
- (8) Behaviourists made the study of child personality easy and objective. After studying child's behavior in different circumstances and atmosphere, they introduced many useful methods to evaluate personality.
- (9) Theory of Stinilu -Response resulted the emphasis on sense teaching in child education system.

4. Psychoanalysis

**Sigmund Freud** (1856-1939) of Vienna was one of the main founders of Psychoanalysis. This school mainly studies the trials of unknown mind. **Dr. Freud** used the method Hypnotism to cure the

disorders like unconsciousness and Ligament. In this technique he used to ask questions from patients in the state of unconsciousness. Due to hypnotism the patient used to pour out all his emotional problems because of the unconsciousness that he was not able to express in conscious state due to shame, fright and hesitation. Freud used to observe the reason of decess through what the patient used to say in the state of hypnotism and unconsciousness. But this method was not successful on a few patients. For the treatment of these kinds of patients Freud used the method of 'Independent association'. Freud discovered many techniques to analyze human mind. After the deep study of human mind, a theory was designed on the basis of collected data, this theory is called Psychoanalysis. In this context **Earnest Jones** has said – The word Psychoanalysis is used to describe these three things –

(1) Psychoanalysis indicates towards a special medical technique that was used by Prof. Freud of Vienna to cure the patients of special group of Ligament. This way for the very first time it was used as controlled meaning.

(2) It indicates towards a special sub technique of discovery of deep levels of mind.

(3) In the end this word is also used for one of the fields of knowledge that is gained through this method in this mean in applied way it is 'The Science of Subconscious Mind'. Thus we can say that the school of psychoanalysis studies the extra ordinary behavior of human with the characteristics of subconscious mind. Freud, Adler and Yug are three main psychologists of this school who have given the different explanation of subconscious mind. The views of these respected personalities can be described in short –



**Task**

Till what extent you agree with the method of Hypnotism used by Freud to cure the Mental patient? Before a short span of time a program (Raaz Pichhle Janam Ka) was Broadcasted by NDTV Imagine, Do you find any similarity in that program and the theory of Freud?

**Freud**—Freud is the first psychologist of psychoanalysis school. He has defined three levels of mind-conscious, sub-conscious and unconscious. Conscious mind is smaller than the unknown or unconscious mind. Human behavior is widely controlled by the unconscious mind. Conscious mind is always influenced by unconscious mind. Emotion and anger kind of unsatisfied feelings are always there in unconscious mind, Freud has compared mind with an ice berg floating in the ocean whose most of the part is under the surface of water. Thus, conscious mind is very small while unconscious mind is more powerful. But both the parts of mind are active. The unsatisfied emotions and desires of human get collected in the unknown conscious that are not dead. Human stops these feelings and emotions to come in the conscious mind due to social and other reasons. Thus a continuous conflict between conscious and unconscious mind goes on. These depressed feelings when are not expressed or illuminated, they take the shape of an entanglement that are called emotional glands. These glands influence personality. **Freud** has defined three powers that rule over mind—**Id, Ego and Super-Ego**. Here is the brief description of it –

**Id**—It is related to heredity. It is full of human's inherit qualities. The thoughts and consciousness of object is not his own but this is the source of his mental power. This is the base of neglected desires and propensity. It is not under the control of brain. Its nature is unconscious and not related to the reality. It is related to cupid tendency that is called 'Libido' by Freud.

**Ego**—This is the part of id that develops in the external environment. It is related to the reality of environment. It is conscious and keeps control over the impure desires of unconscious mind. This is the 'ordinary conscience' of human. In this, both good and bad feelings of human are present. There is no boundation on good desires but to control bad desires our 'super-ego is always awaken.

**Notes**

**Notes**

**Super-Ego** – It stops bad desires to enter in the conscious mind. Its work is to rule over ego. It acts as a guard between conscious and unconscious mind. Our common conscience wants to fulfill all kind of desires. But man learns about the rules and customs of society since childhood, this causes the formation of super-ego or common conscience.

According to Freud base of the id is pleasure and reality is the base of ego. According to him entire mental actions of human are inspired from the theory of pleasure or happiness. Sukh Siddhant Man succeeds in taking correct and desirable decision if his ego is properly developed, but if his ego is weak then mainly his id dominated desires will be fulfilled. But as man grows in age and experience the according to that his ego emphasizes on working according to the reality of liberal thinking.

**Alfred Adler** – The other psychologists of psycho analysis, Adler, worked with Freud with many days. Adler and Freud principals were different that is why Adler was not ready to accept the conclusions of Freud. Freud has considered libido feeling as motivation or main power as the basis of all actions. While Adler thinks life is a struggle and a man has to face different circumstances by living in the society. He wants to defend and properly develop his personality. Therefore, keeping these things in mind, Adler has considered wish to gain power, base of life work and given importance to it. He has emphasized on method learning in every field of life man behavior become extra ordinary due emotional glands.

**Self Assessment**

Fill in the blanks by choosing the correct option:

1. In the beginning psychology was studied as branch of .....  
(a) Sociology                      (b) Education                      (c) Philosophy
2. .... is the founder of the theory of structuralism.  
(a) Wilhem Wundt                      (b) Freud                      (c) Adler
3. Theory founded by Sigmund Freud is known as .....  
(a) Structuralism                      (b) Psychoanalysis                      (c) Behaviourism
4. .... developed as a reaction of structuralism.  
(a) Behaviourism                      (b) Psychoanalysis                      (c) Functionalism

According to Adler the reason of disorder of mental patient is not any crime but inferiority complex. According to him he adopts a strange life style in order to escape from inferiority complex. This feeling is in unknown consciousness and the same feeling reflects as superiority complex in consciousness. Thus man wants to conceal his weaknesses and adopts a strange life style to show his greatness. Known and unknown both consciousness help a man to behave socially. This view of Adler is called 'Individuality' and 'Psychology'. Study of man's life style helps a psycho analysis a lot.

**Carl Jung** – Carl Jung is the 3rd psychologists of this school. His theory is different from Freud and Adler. Jung inspects and analyzed association. Through these tests we can get the idea of the mental glands of human. He had two kinds of differences from Freud –

1. Freud considered the emotional glands that developed during the childhood is the reason of mental disorder. While Jung emphasized on the current circumstances as well as past.
2. Jung has taken elaborated meaning of Libido. This is the main strength of life and can be seen in two different ways – Libido related instinct and instinct to gain strength of life. Jung has considered unknown consciousness more important than known conscious and accepted unknown consciousness as loss maker of known consciousness. Like man who seems brave in known consciousness are coward in unknown consciousness. There are both good and bad thoughts in unknown consciousness the views of Jung is the combination of the idea of Freud and Adler.

**Contribution of Psycho-analysis in the Field of Education** – This school has influenced education a lot. Child's personality is related to education. The brief influence of this sect:

Notes

1. Heredity and Environment are the main elements to develop a man. They are related to unconscious mind.
2. Psycho-analysis affected both theoretical and applied aspects of education. Unknown consciousness or unconscious mind keeps an important place in process of learning.
3. Child's experiences and values of early life are very important in the process of education. These emotional glands developed in the childhood effects the future and behavior of child.
4. It has enlightened the importance of emotions in education.
5. With help of psycho-analysis the reasons of non-cooperation can be found in children. This sect has been proved very important to understand the process of co-operation.
6. Psycho-analysis has also emphasized like naturalists on theory of independence in the personality development of a child.
7. Research of root instincts is an important purpose of education; psycho-analysis helps in the same.
8. Education is related to the socialization of a child. Mr Jeung is the follower of these kind of ideas. According to his view group feeling and unconscious mind are deeply related. In fact socialization and culturalisation are the combination of individual unconsciousness and group consciousness. It is clear now that how education influenced by psycho-analysis.
9. This sect helps to understand the inter conflict.

### 5. Gestalt School

Along with behaviorism, near about in the year of 1912, Gestalt school originated. In German Language Gestalt School is called Gestalt psychology. The meanings of Gestalt are shape, form, whole or pattern. In the concordance of education and psychology it is called the entire shape. The psychologists of this school did not get satisfaction by analyzing only behavior consciousness and unconscious mind. According to them only analysis of behavior and experiences cannot describe the personality of a man properly, they have emphasized on the theory of association and entactment in mental study. They concentrate on main charactersics of behavioral action and consciousness and also pay attention towards the entire shape of all the parts and characterists. For example, entire shape of the face of a man can be seen by watching the various Gestalt like eyes, nose, ears etc. Same way by keeping all the body parts together whatever look or pattern we will get that will be called a human being not by keeping it separate. If study of parts is related to whole then only it makes some sense. Same way knowledge should be understood by keeping the entire nature of feelings and actions in mind. Gestaltists have emphasized on to move from whole to parts in order to understand something, means it is easy to first get the knowledge of a complete thing as a whole. School of Gestalt is a group of the psychologists that make whole, of behavior, action, incident, man and thing, the base of their study.

**M. Wertheimer, K. Koffka and W. Kohler** are the main psychologists of this school.

**Contribution of School of gestalt in the field of Education** – Here is the brief description of how Gestalt school has influenced the field of education –

1. This school has emphasized on tangible knowledge in the process of learning. An instructor should introduce the entire content first. We can get the knowledge of an object or incident only after understanding the entire situation. Mr. Kohler's theory of vision proves the same. This is described fully in the chapter 'Learning'. There are many processes incorporated under the process of learning such as emotions, tangibility, inspection, concentration, memory, thinking, imagination and reasoning etc. therefore this school has influenced the process of learning a lot.
2. This school has done many important works in the field of Child Psychology and Social Psychology.
3. They have enlightened the importance of environment and personality development.

**Notes**

4. Explanation of wisdom given by this school is more clear and skilful than other schools. Wisdom is the base of vision or perception. Adjustment with environment is done by wisdom only. This is why in education it is important to pay attention towards the environment of the child.
5. They have introduced the new ideology to solve the problem and thinking in learning. They keep more progressive thinking than other schools.
6. They have also given an important conclusion on hyper activeness. To understand behavior this school does not study its different parts separately but they study surroundings, because behavior is the result of entire circumstances.
7. Learning is an intentional and objective action. An instructor should keep a problem in front of the student. Problem increases tension in his mind that becomes the reason of the growth of capacity to work. To remove tension he completes the work quickly. This theory is used in Project and Heuristic System.

**6. Field Theory**

Kurt Lewin was the founder of field theory in psychology. He was the first socialistic psychologist, but he also worked with Wertheimer, Koffka and Kohler. Therefore he was influenced by School of Gestalt. His two books – “**Principles of Topological Psychology**” and “**Comital Representation and Measurement of Psychological Forces**” are very famous. Kurt presented a different Ideology of psychology than the school of Gestalt. His psychological thoughts are based on Typology and vector. According to him behavior does not depends upon past or future but on present. He explained behavior on the basis of field that is why his theory is called the Field Theory. Here the meaning of field is place of life, that is the psychological world of a man. Psychological world that is also considered as physic-social environment, its psychological tangibility becomes the reason of man’s behavior. He has divided his field theory into two parts – Structure and Dynamic.

According to **Lewin** building of field happens through man and his psychologist. In the construction of field, elements related to regions, boundary, its scope and foreign hull are incorporated. Through this man gains emotions, tangibility or stimulus and in return he expresses his reaction.

Lewin has said about mobile that mobility makes a place of life mobile or movable, means it creates energy in man to move. Three kinds of this energy are – (a) Valence, through that a man does something or not, valence can be either positive or negative, that motivates a man to work or not work. (b) Vector, it is related to mechanical science. According to this there are two qualities of force (1) direction (2) energy. Vector is the combination of these two qualities. Valence decides the nature of direction, means if valence is positive so it will take the man to the place of life where he is suppose to show behavior but if he fails to work due to any obstacle, he becomes the victim of hopelessness and falls in the situation of conflict. (c) Locomotion, actions that decreases tension that occurs due to the situation of conflict are called locomotion, that are done intentionally to get relief.

The above theory of Lewin gives important information about desirable and best construction of learning, motivation, organized and reorganized behavior of man and also about bringing mobility.

**Contribution of Field Theory in Education** – What is the contribution of field psychology in education, brief points related to same are as follows –

1. Lewin’s field theory related to learning is very important because learning is influenced by valence. Teacher should create such surrounding that activates the positive valence of child.
2. Field psychology has maid an important contribution in child’s genuine educational surroundings.
3. In Field Psychology, expressed views related to level of aspiration encouraged motivation in education. The higher education level of aspiration for more children would be interested.
4. Lewin’s Group Dynamism is very important in order to make group education influential.

5. Lewin's views reflect theory of individual difference and it emphasizes its use in education.
6. Lewin has given his contribution in the field of education by defining hopelessness. Conflict, tension and relief etc in the field of psychology, because these things influence completion of a child a lot.
7. According to the views of Lewin better arrangement of education can be done by recognizing energy, needs of educational surroundings, teaching techniques and goal of child.

Notes

### 7. Holistic Psychology

The idea of Holistic Psychology developed in Germany and America. According to Holistic Psychologists man is an unitary organism and human is a whole person. Psychologists that believe in this theory can be divided into two groups –

(1) Organismic Psychologists and (2) Personalistic Psychologists, First's idea is more biological while other's is more social. Brief description of these two ideas is as follows –

**(1) Organismic Psychologists – Adolf Meyer, G. E. Coghill, and Kurt Goldstein** are famous among organismic psychologists. Main points according to these psychologists are as follows –

- (i) Psycho-biological knowledge is necessary for psychophysical health, so that the diagnosis and prevention of disease can be done.
- (ii) Human body develops from whole to parts and learning process moves from ordinary to extra ordinary.
- (iii) Energy is equally spread in the creature or physical organs of human body. This idea introduced the theory of Equalization of Energy in psychology.
- (iv) A creature faces two circumstances in order to adjust with environment – first, real environment, that is in front of him and second probable environment, originated from unreal environment for that creature brings changes in his behavior.

**(2) Personalistic Psychologists – G. W. Allport's** name is specially known to develop science of personality among personalistic psychologists. Though Stern introduced the ideology of personalistic psychology to the world (1906). According to Stern personality has unity, value and purpose. Man is unitas multiplex. In medical psychology Stern made applied use of personalistic psychology. **Allport** emphasizes on the completion of an individual. According to him the individual is an unique organized whole. According to him the definition of personality is –

"Personality is a group dynamism of psychophysical systems that is present in an individual, that decides individual's extra ordinary adjustment with his environment."

After the analysis of the definition mentioned above it is clear that personalistic psychology gives importance to whole and considers it physically and mentally movable through that he adjusts with his environment.

**Contribution of Holistic Psychology in Education –** Here is the contribution of holistic psychology in education –

- (1) Holistic psychology revealed this fact for the very first time that the development of a child happens from whole to parts and knowledge from ordinary to extra ordinary. Two educational maxims developed through this theory – 'from whole to parts', and 'from ordinary to extra ordinary'.
- (2) Main contribution of holistic psychology is to develop 'Personalistic Psychology', through this the techniques of knowledge and measurement of personality could develop.
- (3) Due to the influence of holistic psychology educationists understood the importance of adjustment. And child - nasty adjustment and well-adjustment reduce the emphasis on efforts to adopt.
- (4) If contribution of school of gestalt in education is accepted so the contribution of holistic psychologist is also very important in education because ideology of holistic psychology created the background for the development of Gestalt Psychology.

- Notes** (5) Development of psychobiological by Holistic Psychology is also very important because this ideology has contributed in the diagnosis and treatment of mental disorder of children.

**8. Purposivism**

Purposivism is also known as Hormic. In psychology the founder of this ideology is **William Mc. Dougall** of England. The word hormic is derived from Greek word horme , its meaning is motivator. Therefore psychologists who believe that motivation, motivator and purpose are important parts of psychology are called Hormic or Puposivistic Psychologists. This ideology believes that behavior begins through motivation. Motivational behavior is like achievement of goal in which two components- willpower and far sight are mixed. Purpose motivates an individual to behave. Therefore in psychology emphasizes to study those facts that motivates some work to start and end or behave. According to **Mc. Dougall** man and animal behave like ‘a machine’ and behavior is a quality of living thing. Under this ideology Mc. Dougall founded the theory of root instinct.

**Theory of Root Instinct**— According to this theory of Mc.Dougall root instincts are by birth but it can be improved by practise of learning. According to Mc. Dougall on the primary level root instinct is a complete process that can be divided into three parts— (1) On the receptive side. (2) On the execution side. (3) Emotional pulse or striving. According to **Mc. Dougall** there are total fourteen kind of root instinct and emotions related to that.that is listed below –

**Table 1.1**

S. NO.	Root Instinct	Emotion
1.	Combat	Anger
2.	Escape	Fear
3.	Food Seeking	Hunger
4.	Repulsion	Disgust
5.	Parental	Affection
6.	Sex	Lust
7.	Curiosity	Wonder
8.	Apeal	Distress
9.	Submission	Negative Self Feeling
10.	Self Assertion	Positive Self feeling
11.	Company Seeking	Loneliness
12.	Coustruction	Feeling of Creativity
13.	Laughter	Amusement
14.	Collection	Ownership feeling

Watson, Bernard and Thorndike criticized this theory of root instinct and its related emotions of Mc. Dougall and did not accept it as theory of motivation, then too it has educational importance.

**Contribution of Purposivism in the Field of Education** – Though purposivism specially theory of root instinct is not accepted now as motivator of behavior, yet a few points of it are still important in the field of education, that proves the importance of purposivism in the field of education:

Notes

- (1) Motivation is important for learning. Instructors can motivate children for influential learning by taking benefit of root instinct.
- (2) Teachers can motivate and help children for co-operation by moderating their root instinct and giving guidance in the right path.
- (3) A few root instincts given by Mc.Dougall are important in the education such as- curiosity, self respect and construction. In education learning and teaching can be more influential by using these tact.

## 1.5 Summary

- Ancient philosophers such as Aristotle and Plato considered psychology a subject that studies about soul.
- Therefore psychology was accepted as a science that studies about mind. This definition of psychology was accepted till 1870 and mind remain the subject scope of psychology that was a branch of philosophy.
- From 1879 BC the William Wundt founded the very first laboratory of psychology in Lipzing university of Germany (its name is now changed to Karl Marx University )psychology's relation with philosophy gradually decreased and its nature became more applied. Therefore its object changed to mental activities or conscious experiences from mind or soul.
- Psychologists observed after a deep study that human behavior is influenced by consciousness. Therefore psychology was accepted as science of consciousness but a few psychologists observed that all behavior of human are not influenced by consciousness, but he behaves unconsciously too.
- In fact psychology is the science of human behavior. It cannot be accepted as material science. Not it is called natural science. There is a specific and fundamental difference between psychology and material science. In material science substance can be controlled by all mean and success can be achieved after doing desired practical in the laboratory. Opposite to this in psychology a human being is a subject instead of a substance that cannot be controlled like a substance.
- Education and psychology are deeply related, this topic is enlightened in previous chapters too. Through Psychology human brain achieves knowledge, therefore its deep relation with education is mandatory.
- In 20th Century the experiments that psychologists did give different explanations of behavior of living thing. That is why, different of schools different ideology originated in psychology.
- The motive of educational psychology is to help in the holistic development of a child. Schools of psychology try to understand human mind from their own point of views. Each school has deeply studied mental problems. Some schools have influenced education process in the field education by analyzing the subjects related to learning process, mental development and personality development etc.

## 1.6 Keywords

1. **Hopelessness** – Frustration
2. **Valence**: To attract Exert traction

Notes

**1.7 Review Questions**

1. How does Psychology differentiate from Philosophy and Science? Describe.
2. What is Structuralism? How is it different from functionalism?
3. Present an analysis of behaviorism under the study of psychology?
4. Write an essay on critical "Psychoanalysis" of principle of Freud?
5. Write your thought on the "Principle of Scope"?

**Answers: Self-Assessment**

1. (c)
2. (a)
3. (b)
4. (c)

**1.8 Further Readings**



*Books*

1. Psychology – *Dr. Saryu Prasad, Agra Book Store, Agra*
2. Psychology – *The Study of Human Behavior – Brij Kumar Mishra, PHI Learning, New Delhi*
3. Educational Psychology – *S.K. Mangal, PHI Learning Pvt. LTD., New Delhi*
4. Development of Learner and Teaching Learning Process – *A.K. Verma, Hindi Book Center, New Delhi*

## **Unit-2: Educational Psychology: Meaning, Nature and Scope**

### **CONTENTS**

Objectives

Introduction

- 2.1 Meaning and Definition of Educational Psychology
- 2.2 Educational Psychology: An Independent Discipline
- 2.3 The Scope of Educational Psychology
- 2.4 Summary
- 2.5 Keywords
- 2.6 Review Questions
- 2.7 Further Readings

### **Objectives**

After the study of this unit, the student will be able to –

- Understand the Educational Psychology.
- Understand the scope of Educational Psychology.

### **Introduction**

Man is a social animal. As soon as he takes birth, he is connected to the society in some way. How the human behavior is or should be, even this learning comes from the society. The objective of Educational Psychology is to bring changes in human behavior through the medium of Education. Under the Educational Psychology, a Psychological study is done of the problems and their solutions that arise in the learning environment.

### **2.1 Meaning and Definition of Educational Psychology**

It is evident after understanding the meaning of Education and Psychology that Education is a social process, whose objective is to transform the human behavior and Psychology is such a science that is related to the study of behavioral changes. This is the behavioral form of general Psychology. The Educational Psychology studies the various aspects, related to the action of the learner and learning, and teacher.



**Notes**

Educational Psychology is an important branch of Psychology. This is made of two words-‘Education’ and ‘Psychology’. It means the Education related to Psychology i.e. it is scientific study of human behavior in the process of Education and it uses Psychological principles in solving the Educational problems. In the words of Skinner-“Educational Psychology takes its meaning from Education, a social process and from Psychology, a behavioral science.” The behavior of man is changed by Education and Psychology is such a science that studies all the aspects of human behavior. In this view, Education and Psychology, both are related to the development of human personality. The basis of Educational Psychology, Psychology deals with the rules and facts of human conduct. In the same way Educational Psychology deals with the specific kind of people, the behavior and conduct of students either getting education in school or outside school. Its scope is extremely narrow and specific. Educational Psychology utilizes procedures of General Psychology for the study of its subject. It deals with the qualities of children, nature and their behavior in educational situation and represents the solution, analysis and explanation of education related problems. In the words of **Skinner**, “Educational Psychology utilizes those findings that deal specifically with the experiences and behavior of human being in educational situation.

Educational Psychology studies those processes that affect human behavior. Psychology, not only expounds its principles, but is also tells us how life could be made healthier and prosperous using its principles. Psychological principles are used in dealing with the various problems and situations of daily life. An educational subject is important in this specific field. Since the different principles and the rules of psychology are applied in Educational situations therefore the Educational Psychology is also called the behavioral Psychology. What is Educational Psychology? What does it mean? It will be clearer with its description related to various definitions, objectives and scope.



*Notes*

Educational psychology is such a science, that studies all the aspect of human behavior. In this point of view Education and Psychology the both are concerned with human development.

Psychologist and Educationalist have defined the Educational Psychology in different ways:

- (1) **Skinner** – “Educational Psychology deals with the behavior of human being in educational situation.”
- (2) **Crow and Crow** – “Educational Psychology describes and explains the experiences of an individual from birth to the old age.”
- (3) **Knall and Others** – “Educational Psychology is concerned primarily with the study of human behavior as it is changed and directed under the social process of education.”
- (4) **Sware and Telford** – “The major concern of educational psychology is learning, It is that field of psychology which is primarily concerned with the scientific investigation of the psychological aspects of education.”
- (5) **Alice Crow** – “Educational Psychology represents the application of scientifically derived principles of human reactions that affects teaching and learning.”
- (6) **Kalsanik** – “Educational psychology is the application of the finding and theories of psychology in field of education.”
- (7) **Stephan** – “Educational psychology is a systematic study of educational growth.”

According to **J.M. Stephens** – “Educational Psychology is psychological study of the surroundings of Educational growth. In this view under the psychological study, not only the uses of Psychological theories are told but also it proves to be a specific branch of psychology. This branch tries to explain the educational movement in the same way as that of the branch of Social Psychology tries to explain the social events.

On the basis of above description we can say that educational psychology is the psychological study of students' problems and their solutions that arises in the educational environment along with the responses toward educational environment. It has been widely explained in "Encyclopedia of Educational Psychology", in learning, is related with human element. This is such a field in which the concept are applied in the filed of education that are gained after experimental work done in laboratories. However this is such a field as well, in which, the experimental work is done to determine the procedures of studying the behavioral of such concepts and special interest in education. It studies the various sections of learning that are directed to prevent a student in adapting to the society with the optimum security and satisfaction.

**Nature of Educational Psychology**—On the basis of the above definitions, the nature and structure of Educational Psychology could be discussed. The nature of the Educational Psychology is considered to be scientific. It becomes clear from the study of Educational Psychology that the principles of psychology are applied in the filed of education. Today Psychology has proved valuable in educational processes. With the help of psychology, the scientific principles pertaining to the rules of learning, concentration, tiredness, ways of memorizing, the principles of syllabus structuring, learning and its evaluation are studied. Therefore, from the angle of Educational Systems, the nature of Educational Psychology, like Psychology, could be considered scientific. Educational Psychology establishes its general principle by the scientific study of its problems and their solutions and predicts the person's behavior related to the subject of learning. The various methods of Educational Psychology shall be described further. Now a days there are many researches are being done in the filed of Educational Psychology for the teachers, counselors and all the procedures of schools, as well as to understand the human nature. Educational Psychology is considered to be a behavioral science because it describes the process of education on the basis of fundamental principles of human behavior.

In this way Educational Psychology presents the description, analysis and solutions related to the problems of learning. The structure of Educational Psychology becomes clear from the principles of psychology. In brief, we can say, that:

(1) Educational Psychology is also a major behavioral science. It also studies the 'what', 'why', and 'how' of human behavior. It explains the process of learning in its surroundings scientifically. The thoughts of psychologist Crow and Crow are, "Psychology explained 'how' of human development as related to learning education attempts of provide the 'what' of learning educational psychology is concerned with the 'why' and 'when' of learning." Thus, as per **Crow and Crow**, Educational Psychology can be considered a behavioral science. Because it attempts, to explain the processes of learning established by scientific methods related to the human behavior in context of learning.

**Sware and Tellford**— "Educational Psychology uses the method of science in the form of its findings."

(2) Educational Psychology is of scientific nature. Even under this, a scientific and systematic study is done for students and their behavior in context of the learning environment.

(3) The focus of Educational Psychology has been the learning in educational surroundings. In order to understand Educational Psychology we should consider **Skinner's** thoughts, "Educational Psychology utilizes those findings that deal specifically with the experiences and behavior of human being in educational situation."

At last we can say, Educational Psychology is the science that studies the education according to the principles of psychology. Although Educational Psychology is a branch of Psychology, yet it delivers its principles independently by resolving the educational problems on experimental basis and on the basis of these principles, studies the human behavior in the educational situation. This procedure also affects the learning process.

## 2.2 Educational Psychology: An Independent Discipline

Regarding Educational Psychology, most of the educationists think that it has now become an Independent Discipline. As it is evident from the following excerpt. "Today's Educational Psychology

**Notes**

does now apply the general principle of Psychology as it is, but it also applies it into day to day activity to testify and after the experiments it presents its principles separately. Therefore modern Educational Psychology has its own scope, programs, problems and methods. All of these activities show a relationship with the general psychology however they are not dependent on psychology." It is related to Psychology on one hand and to Education on the other. Education discipline has close relation with Educational Psychology as it is compulsory to study Educational Psychology with it. Hence we can say that Educational Psychology is a social science of Education Discipline.

Educational Psychology is now considered as educational discipline. Educationists and psychologists have expressed the following thoughts in this regard –

1. Educational Psychology focuses itself on human behavior.
2. It is a body of facts and information which are found as a result of Investigations and Observations.
3. This body of knowledge can be generalized in form of principles and rules.
4. Educational Psychology has developed a new system in which knowledge is searched, hypotheses are testified and principles are expounded.
5. This system is helpful in solving the problem that arises by them.
6. These information, knowledge, principles, and systems all make up Educational Psychology and provide the basis for Educational Theory and educational conduct.

**Educational Psychology as an Occupational Subject**—The teacher is a major factor in Teaching and learning process. Hence it is important for one who would become a teacher and adopt teaching profession, to study Educational Psychology. In this way, Educational Psychology can also be addressed as a professional subject. This is described in detail in 'The Scope of Educational Psychology'.

### 2.3 The Scope of Educational Psychology

It becomes evident after pondering over the meaning and objective of Educational Psychology, that, Educational Psychology studies the student in educational situations, the process of learning, and the result of learning (achievement or product) in psychological way. Charles E. Skinner has defined the scope of Educational Psychology in this way, "Educational Psychology studies the human behavior in educational situations. It concerns with the study of such human behaviors and personalities whose welfare, development and guidance happens through the process of learning." Regarding the subject matter of Educational Psychology some psychologists think in this way –

(1) **Garrison and Others**—"The subject-matter of educational psychology is designed (1) to enhance and enrich the lives of the learners and (2) to furnish the teachers with the knowledge and understanding that will help the institute improvement in the quality of instruction."

(2) **Douglas and Holland**—"The subject-matter of educational psychology is the nature, mental life, and the behavior of the individual undergoing the process of education."

(3) **Crow and Crow**—"The subject-matter of Educational Psychology is concerned with the conditions that affect learning."

Education and psychology are closely related. Today psychology has begun to be used in education and with its help, education related issues are also tried to be resolved. Because education is a continuous lifelong process, therefore the scope of educational psychology is not limited to childhood or adolescence; rather it is an elaboration of all educational situations of a person.

When question are asked like who shall be imparted education? How it should be imparted? In which situation and in which system shall it be imparted? Who shall be giving it and what is education? Then, in order to get the answers of these questions we consider these points like the student, process of education, educational situation and the results of learning under educational psychology primarily.

**(1) Educational Situation Related Study**—Situation and Environment play a very important role in Education. The creation of Educational situation is well planned for Education. Education attempt could not get success without the proper Environment. Environment is also studied in psychology. The elements that develop behavior are included in Environment. The effective environment should be constructed for the successful education of a child. According to the need of Education, if the environment is not well planned and controlled; Education and learning could not be delivered successfully. Therefore, in Educational Psychology, the importance of environment, the kinds of environment, the conditions for learning situation, educational techniques, the education of class surroundings and environment, the learning of various personality, personality development, the effect on arrangement and health growth, development etc and related subjects, are also widely studied.

**Lindgren** has considered a central scope, of educational and learning situation. According to Lindgren there is a situation for the education of a child, in which educational process takes place. Situation includes those elements that affect either child or educational process or both of them. Class, library, discussion room, Laboratory etc create the direct and immediate situation, while community, management, administration, policy-makers etc remotely but effectively develop and control the educational situation. From this point of view, educational situation related study, has been included in modern Educational Psychology.

**(2) Student Related Study**—According to the Modern Psychological consideration learner, learning, in the bilateral process of education, is the central point of education-process. As soon as the education process starts, this main question arises that who are we educating? Certainly our response will be-To the child or more extensively it is called learner. Today, in the education-world, this main question is considered specially. And therefore the Educational-Psychologists have considered, child or student, the central point of education. And the education that revolves around it, is called-central education or Psychological Education. This concept is the outcome of that Psychological movement that is begun by Educationalist Russo and Pestology. Today it has got the great support of everyone except Educational- Psychology. The question arises that what do we mean by student? In easy words it means-learner.

What all do the teacher and the guardian of student need to know about the student and why. On this matter the study of the following things related to the student is essential—

**(A) Heredity and Environment**—Child's education is affected by environment and the virtues that he gets by heredity. The both are studied in Educational Psychology and it is attempted to know that education is more affected heredity or environment.

**(B) The study of child development's various stages**— In it, the principle of growth and development, the various stages of child development like childhood, adolescence, adulthood are studied. And the form of the education is delivered according to the qualities of these stages as physical, mental, emotional.

**Physical Development**—Under the physical development, the different stages of child development-the qualities of childhood, adolescence are studied.

**Mental Development**—In it emotional, representation, examination, concentration, interest, learning, inspiration, remembrance, absent mindedness, imagination, rumination, decision, growth, etc, are studied. And various methods are applied to know that how shall these be developed in the child.

**Emotional Development**—Under this we study emotions, emotional expression, stable com-posure, complexes, fundamental traits, and easiness are studied. Sometime emotional expressions are helpful and sometimes they are a hindrance. Educational psychology, by studying it, tries to find out how emotional expressions can help the child.

**Social and Character Development**—Under this, social activities, games, the activities of community creation, activities of subject-matter changes, which help in social and characteristic development, all those things are studied.

**Notes**

**(C) The Study of Personality Differences of Children**—Educational psychology studies various types of children, sharp minded, normal, dull minded, problematic, abnormal, mentally and sick children of various other personalities and it determines which kind of education shall be given which kind of personality and by which method.

**(D) The Study of Mental Health of the Child**—under this sections we study the mental health, the principle of mental health, the hindrances to mental health and the progressive factors of the children.

**(E)** Under this we study the behavioral and problems of mixing up with others, and the ways of providing guidance.

**(3) The Study of Learning Process**—Learning has great importance in life and the only objective of education is to make a person learn. Learning is a result of stimuli. A child begins to respond to the stimuli which are present in the environment, which are related to the basis instincts. He keeps on improving these responses with experiences. Gradually giving integrated and cultured responses is learning. A man is able to establish himself in the society as a result of this kind of learning. Learning process is the process of social inclusion. Learning is the process of instituting the progressive nature. Learning is the continuous process which begins and balances by internal and external factors and it is directed towards the adaptation and inclusion of conditions.



*Did u know?* A child gets inspired by the stimuli and responds internally and externally and as a result of it he learns.

Following things are studied in the process of learning –

**(a) Nature of Learning**—With the help of experiments of educational psychology, we learn which methods of learning are useful, and how they can be used in principles of learning, rules of learning, the various methods of learning, and significance of punishments and rewards in learning.

**(b) The Role of Inspiration in Learning**—What is importance of inspiration in the process of learning is considered.

**(c) Transfer of Learning**—Under this section we learn what is meaning and importance of Transfer of Learning. How this is accomplished what, and what are the various principles of transfer of learning etc.

**(d) Memory and Forgetting**—Under this section, types of memory, parts, qualities, kinds, rules and methods of memory are discussed. For the process of learning, the types of forgetting, structure and solutions are essential to be known. In education, in order to make the process of learning a success, it is important to focus on memory test. One has to react according to what he has learnt as a result of learning. Memorizing is a process of acquiring, which is an important part of process of learning. Therefore memory and forgetting come under the subject of educational psychology.

**(4) The Study of Product of Learning**—Under the scope of educational psychology, come the conditions and processes that affect learning. Man acquires some knowledge as a result of learning. Learning becomes possible with the help of some mental processes. Whatever a man acquires as a result of learning, it is called the result or the product of learning. In order to know the product of learning, following shall be considered carefully.

We should pay attention to the following guidelines in order to know the product of learning –

(a) Thinking, concept creation, logic and solutions are very important. For the intellectual and mental development, or in order to maintain the process of learning, these shall be developed.

(b) It is important to develop the creativity in a child. From the viewpoint of education, we shall use this tendency through the creative tasks and impart education.

(c) Many qualities can be developed in the students through the feeling of communion. For this, social interaction is necessary with having various groups. Feeling of communion and leadership has proved very important for education.

Notes

### Self Assessment

Choose the right option for the following –

- Who has given the definition “Educational Psychology is the study of educational growth”
  - Alice Crow
  - Stephen
  - C. L. Kundt
- “Educational Psychology uses scientific methods in its search.” Who has given definition
  - Sware and Telford
  - Crow and Crow
  - Douglas and Holland
- “Educational Psychology studies the human behavior in educational situation.” Who has given this definition
  - Charles E. Skinner
  - Douglas and Holland
  - Garrison

**(5) A Study Related to Measurement and Evaluation**—Under this, the evaluation of educational achievement, and subject expertise, the various aids to evaluate the personality like means, methods, tests and statistical works are used. In the process of learning, the intellect of teachers, their personality and their various abilities are important to be known. All come under the scope of educational psychology.

**(6) A Study Related to Educational and Occupational Direction**—On the basis of the outcome of evolution and measurement, child is directed related to, education and occupation.



Task

Is in your view, the study of education, should be essential for a successful teacher?  
Consider with logic.

**(7) Education Related Study**—Teacher is an important part of education. In the process of learning, teacher is especially supportive in order to develop, control and planning the situation of learning. In the process of learning, the inter relationship that happens between teacher and student, helps in educational and learning. Even teacher is an important factor in learning. In the personality of teacher, creation affects much on the development of child. Therefore in educational psychology, teacher’s personality, training, his physical and mental health etc., are widely studied.

The study related to the above different things is studied widely under the scope of psychology. This is an exception that in the books of psychology, according to the need, something has more importance or some has less of it. **Prof. C.L. Kundu** has considered five main subjects under the scope of psychology:

- Human growth and development
- Learning
- Personality and adjustment
- Measurement and Evaluation
- Technical and techniques in Education

According to **Prof. Kundu**—“In short, whatever is educational or whatever touches child in his classroom, behavior comes with the scope of educational, psychology”. At last we can say in the form of conclusion the words of Skinner—“Educational psychology takes for its province all information and techniques pertinent to a better understanding and a more efficient direction of the learning process.”

**Notes** The scope of educational psychology is evident on the basis of above discussion. The extended explanation on this subject have been needed describing in various chapters.

## **2.4 Summary**

- Psychology is such a science that is related to the study of behavioral changes.
- The behavior of man is changed by education. Psychology is such a science that studies all the aspects of human behavior. In this view, Education and Psychology, both are related to the development of human personality.
- Since the different principles and the rules of psychology are applied in Educational situations therefore the Educational Psychology is also called the behavioral Psychology.
- From the angle of Educational Systems, the nature of Educational Psychology, like Psychology, could be considered scientific. Educational Psychology establishes its general principle by the scientific study of its problems and their solutions and predicts the person's behavior related to the subject of learning.
- Situation and Environment plays a very important role in Education. The production of Educational situation is well planned for Education. Education attempt could not get success without the proper Environment. Environment is also studied in psychology. The elements that develop behavior are included in Environment. Therefore in educational psychology, teacher's personality, training, his physical and mental health etc, are widely studied.

## **2.5 Keywords**

1. **Creative Tendency:** the quality of creation.

## **2.6 Review Questions**

1. What do you understand by Educational Psychology?
2. Throw some light on the scope of Educational Psychology?
3. 'Educational Psychology is an independent discipline'-write a commentary on it.

## **Answers: Self-Assessment**

1. (b) 2. (a) 3. (a)

## **2.7 Further Readings**



### **Books**

1. In children the importance and information—*Seema chaupra, Hindi book center New Delhi.*
2. Educational Psychology—*S.H. Sinha and Rachna Sarma, Atlantic Publication, New Delhi.*
3. Educational Psychology—*M.K. Mangal, P.H.I. Learning Pvt. Ltd., New Delhi.*
4. The Development of Educational Psychology and Educational Learning Process—*A.K. Verma, Hindi book center, New Delhi.*

## Unit-3: Methods of Educational Psychology

### CONTENTS

Objectives

Introduction

- 3.1 Methods of Educational Psychology
- 3.2 Experimental Method
- 3.3 Case History Method
- 3.4 Summary
- 3.5 Keywords
- 3.6 Review Questions
- 3.7 Further Readings

### Objectives

After the study of this unit, the student will be able to –

- Understand various methods of Educational Psychology.
- To get some understanding of human historical system.

### Introduction

Educational Psychology studies of the human behavior and various problems, under the educational situation. This study is done by one method. Method means the system and way, which helps us in getting a conclusion, after doing the study, analysis and explanation of human behavior. Method is a way of getting facts. Educational psychology also uses the scientific method to solve and study of its various problems. In educational psychology, the study of scientific method could not be used strictly like any other material science because here, the subject matter is study of the educational behavior of living entity, student. We know this very well, that due to some reason Education and Educational psychology could not be put in the category of pure science (chemistry and physics), because their rules are permanent. Because these sciences are related to the matter where as the education is a human subject and is related to the human behavior and society.

Now educational Psychology has been put in the category of science, it has followed the scientific method for its works by ignoring imagination, guess and superstitions. The meaning of 'study method' of scientific language, is the way, by which truth is discovered.

**Notes**

**What is scientific method?**—This is a method of study, that moves under the scientific rules. Scientific method only could be used for the study of natural and material things, this is an illusion. In scientific method there is not any place for religion, worshiping and imagination in order to get true knowledge related to today's social events. On the contrary observation, experiments, and classification and the ordered functional is called scientific method. Shri George A.Lundberg has cleared the meaning of scientific method in this way—"Social scientists are committed to the belief that the problems which confront them are to be solved if at all, by judicious and systematic observations verification, classification and interruptions of social phenomenon. This approach in its most rigorous and successful from is broadly designated as the scientific method."

**Essential elements of scientific method**—Mr. Martin Dale and Monachesi have said—"Science is also a method of consideration. This also rises in the responses of problems like all other consideration. It differs from all other thoughts mainly in method. The quality of scientific method is—(1) that it focuses on inspection. (2) Tries to test behavioral or original concept. (3) Develops the experiments or model situations, which could take test of these concepts. (4) Invents such a new tools that may help in more acute measurement and more realistic observation. (5) And by study it outcasts firmly the self model evaluations of scientists and concentrates at this time that how do events take place in reality, not that 'why' it happens or 'what' should happen." We can say in brief, that scientific method is a method of study that moves under the scientific rules.

Educational-Psychology uses the scientific method in his researches and for the study of its problem. There is incredibility, reality, purity, objectivity and impartiality in these methods. In the modern age the measurement of scientification of any subject is its method. The main characteristics of this method are Verifiability, definiteness, Objectivity, Generality, and predictability. In this study, the student delivers the rule, after inspecting the truth by observation and inspection, finding out conclusion relating to the subject.

### 3.1 Methods of Educational Psychology

The methods of Psychological study can be divided between two groups—

**(1) Internal or subjective Method**— Under this method person analyses and explains his own behavior, as in the introspection and anecdotal method.

**(2) Outer and Objective methods**—In this method, facts are collected by others. There are many methods under it.

The various methods, of both of these groups, have been described under—

Educational Psychology is closely related to Psychology. Therefore there is affinity in both of these studying methods. The important methods of Educational Psychology are following—

- (1) Introspective Method
- (2) Observation Method
- (3) Experimental Method
- (4) Case History Method
- (5) Anecdotal Method
- (6) Development Method
- (7) Comparative Method
- (8) Interview Method
- (9) Questionnaire Method
- (10) Statistical Method

(11) Clinical Method

(12) Test Method

(13) Psycho-Analytical Method

The summary of above methods are –

**(1) Introspective Method** – This method was mostly used in ancient time, but today this method is not considered scientific. So it is used less. 'Introspective means' To look within or self observation. In this method, person himself, describes analysis and observes his mental process. In introspection, person tries to evaluate his feelings and remembrance of his experiences. A Person can express his experiences through introspection.

**According to Scout** – "The sequential study of self mental process is called, introspection." **Woodbirth** has called it self Observation. When a man expresses his feelings, he has to take the medium of self observation, because mental process are internal. Their direct knowledge could be gained by this method. On the basis of its mental process observation, whatever data he presents, is called introspection data. Two things are found in introspection – (1) Person observes self mental process, and (2) presents discretion related to them.

**Qualities –**

- (i) The greatest qualities of this method is this, man is able to understand himself, after getting knowledge of his mental process and stages. The direct study of man's mental process is made possible by Introspection. As how does he feel in weal-woe, it can be responded by introspection.
- (ii) This method can be used at any time and anywhere. In this method any laboratory, tool and implement, is not needed. **Ross** has said – "Psychologist's own brain is his laboratory, because it lives within him, so he can inspect any time according to his own desire."
- (iii) Person's thinking power grows by using this method again and again. By the study of this method others mental activities can be studied. The experiences that different people have felt in relation of mental process, those experiences can also be comparatively studied here.
- (iv) The scientific study of Psychology has been started by introspection method. Therefore this method has given important contribution in making Psychology a science. Although the scope of this method is limited, many Psychological problems have been studied by using this method. Introspection method is an important method of Psychology.

**Defects –**

- (i) It is impossible to do the observation of mental process, because they are unclear, fickle, unsteady. The changes that take place in them are sooner. Mental process as emotional expression, feelings, thoughts etc, cannot make us stable, because as soon as we try to concentrate, they go away from our mind. A person cannot live every moment in the same condition, so his attention goes towards the other things.
- (ii) The another fault of this method is, that, the same person is observer and councilor of his own self. He has to perform both of the acts. And this work is opposite to each other, because here the observer and councilor is same. This is not worthy. The inspection of mind by mind is impossible. As **Ross** has said – "spectator and sight both are the same, because mind is the place and equipment of inspection." He cannot observe all the experiences honestly. Often man does not want to express his feelings due to hesitation. Sometimes our mental feelings come to an end on paying more attention to them. As soon as when a person ruminates, he wants to study that rumination by introspection, then it is often seen at that time, the mental process of that person comes to end.
- (iii) This method is not possibly used for all kinds of human being. This method can be used only for the study of adolescence, because it is depended on the thinking power. It cannot be used on young one and mentally ill. It can only be used on the common person.

**Notes**

- (iv) This is also a vice of this method, that we cannot express our feelings by language, As often we do not express our feelings of psychologically and mentally suffering, weal -woe in proper words. According to the Psychologists, this fault is not of this method, but only of language, because we do introspection, but indirectly the limitation of this language is also affected on introspection. The question arises, if we cannot express our introspection feeling, how will its Psychological study be possible. The Psychological method should be such as, by which psychological study could be completed in spite of having mistakes in language.
- (v) The knowledge obtained by this method is subjective. The mental condition of a person can be known by it. The equipment, obtained by it, is differing from the equipment, got from the introspection of other person. So neither they can be compared, nor their truth can be inspected. So on the basis of the knowledge, obtained by it, scientific rules cannot be prepared.

 *Did u know?* It is impossible to inspect the mental process, because they are unclear, movable and unsteady. And changes keep in them sooner.

**(2) Observation Method** – In this method , student observes human behavior and activities on the basis of his pre experiences. Whatever is seen clearly from outwardly, that is inspected, and on the basis of that, the knowledge of his mental condition is gained. After inspecting attentively the responses, activities and human behavior, his mental condition is traced. As seeing the smile on someone’s face we come to know that he is pleasant. And understand him unhappy to see him in tears. By outer observation the human behavior, happening in natural situation is studied. Practically psychologists have given special importance to this method. They have considered behavior to the subject of Psychology in place of feeling, And outer observation method considers the Psychological method in place of introspection. According to them feelings are subjective and objective. On the contrary external behavior of person can easily be seen or understood. Seeing his behavior, his mental condition is known. According to them, the conclusion obtained on the basis of study of human behavior will be more scientific, because behavior is seen in the physical activities of a person, an external observer, observing the physical activities of person, delivers the general psychological rules on the basis of them. Observation method has following steps –

**(a) Direct observing to other’s behavior and finding out their mental condition** – this is the main fact of this method. It is essential to notice carefully all the facts by observation.

**(b) Explain and analyze the behavior** – Under it student explains and analyses the other’s behavior on the basis of his mental observation, seeing the tears of anybody , on the basis of our pre-experience, we think of his unhappiness.

 *Notes* By external observation, the behavior of person happening in natural situation is studied.

### **3.2 Experimental Method**

Experimental Method is the blessing of natural science, by which cause and effect relationship is studied in the best way. In modern social psychology the use of this method is growing day by day. In this method the social behavior is also studied in real situation, that differs from laboratory. These are called field experiments. Some main definitions are following –

1. **Rathos** – “Experiment is a method of scientific investigation that seeks to discover cause and effect relationships by introducing independent variables and observing their effects on dependent variables”.
2. **Garrett** – “Experiment is observation under controlled conditions.”
3. **Townsend** – “No experiment is better than its poorest control.”
4. **Jahoda** – “Experiment is a method of testing hypotheses.”
5. **Festiger** – “The essence of experiment may be described as observing the effect on a dependent variable of the manipulation of an independent variable.”
6. **Chaplin** – “Experiment is a series of observations carried out under controlled conditions for testing the hypotheses.”

On the basis of above definitions it could be said that experimental method under which, according to the plan manipulating variables are studied under controlled condition. In this method action is called dependent variables and cause is called independent variables.

There are many factors to affect anybody’s behavior. Student selects some of these factors, and controlling the rest of factors, the affect of selected factors on person are studied. The selected factors are called independent Variables, controlled factors are called Intervening Variables. During the experiment time the effect of manipulating variables on the action is noticed. At last, analyzing hypotheses of obtained data are verified. There are minimum two study groups in experimental study one of them is called controlled and other is experimental group.



**Task** Write a commentary on Experimental Method.

**Characteristics of Experiment –**

The qualities of Experiment are following –

1. Under it the condition is directly inspected.
2. Under it Experimental conditions are controlled.
3. Under it Cause-effect relationship are studied.
4. Hypotheses are verified by it.
5. Under it the effect of dependent variable on the independent variable is studied.
6. Under controlled condition the observation of the effect of any factor is called experiment.
7. Under it controlling the external factor the effect of the experimental variable is studied.
8. The main qualities of experiment are-the uses of controlled condition, the effect of observation, the pure measurement of effect.

**Self Assessment**

Tick right (✓) and wrong (×) in front of given statement:

1. The introspection method of educational psychology is the predominant method.
2. Under the observation method whatever is seen from outside, on the basis of that observation, the study is done.

**Notes**

- 3. Experimental method is the method under which, according to the plan manipulating variables under controlled condition are studied.
- 4. Pure experiment is possible by Experimental method.

**Steps of Experimental Method**

The steps of Experimental Method are following –

- 1. **Problem** – Under it student selects any one problem. He can use his previous works, review to the related literature, study of the present work, exchanges of ideas from the specialist etc. Sometimes he himself selects the burning problem.
- 2. **Review of the Related literature** – After reviewing the literature he wants to know, on this problem how many scholars, ‘how and what ‘results have been obtained, and when these studies have completed?
- 3. **Formulation of hypothesis** – On the basis of review literature he does the formulation of hypothesis. By making hypothesis the problem is pin pointed.
- 4. **Variables** – Under this inventor decides that how many variables he has to take and how will he recognize and control the intervening variables.
- 5. **Sample** – Under this it is decided that who will belong to study group and how much large it will be. Sample selection is done by some special method.
- 6. **Tools and Materials** – It is decided that which kinds of tools will be needed to collect the data. Sometimes he himself has to construct the tools.
- 7. **Control of Variables** – under this scientist, after controlling the mediator variables, gets the pure data.
- 8. **Procedure** – under this scientist accumulates the short description of his whole plan.
- 9. **Result** – Conclusion is obtained after analyzing the obtained data and it verifies the hypotheses.
- 10. **Discussion and Generalization** – Explaining the obtained data, Psychologist compares his results with the results of other Psychologists. At last on the basis of statistical method he generalizes his result.

**Difference between Laboratory Experiment and Field Experiment**

In laboratory experiment it has been seen that it is known to patient that experiment is on him. Then his behavior is not natural. Along with the effect of artificial situation of laboratory, pure result is also not obtained. Due to these reason field Experiments have been developed. It does not mean that Field experiments are faultless. The biggest boundary of the Field Experiments is, that the manipulation of variables are difficult than that of Laboratory Experiment.

**Advantages** – The advantages of this method are following –

- 1. Cause-effect relationship is studied with more purity.
- 2. This method is pure and brief in comparison of other methods.
- 3. This method is the best method of hypotheses test.
- 4. This method is most predominant scientific method.
- 5. The result obtained by this method, is subjective, incredible, legal, and sovereign.
- 6. By this method, doing real test, true data and facts can be collected.
- 7. Conclusion got by this method can be re-verified in the same condition.
- 8. This method proves helpful in maintaining relationship between S-O-R.

9. With the help of this method many education related problems can be solved.
10. Under it, user is always active.

Notes

**De-merits** – there is also some de-merits in this method which are following –

1. It is impossible to do pure experiment.
2. It is a difficult job to manipulate variables.
3. Experimental method cannot be used successfully in the field experiment.
4. Patient does not cooperate in using this method.
5. This method cannot be used in studying the various aspects of life.
6. This method is more expensive in comparison of other method.
7. In this method instability comes in the behavior of patient.
8. It does not seem possible to study all kinds of events by this method.
9. Not accepting this method as a independent method, this method is considered as a collection of many methods.
10. Trained persons are needed in this method.

**Conclusion** – The results obtained by this method are truer, credible, and scientific than that of others obtained results. Its conclusion can be verified, on the basis of these, rules and principles can be prepared. Thus, this is a scientific method. In spite of having many de-merits, this method has been considered as the best method of research by Psychologists.

### 3.3 Case History Method

Case History Method was developed, almost four hundred years before the birth of Christ, to study the problematic children. This method is also used to collect the man related information. This method was established in the well organized manner in the last stage of tenth century. In the field of law this method was mostly used. After this, this method was adopted for use in the field of medical, Psychology and Education. The origin of this method is not old in the field of education. Teachers did not consider teaching as their main profession till now, they did not consider it important to take interest in student., but because of, in the field of education, direction, personality difference, mental health,etc, now it has become necessary to understand every student. By Case History method, the qualities, behavior, and mental development of anybody is studied. In one way Case History Method is a collection of all achieved facts, related to person.

Case history method is like a history of person. It has also been accepted as a personality measurement method. Meeting his friends, family members and others relatives, when we collect information related to any person, his life history, his domestic responsibility, interest, needs, his activities, information related to his health, all this comes under this case history method. We get a general introduction of a person by this. This is also an effective method of measurement. But its credibility is not trusted very much, because under it the information sources are such as, they do not deliver information correctly. The objective of case history method is to find out Adjustment-Problems. This method proves useful in mental hospitals. Teacher can also use cumulative record cards in the history of person. Sometimes Psychologist tries to know this, that he gets some facts from the teacher in relation of student. Psychologist or social reformer tries to know in history the following things-As name, address, domestic responsibility, occupation, material relationship, the qualities of personality although Case History Method can not be made the remedy of diseases and the basis of medical, yet it helps. This method is used to understand the uncommon people and children.

**Crow and Crow** – The purpose of case history is predominantly diagnostic. The merit and demerits of this method are the following –

**Notes**

**Merits**

- (i) This method can be used in treatment education. This method is used in the treatment and the study of dull, backward, and mentally ill children.
- (ii) Many facts are gathered from the various sources comprehensively. Therefore the conclusion can be trusted.

**Demerits**

- (i) Clinical specialists are needed to use this method. Therefore this method is expensive too.
- (ii) This method takes more time and money and labor. Therefore it is difficult to use this method in our country.

**3.4 Summary**

- Educational Psychology studies of the human behavior and various problems, under the educational situation. This study is done by one method. Method means the system and way, which helps us in getting a conclusion, after doing the study, analysis and explanation of human behavior. Now educational Psychology has been put in the category of science, it has followed the scientific method for its works by ignoring imagination, guess and superstitions.
- The methods of Psychological study can be divided between two groups – **(1) Internal or Subjective Method** – Under this method person analyses and explains his own behavior, as in the Introspection and anecdotal method. **(2) Outer and Objective Methods** – In this method ,facts are collected by others. There are many methods under it.

**3.5 Keywords**

1. **Introspection Method** – In this method a person observes and analyses his own mental activities.
2. **Observation Method** – Under, whatever is seen outwardly, is studied.

**3.6 Review Questions**

1. Describe the various study method of educational psychology.
2. What is the introspection method of study of educational psychology? Explain its merits and demerits.
3. What do you understand the case history method of educational psychology.

**Answers: Self-Assessment**

1. (×)                      2. (✓)                      3. (✓)                      4. (×)

**3.7 Further Readings**



**Books**

1. Educational Psychology – S.K. Mangal, PHI Learning Pvt. Ltd. New Delhi
2. Development of Learner and Educational Learning Process – A.K. Verma, Hindi Book Centre, New Delhi
3. Psychology – Dr. Saryu Prasad, Agra Book Store, Agra
4. Psychology – The Study of Human Behavior – Brij Kumar Mishra, PHI Learning, New Delhi.

## Unit-4: The General Nature of Growth and Development

### CONTENTS

Objectives

Introduction

4.1 Meaning of Growth and Development

4.2 Maturity

4.3 Principles of Development

4.4 Summary

4.5 Keywords

4.6 Review Questions

4.7 Further Readings

### Objectives

After the study of this unit, the student will be able to–

- Understand the meaning of growth and development.
- Understand what maturity is?

### Introduction

The phenomenon of development of the child begins while he is in the mother's womb and continues through his infancy, childhood, adolescence, adulthood and maturity. Thus he passes through the various stages of growth and the development takes place. Psychologist Hurlock has said "Development results in new characteristics and new abilities."

Development is a multi-faceted process. It includes many aspects. In the study of educational psychology, not only the child's intelligence but, for his wholesome development, physical, mental, social, emotional stages are also necessary. All these aspects of development are mutually related. While describing the development of child, the meaning of development, stages of development, structure, principle, and various aspects of development shall be considered briefly, and it will be appropriate.

### 4.1 Meaning of Growth and Development

The natural development of a human is called Growth. The changes that happen after the creation of embryo in the womb until his birth, is growth. Apart from this all the changes that happen after the birth till the old age, which are not affected by learning and training and are progressive, is also

**Notes**

growth. The nature of growth is like development but there is difference between both the thoughts. Development includes the abilities that are earned by learning and training; however growth has no importance of these factors. Liking, coming out of teeth is a growth however acquired abilities have no role to play in it. Growth has its own direction and time limit.

Educational Psychology studies the human behavior in the educational situation and its objective is to bring about the desired changes in the behavior of the child. Hence it is important for the teacher to know the changes that take place in a child as a result of growth and development. Often both these terms are thought to be synonymous as they both point towards the progress. However the psychologists have suggested some difference between the two and hence it is important to under this difference. The general meaning of growth is the increment in shape and size of the organs, weight, and height.



*Notes*

Psychologist Frank has used the growth in terms of Cellular multiplication. As per him, "the changes that take place in any aspect of body and behavior is called Growth, and that in the human is called development."

The meaning of development is more general. When from infancy to childhood, adolescence to adulthood, the growth that is observed in the limbs of the child we say that he is growing. It is obvious from this that the growth can be weighed and measured. But sometimes we see that in spite of the growth of the limbs in the child, their ability has not increased properly then we say that there had been no development. Development of organs work - and indicates the capabilities. As it has been told that growth can be measured, however the development can only be noticed through the changes in human behavior. Hence development is the qualitative changes of a person, due to which he progresses or regresses.

In the field of psychology the meaning of development is not only growth, i.e. the height and weight increment, but it is the growth of new abilities in a human being which keep going on in a human being beginning from the early stage till maturity. In Hurlock words, "Development is not limited to growing larger, instead, it consists of the progressive series of changes towards the goal of maturity. Development results in new characteristics and new abilities on part of the individual."

Three things become clear by Hurlock's definition –

- (1) Development point to change.
- (2) Development takes place in a definite order.
- (3) Development has a definite direction and aim.

According to Hurlock, the process of development continues throughout the life in a definite order, and every stage affects the next one.

**Gesell** has described the meaning of development in this fashion – "Development is more than a concept. It can be observed, appraised, and to some extent even measured in the three major manifestations (a) anatomic (b) physiologic, (c) Behavioral.... behavior signs, however, constitute the most comprehensive index of developmental status and development potentials.

According to **Meredith** – "Some writers reserve the use of 'Growth' to designate increments in size and of 'development' of mean differentiation."

Therefore we will study growth and development in the same meaning. The growth and development mean the stages from pregnancy till maturity. All the changes that a man goes through from the pregnancy till maturity, all come under development, as a result of development a man gets maturity. Maturity means getting growth and development.

Maturity, development and growth are closely related. The meaning of maturity, growth and development has been discussed further.

## 4.2 Maturity

Notes

The phenomenon of development begins with the embryo creation in pregnancy and it is very rapid in the early stages. Within the pregnancy a child takes birth after maturing till certain limit. After the birth he ends in maturity finally. In development, the changes take place in an order that only point to maturity. One stage of the maturity helps a living being in developing normally. The maturity affects the development of a child majorly before birth. Every stage of growth and development is majorly affected by maturity, for example when an infant's muscle become strong enough to walk, he begins walking. Therefore maturity helps growth and development. In fact the objective of growth and development is to get maturity only.



*Did u know?* The development of a human happens very rapidly in the mother's womb and it continues till maturity.

The speed of growth and development becomes slower later this is the reason why the speed of growth and development is highest in the mother's womb, which is the first stage of development. And later adolescence which is the last stage of the development of the human being, it is least. Maturity is the aim of natural growth. The process of maturity goes on till the certain age of the human being. In the last stages of adolescence, means the age if 21, this process finishes. There are two aspects of the personality of a human being, are physical and mental. The natural and complete stage development and growth is called complete maturity. The stage at which these are obtained, is called old age. Hence the objective of all the stages of development is to get the old age.

The maturity and old age has an effect of learning and environment. This is why maturity shows up on different age groups among the people living in different geographical and social condition. Maturity is mainly the reason of development. Development becomes possible only by the mutual reactions of both. Learning is not possible in the absence of maturity. A certain stage of maturity is needed for learning. Therefore learning and development, both depend on maturity.

In spite of huge correlation among maturity, development and learning, all these three differ from one another. Maturity means natural development. When the development of a man's abilities happen naturally without the aid of learning and training we call it maturing, where as the development is obtained via desired and progressive changes.

The effect of maturity on the development was tested by Gesell and Thompson in 1929. This method used Co-Twin Control method. In this experiment two twin baby girls were taken. One of them was trained to climb the staircase from the age of 46 weeks till 52 weeks. The other girl was just controlled watched without any training. As a result of development with the help of training, the first girl took 26 second to climb the staircase; where as the other girl took 45 second without any training in 52<sup>nd</sup> week. Controlled 53-week old girl has been practicing move from step 2 weeks. After this the two weeks training was given to the girls who was controlled, it took only 7 seconds after the training of just 2 weeks for the controlled girl to climb the staircase in the 55<sup>th</sup> week. Therefore we can say that due to maturity, the second girl succeeded in climbing the staircase in a very less time in spite of less training compared to the first girl.

## 4.3 Principles of Development

What is the principle of growth, this too is important to be known. According to Garrison and others, "When a child enters into one stage of development from another, then we observe some changes in him.

**Notes**

Studies have proved that these changes have a tendency to follow certain principles. These principles are called the 'Principles of Development'."

Following are the principles of development which control the process of development –

- (1) **Principle of Developmental Direction** – As per this principle the development of the child happens from head to feet. Psychologists have called it Cephalocaudal direction according to which, the head, body and limbs develops sequentially in a child.
- (2) **The Principle of Continuous Growth** – According to Skinner, "The principle of continuous growth only focuses on the fact that there are no sudden changes." The development does not happen with the same speed, however it continues without halt. It can sometime be slower or faster.



*Task*

The development does not happen with the same speed. However it continues without halt. It can sometime be slower or faster. You tell us your opinion in which age it is faster and in which age it is slower?

- (3) **The principle of individual difference in the rate of Growth** – It has been proved with the help of scientific studies that rate of development of two different people is different. The man who is taller at the time of birth will be taller as he grows. Two different children of the same age may have two different physical, mental and social development.

**Self Assessment**

Fill in the blanks:

- 1. The natural development of a man is called .....
- 2. Gesell and Thompson used ..... method to study the effect of maturity on development.
- 3. Development is ..... changes of the body.
- 4. .... is the complete and natural stage of growth and development.
- (4) **The principle of development sequences** – According to this system the development of a child happens in a sequence. The motor and linguistic development of a child happens in fixed sequence. He makes a special sound from the third month, he begins to laugh heartily, and from the seventh month he begins to make sounds like "Pa", "Ba", "Ma" or "Da".
- (5) **Principle of Interrelation** – There is relation in the physical, mental and emotional sides of a child. With the physical growth, his interest, voice and concentration also changes and this makes their motor progress possible. The physical growth affects the mental growth. According to Garrison and others, "The attitude related to body focuses on the equilibrium of various organs and development."
- (6) **Principle of Uniform Pattern** – According to this principle, the measurement of the babies in the entire human is just one, and it is, that there is no difference. Hurlock has defined this principle in this way, "Every species whether animal or human, follows, a pattern of development peculiar to that species."
- (7) **Principle of General to Specific Responses** – In all the aspects of development, whether they are motor or they are mental, a child first gives a general response and then moves to a specific response. Hence a child moves from general responses towards specific responses. An infant first moves his entire body then he begins to move the specific organ, in order to get something, the infant not only moves his hands but his entire body, and gradually he begins to move the specific organ 'the

hands'. Hurlock has said, "In all the stages of development, a child's responses are general before they become specific."

Notes

- (8) **Principle of Interaction of Heredity and Environment**—The development of a child happens due to the interaction between the heredity and environment. Hence, "Heredity defines the limits beyond which the child cannot develop, in the same way it has been proved that bad environment and illness at the time of birth, may harm the abilities with which a child is born with." Skinner has passed the above thoughts.

#### 4.4 Summary

- The phenomenon of development of the child begins while he in the mother's womb and continues through his infancy, childhood, adolescence, adulthood and maturity.
- Development is a multi-faceted process. It includes many aspects. In the study of educational psychology, not only the child's intelligence but, for his wholesome development, physical, mental, social, emotional stages are also necessary.
- The natural development of a human is called Growth. The changes that happen after the creation of embryo in the womb until his birth, is growth.
- Educational Psychology studies the human behavior in the educational situation and its objective is to bring about the desired changes in the behavior of the child. Hence it is important for the teacher to know the changes that take place in a child as a result of growth and development.
- Development is the qualitative changes of a person, due to which he progresses or regresses.
- Changes are sequential in development which point towards the maturity.
- Every stage of growth and development is majorly affected by maturity, for example when an infant's muscle become strong enough to walk, he begins walking. Therefore maturity helps growth and development. In fact the objective of growth and development is to get maturity only.
- Maturity means natural development. When the development of a man's abilities happen naturally without the aid of learning and training we call it maturing, where as the development is obtained via desired and progressive changes.

#### 4.5 Keywords

1. **Growth**—Specific development, success and progress.
2. **Heredity**—family lineage.

#### 4.6 Review Questions

1. What do you understand by growth and development? Explain the difference between them.
2. What do you understand by maturity? Explain with example.

#### **Answers: Self-Assessment**

1. Growth
2. Co-Twins
3. Qualitative
4. Maturity

Notes

### **4.7 Further Readings**



*Books*

1. Educational Psychology – *S.K. Mangal, PHI Learning Pvt. Ltd, New Delhi*
2. Development of Learner and Educational Learning Process – *A.K. Verma, Hindi Book Centre, New Delhi*
3. Importance of Education in Children and Information – *Seema Chopra, Hindi Book Centre, New Delhi*
4. Educational Psychology – *S.H. Sinha and Rachna Sharma, Atlantic Publication, New Delhi*

## Unit-5: Stages of Development

### CONTENTS

Objectives

Introduction

- 5.1 Importance of Infancy
- 5.2 Stages of Development: Childhood
- 5.3 Stages of Development: Adolescence
- 5.4 Summary
- 5.5 Keywords
- 5.6 Review Questions
- 5.7 Further Readings

### Objectives

After the study of this unit, the student will be able to –

- Understand the importance of Infancy.
- Understand the changes that take place in the various stages of development-Infancy, Adolescence.

### Introduction

A human takes birth in the form of a progressive creature, and from the beginning till the end he keeps on developing. When he enters in this world, he is not developed physically and mentally. In Educational Psychology the developing child is studied. From the point of view of Educational Psychology, dividing the child-development into various stages is considered important, and each stage is studied separately. Psychologists, from the educational point of view, have divided the child-development into three groups –

1. Infancy
2. Childhood
3. Adolescence

### 5.1 Importance of Infancy

Infancy is one of the most important stages among all the stages in the Human life. According to Psychologist J. Newman – “The stage till five years is very receptive for the body and the brain.”

**Notes**

Whatever is taught and done at this time, have an immediate effect. Psycho-analysisists have also compelled for paying special attention to infancy. **Freud** has said, "The little human being is frequently a finished product in his fourth or fifth year."

The Psychologists have proved this very well on the basis of their tests. **Adler** has said, "the whole sequence of life is decided by infancy."

In the twentieth century Psychologists have studied, seriously and widely, the child and the stages of his development. **Crow and Crow** has said, "the twentieth century has come to be designed as the century of child."

Due to this thinking of Psychologists, "this stage can be called the basis of life, on which the future life of child is developed."

### Meaning of Infancy

After the birth of child, the first six years age is called infancy. Some psychologists have defined it in the following way-

Hurlock-"this extends till two weeks from the time of birth. After two weeks babyhood begins. And extends till two years. Early childhood extends from two to six years of age."

Above thoughts, Hurlock, the woman psychologist has expressed, that indicates towards the micro and extended meaning, in relation to infancy. Generally, all the Psychologists have considered the infancy, extends from birth to four or five years. As Crow and Crow has written-"Infancy on the average from the birth to five six years of age, during which the sensory channel begins to function and child learns to creep, walk and speak."

According to the result of the above discussion, infancy has been studied here, considering from the birth to five or six years age.

### Chief Characteristics of Infancy

In relation to the development of physical, mental, social and emotional development, infancy has some important qualities –

1. **Rapidity in physical growth** – In the first three years of child life, there is rapidity in physical growth. In the first years there is rapidity in length and weight growth. His action senses, internal parts, and muscles also develop gradually.
2. **Immaturity** – child is physically and intellectually immature at this time. And slowly and naturally he develops into maturity by upbringing.
3. **Dependency** – After birth, he lives a very miserable life till some time. He has to depend on others, to get affection and sympathy, and for the fulfillment of food and other physical needs.
4. **Instinctive behavior** – At this time child's behavior is depended on instinct. Being hungry, he cries and becomes angry. And whatever things is kept by him, he puts it in his mouth.
5. **Rapidity in mental process** – During the mental process of child, his concentration, memory, imagination, emotion, representation etc, are rapidly grown. About this time Good. N.F has said – "One half of an individual's ultimate mental status has been attained by the age of three years."
6. **Rapidity in Learning Process** – At this time there is rapidity in learning process. Gessell has said-"In the first of six years he learns more rapidly than that of Later twelve years.
7. **Imaginativeness** – There is more quantity of imagination at this time in the child. And he sets up moving in imaginative world. Thorndike has considered – "From three to six, child is often in the stage of half vision." And does not know the difference between truth and false. And consequently, due to the abundance of imagination he used o tell a lie. Ross has said – "child himself becomes

hero in the imagination, and dispels the strictness of life through imagination." In this age child has special capability of repeating actions and words.

Notes

8. **Attitude of repetition** – he takes enjoy in doing it. On the basis of this, by the children of Kinder garten and minatory school, singing and creating repetition is done.
9. **Attitude of Learning Imitation** – Child, mostly learns sooner by the imitating method. He imitates the behavior of parents, brother-sister, and other family members in family, and learns.
10. **Learning perceptual Experience** – Due to not being matured he learns through the perception and subtle things. Gifts and educational equipment are used in the system of montationary and kinder garten school. He observes it and experiences it through sense organs.
11. **Emotional expression** – From the time of his birth, he expresses his emotions. Weeping, crying, thrashing about with the limbs are the emotional activities. According to the child psychologists-four emotions are found in the child in beginning–fear, resentment, love and pain.
12. **Feeling of self love** – child has dominant feeling of self love. He wants at this time, to get the affection of his parents and brother and sister. It being impossible, he jealousies his other brothers and sisters. Whatever toys or things are given to him, giving not to others he wants to keep it.
13. **Sexual instinct** – Freud and other Psycho-analysisists have said that in this stage child's love is depended on sex instinct, and this desire is dominant, It does not highlight like young one. Child's to love his organ, to suck his toe, to suck the breast of his mother, are the indicator of his sex-instinct.
14. **Absence of Moral Feeling** – At this time child is not developed morally. He does have the knowledge of right and wrong. He does, in what he takes enjoy, even if, it may undesirable morally. By which work he get suffered, let them. Ross has said, "Later on the social environment reinforces this pleasure pain motive by administrating reward and punishment more or less systematically.
15. **Tendency of playing alone and together** – If we observe the behavior of child closely we can know that earlier he has a tendency to play alone, and Later to play with others. Crow and Crow has described this tendency thus, "the youngest child plays lonely, sooner he passes through the stage of playing with other children. At last, he experiences a great joy in playing with the same age children."
16. **Development of Social feeling** – In the last years of infancy, social feeling is developed in him. It is the thinking of Velentine-"In the age of four or five, child has a tendency of protecting his brother and sister or companion. He likes to play with, from two to five years children. He makes others partner in his own things. And protect the rights of others, and tries to give them consolation in the time of their suffering. In human life from the point of view infancy has its great importance. Velentine has told it, "the ideal period of learning" Watson has also presented his opinion, "The scope and intensity of learning during infancy exceeded that of any other period of development."

In this age it is necessary, to pay attention, in terms of child's education, on the following things –

1. **Upbringing** – Firstly caution should be taken in child's up bringing. Nutritious food should be arranged for the development of child.
2. **Clean environment** – For the healthy development of child, the environment of house and school should be calm and clean.
3. **Attention on the personal cleanliness** – after the development of thinking they should be given the education of personal cleanliness.
4. **Affectionate behavior** – Parents should handle his child with love and affection. The effect of love and affection on his nerves and senses is good. It helps him in his development of proper direction.
5. **Encourage the main tendency** – the main tendency should not be suppressed, rather they should be guided. The effect, of the suppression of the main tendency, on the physical and mental development is bad.

**Notes**

6. **Satisfaction of Curiosity** – It is always tried to satisfy the curiosity of child. All his questions should be responded with satisfaction.
7. **Opportunity for the self assertion** – child has a self assertion tendency. So parents, teachers, and guardians should give him such work to be done, by which they get the opportunity of self assertion.
8. **Learning by doing and playing** – Child is progressive from his birth. So he should be given proper chance of, by play and learning by doing. Strange has said, “child learns a lot of things on his own, of the world, by the game.”
9. **Training of action and sense organ** – In the house and school, the education of development of sense organ and action organ of child should be arranged. In kinder garten and montationary school’s system, attention is paid on the training of sense organ, action organ and muscles. According to them, “sense organ is the gate of knowledge.” Confirming this Psychologist Russo has also accepted, “the limbs of child and eyes are the first teacher of him by these organs he can recognize, think, and remember in the age of five.”
10. **Opportunity for self expression** – The native language is the best way of self expression. Hence the guardians and teachers should tell them short stories, poetry and should recite them. And talk to them in easy language.
11. **The place of music in Education** – From the child is fond of music. He sleeps early to hear lullaby. Songs are used in child’s school for educational function. There is a mental and physical development with the help of songs.
12. **Opportunity for the mental development** – Child should be given more opportunity to think. For this, it is necessary to pay attention on the development of chatting, observation, emotion, representation, imagination memorization.
13. **Pay attention on personality integration** – At the time of educating child, it is necessary to pay attention on Physical integration.
14. **Syllabus should be interesting** – Syllabus should be based on the principles of playing, action, and interest, so the system of Kinder garten and montationary school should be followed.
15. **The method of education may be creative** – At this time attention should be paid on the process of learning. Child should be educated by the medium of playing, doing and objects.
16. **Development of Social feeling** – This feeling yields within the last days of infancy. Hence the guardians and teachers should give them opportunity to visit and play with other children so that, the social feeling may develop in them very well.
17. **Opportunity for the development of good habits** – Guardians and teachers, from the beginning try to develop in them the good habits of speaking the truth, doing work on the correct time, keeping cleanliness, because these habits create our future. As Dryden has said-First we create our habits then our habits create us.
18. **Education for the moral and character development** – For this, parents and teachers should present in front of children, good ideals and conduct, because children are followers. Besides them they should be told the short stories of the ideal character, braves, politician and great men.
19. **Keep away from them punishment and fear** – A child should neither fear nor be punished on a trivial matter. Fear and punishment affect on the physical, mental, emotional, and social development. To keep him in discipline, the harmful ways of punishment should not be adopted; rather reward and punishment may be used properly.
20. **Emotional security** – The most important factor in the development of child is affection, which he gets from others, and he tries to give it to others. Besides society and guardians, even teachers should behave with the children affectionately, so that the child may also develop the feeling of love to others. Affection is greatly needed for the mental health.

Paying attention on the above discussions, the nature of child-education should be arranged.

## 5.2 Stages of Development: Childhood

Notes

The second stage of human development is childhood. Child enters in childhood after infancy. Child is unfamiliar to his surrounded conditions in his infancy. His body and mind are both under undeveloped condition. While entering in the childhood he is well developed. He begins to familiarize with his atmosphere. In this stage he begins to learn education related things, as personal and social behavior that is the basis of his future, so, it is necessary to pay attention to the main qualities of child, related to physical, mental, emotional and mental development.

### Importance of Childhood

Childhood begins after infancy. Upon entering into the childhood, child has been so developed that he begins to familiarize with the conditions of environment.

Psychologists have called this stage as “the creator of child”. In this stage child develops the pattern of personal, social, and education related habits, like behavior, interests, and desires, it is not easy to transform them. Throwing light on the importance of childhood, the opinion of Blair, Jones and Simpson are thus-no period during the life-cycle is more important than childhood from an educational point of view. Teachers who work at this level should understand the children, their fundamental needs, their problems, and the forces which modify and produce behavior changes.

It is clear from the above discussion of educational point of view, that childhood is an important stage of life. So for the personal development of this stage, guardians and teachers, being cautious should use all the ways and methods that may prove helpful in his natural and balanced development.

### Meaning of Childhood

Generally all the Psychologists have considered from six to twelve years’ age as childhood. Stability comes in the life of a child in this stage. And he prepares for further life. In the words of Hurlock-“Late childhood extends from the age of six years to the onset puberty, between eleven and twelve.

It is clear that childhood extends from six to twelve. In this stage, many changes take place in the child this age has been considered the best for the beginning of education. So, many Psychologists have said it ‘Elementary school Age’. In this stage, the feeling of establishing social relationship is predominantly seen in boys and girls. They make their different community. So the Psychologists have said this ‘Gang Age’.



Notes

Some people have called it ‘Smart Age’, because at this time, more energy is seen in the child. Because of the child’s involvement in games and sport, he is normally dirty and careless. It has been called the ‘Dirty Age’.

### Chief Characteristics of Childhood

Infancy in terms of development of the following attributes –

**(1) Stability in physical and mental growth** – Stability comes in the physical and mental growth in the childhood. This stage can be divided between two groups from the point of development view-six to nine, as Conservation period and ten to twelve as Consolidation period.

**Notes**

In infancy and pre-childhood (6 to 9) whatever is developed naturally in the child, in late childhood (10 to 12) begins to be more determined. Their fickleness becomes less than that of infancy, and he is seen behaving like an adolescent. Ross has said childhood calling childhood as 'Pseudo Maturity' – "Physical and mental stability is the most important quality of Childhood."

**(2) Growth in Mental ability** – At this time, there is growth in the mental ability of the child. The development of Emotional expression and memory is swift. There is growth in stable memory. The interest and distraction towards the things also grows.

**(3) Intensity of curiosity** – Child wants to know all about the things that he is close to. At this time he does not ask, "what is this?" but ask "Why is such so?" Ross has said about the tendency of child at this time. 'In Late childhood child becomes so much curious towards such things. How do these things happen, how do these things work etc, he collects a lot of information on different subjects, seeing him his elders become surprised.

**(4) Feeling of Self Dependence** – At this time child is not depended on others like infancy for his daily activities. He himself does his personal activities as bathing, wearing clothes, preparing for the school.

**(5) Interest in construction work** – children get a lot of joy in creative activities, as doing work in the orchard, preparing some things with the help of paper and wood. Girls also want to do some work in house as knitting, sewing and embroidering.

**(6) Development of Acquisition Instincts** – Along with the creativity works, acquisition instinct is also developed. Boys are seen collecting especially, old marbles, toys, the parts of machines and the pieces of stones, and the girls are seen collecting toys, dolls, the piece of clothes etc.

**(7) Intensity of gregariousness** – At this time child tries to spend his almost time with others children. Due to the intensity of gregariousness, he begins to understand, the physical and moral conditions, by which his conduct is controlled. Ross has said – "child often compulsorily, become the member any one of the community, who are regularly gathered to play good games, to do such these things, and about them elders are not to be told any things.

**(8) Development of Extrovert Tendency** – In infancy child is introvert. He takes interest within himself and lover of nature. But at this time he takes interest in going outside, looking external things, in knowing about other persons. Being an extrovert, he adjusts himself in the society.

**(9) Interest in Group game** – Under this stage, the tendency of taking part in group game is excessively developed. Game is the most important instinct of this stage. Psychologists have presented their opinion, in relation of this –

**Karlgroos** – "A person prepares his destiny by the game."

**Stanely Hall** – "The game of children is a revision of those works, which their ancestors have done, in the beginning of creation."

**Spencer** – "child spends his spare energy by games."

At this time girls also like to play with the boys. And the feeling of friendship is seen to be developed among them. There is also a difference between the games of boys and girls.

**(10) Social and Moral Development** – At this time child spends most of the times with his group members. And always ready to obey commands obtained from the group. His behavior is depended on the appreciation and criticism of others. There are many social virtues developed in them, as-obedience, co-corporation, good feeling, and patience. The opinion of Strange related to this is thus- " In the age six, seven and eight, the knowledge of good and bad, impartial behavior, honesty and the feelings of social values begin to develop in children."

**(11) Dormant Sex Impulse** – According to the Psychologist, since birth the sex instinct begins to develop in the child, but at this time the feelings of self love, and hatred towards parents diminish and the feeling of homo sexual love is arisen. The feeling of companionship is developed among boys and boys and girls and girls.

## Nature of Education in Childhood

## Notes

Childhood is the basis of child's life. So it is necessary to keep in mind the qualities of all sides of the development of child, then the nature of education may be decided. There is a close relationship between education and development. Education is a process of development, that is cleared by the meaning and different definitions of education. The responsibility of child's education is on the parents, teachers and society. So it is necessary to pay attention on the following points in deciding the nature of his education.

**(1) Attention on the Physical Development** – It has been said that Healthy brain is developed in healthy body. So from this point of view, it is necessary to pay attention on the physical development of child. Nutritious food and the opportunity of playing game should be given to them to keep them healthy.

Educational Psychologists have given importance to the activities in the education of child. Physically activity in schools and sports and exercise should give a prominent place.

**(2) Children Psychology** – Parents, Guardians, and teachers should have the knowledge of Children-Psychology, so that they may give them proper education.

**(3) Attention on the Language** – Attention should be paid on the knowledge of the language of the child, for this we should talk to them on the proper matter, tell them stories, give them magazines to read, should encourage them to take part in speech, debates and short stories competition in the school.

**(4) Syllabus** – Such subjects should be kept in the syllabus that are according to the interest of child, and related to his life. Syllabus should not be uninteresting and mechanical, he should not be loaded with the burden of many subjects and books, otherwise he manages to pass the exams by mugging up however it does not help him in this mental development.

**(5) Education Method** – In childhood education method should be interesting and based on the work and play method. Changes should take place in the educational method according to the interest of child. In modern Education system include kinder garten, Montessori basic project, Dalten etc activities and the education systems based on the work and play method.

**(6) Education by Work and play** – Playing is the natural and easy tendency of child. Educational-Psychologists have given importance to work and play in the education. The work is done by game helps in the physical, mental and social development of child. Playing method gives the child, the capability of learning with excitement and pleasure.

**(7) Attention on the mental condition** – Intellectual environment should be given for the mental development of children. At home and school they should be given all the needed ways and material, which could help them in mental progress. Child learns soon by following. For this, parents and teachers should present the behavior of good ideals and conduct. Under the mental development, intellectual capabilities of mind, the development of memorization, imagination, rumination, discussion, decision etc are included. They should be given the proper opportunity for the development of mind, that should encourage their curiosity and present new problem in front of them, so that they could use their memory, imagination, rumination, discussion and decision power.

**(8) Attention on the emotional expression** – It is necessary to give proper attention to their main instinct for the emotional development of children in childhood. There is an effect of emotion on physical and mental development. From this time education should be given to control undesirable emotions as- jealousy, resentment, hatred. For this, parents, teachers should behave with them with love and full of sympathy. Their emotion should not be suppressed which produce complexity in them. According to Strang – "Child should be helped in completing his emotion obtained by social acceptance instead of suppressing them. Emotional feelings and their expression are the basis of whole of their life."

**(9) Encourage the tendency of curiosity** – At this time child has predominant tendency of curiosity. He excites to know about each new thing. And 'how' etc, ask many questions. Hence Parents, teachers should give proper and appropriate responses to each of his things, so that his curiosity may be satisfied. After igniting up his zeal, new useful things can be taught. Thus, he himself gains knowledge.

**Notes**

**(10) Pay attention on the creative instincts**—This instinct can be seen clearly in the child from the beginning. As constructing the house with the help of sands and dust, create new things with the help of pieces of wood etc. So, different kinds of creativity acts should be arranged in the school, as under the creativity work, preparing any new things with paper, woods, dust, and to give the education of home science and craft in the reading subjects.

**(11) Encourage the tendency of collection**—In children the tendency of collection is found. Whatever things does he like, he collects them, so parents and teachers should inspire him to collect education related things, late tickets, coins, toys, pictures, books and other natural things etc.

**(12) Satisfaction of community tendency**—The tendency to live in the group is predominant in childhood. He does not like to live alone. He likes more to visit and to do work with other children and companions. And he also lives pleasantly with it. So for the development of community tendency he should be provided the opportunity and order of becoming the member of child convention, in the social activities, to take part in the scout boys and girls. In the school community activities' games should be properly arranged.

**(13) The arrangement of complementary syllabus activities**—For the development of mental and social abilities extra curricular activities should be arranged. Under this, nature expedition, wandering, sarasvati travelling, and other cultural program should be arranged time to time.

**(14) Development of social qualities**—In childhood, after family, the socialization of child happens in the school. So it is the duty of teacher that he creates such an environment in the class, school and play ground, which makes the child develop socially healthy. In school, such activities should be arranged, which help in the development of the social qualities in the child like discipline, self confidence, responsibility, obedience, humility, corporation, sympathy, and competition etc.

**(15) Moral education**—Moral education should be arranged regularly to give the knowledge of rules, limitation and moral values of society.

### **5.3 Stages of Development: Adolescence**

The third stage of human development is adolescence. It starts in the end of childhood and finishes in the beginning of adulthood. Physical, mental, social, and emotional changes take place in this age. They are very important from the point of view of personal development. Hence from the educational point of view, it is necessary to study the important qualities of adolescence and to ponder over the nature of education in adolescence.

#### **Significance of Adolescence**

In the stages of the development of human life, there in an important place of adolescence. This is the most complicated time of life. This time, child is in the transitional period of childhood and old age, because child lives between both of the ages. So neither he is considered child nor old. In this changing time, parents, teachers and guardians, and other persons, who keep interest in the goodness, welfare of future and present of child, and want the progress of society, should ponder seriously on the healthy development of all of those adolescents. As **Crow & Crow** has said, "Youth represents the energy of the present and the hope of future."

So it is clear that the guardians and the teachers should have all the information about the growing potentialities of development and interests and needs and the important qualities of growing adolescence, so that they could contribute properly in their development. From the educational point of view, it has been written on the importance of adolescence in the Haido Committee Report—"There is a tide which begins to rise in the vein of you that the age of eleven or twelve. It is called by the name of adolescence. If that tide can be taken at the flood, and a new voyage begun in the strength and along the flow of its current, we think that it will move on to fortune."

Today in the colleges, in the secondary, higher secondary, graduation classes most of the students are under the adolescence stage. In the current age, students problems, related to discipline has adopted a broad form. So it is very important and necessary to study its qualities for determining the nature of education, giving the proper direction to these adults for their, physical, mental, social, emotional and moral powers.

### Meaning of Adolescence

In English teenage is called Adolescence. This word has been made of Latin language's verb 'Adolescere'. It means to grow to maturity. According to **Blair Jones and Simpson** – "Adolescence is that period in the life of every person, which begins in the last of childhood, and come to an end in the beginning of adulthood." Other western scientists have defined the adolescence in the following way –

According to **Jarshield** – "Adolescence is a period through which, a growing person makes transition from childhood to maturity."

According to **Stenley Hall** – Adolescence is a period of great stress and strain storm and strike.

It is clear that Adolescence is the stage of development, that is started from blooming, and being risen to maturity it comes to an end.

Generally this stage is considered from twelve to eighteen, some differences are found among the different countries, in the period of the development of adolescence, due to, personality differences, culture, and climate. Adolescence is started soon in hot state than that of cold. The beginning of adolescence, in the girls is almost two years early than the boys.

Some Psychologists have divided it between two groups.

- (1) **Early adolescence** from twelve to sixteen years.
- (2) **Late adolescence** from seventeen to nineteen.

Seventeen years is the dividing point of both. As that **Hurlock** has said – "The dividing lines between early and late adolescence is placed around seventeen."

The period between late childhood and adolescence is called early adolescence. Child is not complete adult at this time, but changes are seen in his behavior, instinct, and attitude. Early adolescence has been called '**the stage of a big problem.**' because parents, guardians and teachers rebuke and prevent him on different matters. He always lives in the problematic condition. What may he do?

Early Adolescence has been '**The period of extreme fast and swift development.**' Along with the physical development, swiftness comes in all the sides of development.

**Stenley Hall** has said about early development ' an extreme stage of emotional confusion, unhappiness and human tension'. Some Psychologists have called it 'A naughty and Problem age.' According to the Psychologists- for the easiness and the comfort of the study, adolescence should be considered from twelve, thirteen to eighteen, nineteen years.



*Did u know?* Adolescence begins soon in hot countries than that of cold countries. The beginning of adolescence in girls is soon than that of boys.

### Theories of development of Adolescence

There is the two theories for the development of adolescence –

(1) **Theories of Saltatory Development** – Stenley hall has accepted this theory in his book 'Adolescence'. He has said that there are revolutionary changes take place in adults suddenly, which are not related to

**Notes**

the infancy and childhood. In the words of Stanley Hall, "Whatever changes happen in boys and girls, they come to leap in a moment."

**(2) Theory of Gradual Development**—The followers of this theory are **Thorndike, King and Hallingworth**. They have said—"Whatever newness is seen due to physical, mental, and emotional changes in the adults, those changes come in a sequence not in a moment." In this relation King has said, "As the sign of the arrival of a season is seen, so the childhood and adolescence is related to one-another."

**Chief Characteristics of Adolescence**

**Biggi and Hunt** have written related to the qualities of Adolescence, "The one word best characterizes adolescence is change. The change is physiological, sociological, psychological.

Adolescence has following characteristics, related to the changes, given in the definition:

**(1) Bodily Changes**—Many important bodily changes take place in adolescence. At this time physically point of view, the symptom of young age is seen, girls are grownup to womanhood and boys are grownup to manhood. From the physical point of view maturity comes in the girls and boys.

**(2) Mental Development**—In adolescence along with the physical changes, mental capability grows. These characteristics are specially found in that as, imagination, memorization, excess of day dreaming, discussion, increment in determination power and opposite moods.

**(3) Lack of Stability and Adjustment**—At this time the mental condition of adult is unstable like a baby. Ross has said adolescence 'Recapitulation of infancy'. At this time changes happen him with such swiftness, that sometimes he thinks this and sometimes that. His mental condition is unstable. Consequently he finds himself unable to adjust with the situation.

**(4) Emotional Life**—The life of adult is very emotional. He resolves to do uncommon and impossible work in emotional condition. Sometimes he is filled with unique zeal. And sometimes he is seen discouraged.

**(5) Contrasting Mental Moods**—In adults contrasting mental moods sometimes make him selfish and other time selfless. Due to this reason he is not able to adjust in the emotional life. Adolescence is the recapitulation of beginning childhood on higher level. Intellectually he is better than child, but he lives in more confusion and disordered emotionally. He becomes unpleasant on a trivial matter. Sometimes he is seen happy and smiling and other times sad, worried and distressed.

**(6) Mental Independence and Revolt to Authority**—Under this age, the feeling of mental independence is predominant. Adult does not want to live in the limitation of elder's order, various traditions, and rituals superstition. This does not satisfy him. Rather 'how it is' he wants to satisfy this. At this time his no taken for granted attitude is seen.

**(7) Maximum Development of Intelligence**—In adolescence the intellectual knowledge reaches on its highest point. It is the saying of Psychologists till the age of sixteen there is growth in mental age, mental age is known by intellectual tests. For the completeness of intellectual development, the capability of doing followings works comes in adult—

- (1) Capacity of abstract thinking on the basis of concepts.
- (2) Capacity of discussion and decision.
- (3) Capacity of concentration.
- (4) Capacity of memory span.
- (5) Capacity of creative imagination.

**(8) Changes in Interests**—In adolescence along with the changes in physical and mental, the changes take place in their interests also. There is also a similarity in the interests of boys and girls. Diversity

is also found in them. In both of them the tendencies of reading magazines, stories, fiction, novels and taking part in music, drawing, drama, watching movie, hearing radio, and trying to make their body beautiful etc can be seen also. In boys, taking interest in playing game, exercise, wandering, and doing adventurous work. The interests of the girls are seen in embroidering, dancing, music, to make their body beautiful with the ornaments.

**(9) Development of Sex Instincts**—Sexual Instinct is also arisen in adolescence. Psychologists Ross has followed the comment of Slaster—“Sex is the fundamental factor of adolescence, if not of all life, like the overflow of great river, it irrigates and fertilizers great tracks of life’s territory.

Undoubtedly the central fact of adolescence is Sexual development. It is the consideration of Dr Jones- The sexual history of infancy is recapitulated in adolescence. The repressed sex impulse of infancy which is in sleep in infancy, is awoken again. Due to the development of this stage, restlessness, biting the nails of hand, keeping the pencil in mouth are seen in the boys and in the girls, to wrap the shawl in her hand etc behavior are seen. The development of this tendency happens in three stages-

**(a) Self Love**—in the beginning this feeling is seen in the form of self love. He tries his best to make himself attractive. He looks himself, makes up himself, does not understand any one likes him; takes enjoy within himself, and loves himself. Freud has said this condition Narcissism.

**(b) Homo Sexual Feeling**— After the stage of self love, boy with boys, and girl with the girls, attracts and establishes closeness and friendship. This closeness can be seen in wandering together, talking to each other for long hours.

**(c) Hetero-Sexual Feeling**— At last in late adolescence, Due to, this feeling boys and girls attract and take interest toward each other. They are interested in visiting, talking, wandering and living together.

Here it is appropriate to say that these three stages of sexual development come at the fixed time one after another rather than living together.

**(10) Attitude of Dependence**— In the infancy, child is depended on his parents for each of his works. He considers himself reserved in the absence of his parents. In adolescence this condition is seen again like infancy. It is not necessary that this dependence is towards his parents; rather it can be towards that brave man, who is found in real life, in literature, and in history. Being affected towards the ideal virtues of these great men he becomes the follower of these ideals. And keeps faith towards them and worship them. So adolescence is also called ‘Hero-worship age’. The conduct of boys and girls are developed, taking the advantage of hero worship tendency.

**(11) Religious Feeling**— According to the above descriptive dependence tendency, religious feeling is risen in the youth, being affected by some aspect of the god, he believes in the existence of god. The enlightenment of religious feeling is in the form of patience, self control, sense of duty, and social service.

**(12) Feeling of Social Service**— There is the predominant feeling of social service in this age. In this relation Ross has said-“Adult develop and nurture the ideal of society. His kind heart is inspired by the love of human being. And he is always anxious for giving help in the development of ideal society.”

**(13) Exuberance of Imagination**— Adult is extremely imaginative. In the practical life he finds himself unable in fulfilling his dream. Consequently he begins to fulfill his dream not in the real life but in the imaginative world. He dives in the imaginative world on a trivial matter. Due to the predominance of imagination in this age he has a tendency of day dreaming. Due to the excess of this tendency he becomes self centered and introvert. Sometimes there is loss from this tendency. Socially opposite feeling originates in some adults. They begin to behave illogical and immoral and often become child convict. Sometimes, due to the imagination and day dreaming, adult expresses his creative imagination power and beauty in literature, music and vivid arts. They show their interest in performing role and in writing stories and fiction. By the sublimation of imagination tendency, the development of artistic power is possible in them, and they can be made poets, artists, storywriter, novel writer, dramatist, painters and musicians.

**Notes**

**(14) The Feeling of Altruism**— The selfishness of infancy takes the form of altruism in the adolescence. The feeling of abundance and sacrifice is predominantly seen in adult. He does not hesitate in giving up his life for the welfare of society and country. At this there is unique zeal and strength in them that gives birth to altruism. The history of world is the spectator of these things, being inspired to this feeling; adults gave challenge to the death to improve the evils of the society and the nation.

**(15) Feeling of Self Respect**— In adolescence, the feeling of self respect is predominant. They understand themselves insulted by the slightest things. So they should be guided properly with love and sympathy, instead of behaving with them unpsychologically. Due to the feeling of self respect, the feelings of dependence and the feeling of passing independent life is awoken. Sometimes due to this, they receive the shock to their self respect, the tendency of running away from home yield in them and they have to face many sufferings. Some examples can be given that due to the tendency of running away from home many people can be seen doing progress in life.

**(16) Development of Criminal Tendency**— Under this stage, due to the obstacles in filling desire, hopelessness, and getting failure, the tendency of criminal is developed in them. In this relation Valentine has said- "Adolescence is the delicate period, for the development of criminal tendency. A huge counting of experienced criminals began to take their occupational life seriously in the adolescence."

**(17) Development of Gregarious Tendency**— Adults boys and girls like very much to live with their companions and friends. Often they are the members of some community, and give greater importance to their community than school and family. The community which they are related to, their all activities are affected. They adopt the methods of language, moral values, habits of wearing clothes, having food according to the community. There is a special status of the adult belonging to the community, and they work according to it. The work and the condition of community contribute in determining their destiny.

**(18) Extrovert Tendency**— In adolescence, adults are extrovert again. Their physical, mental and social interests are developed extendedly. They take interest in activities of the surrounding environment. They want to participate in the different program of colleges and society. Due to the tendency of being extrovert they develop the virtues of self dependence, self control, corporation, the feeling of altruism.

**(19) Anxiety of Vocational Selection**— In this age, adult begins to get anxious about his future vocation. He begins to imagine to be a skillful doctor, engineer, lawyer, teacher, artist and a successful farmer and good life. He chooses his subjects according to the vocation.

After above discussion we reach on the conclusion that there are many new characteristics of child that are seen in the adolescence. Stenly Hall has commented on this- "Adolescence is a new birth, for the higher and more completely human traits are new born."

**Observation of the behavior in the adolescence**

Adolescence is the stage of transition, in which child is neither a child nor an old. Generally it can be divided between two parts, early adolescence and late adolescence. Early adolescence is that period of life, which is called the period of storm and confusion. There is no doubt in it that in this age he is conflicted with his parents, teachers and friends. His emotionality is grown in comparison of childhood. And it is difficult to live with it, they consider that old person aims at them for criticizing, insulting, and depreciating. After studying the behavior of adults following symptoms come –

1. New adults are unstable.
2. There are many complications in front of them.
3. New adults are sad and unsatisfied.
4. In new adults, there is predominance of – anger, fear, frustration, jealousy, affection, curiosity etc.
5. Now social behavior is changed.
6. They are progressive in making crowds and friends group, creating groups and parties.

7. Opposite sexual love is found in them.
8. The feeling of homo sexual is also found in them.
9. In adults imagination is in abundance.
10. The feeling of self is predominant in them.

Notes

To study their behavior, a brief questionnaire can be prepared including their brief introduction and their main problems etc.

### Self-Assessment

Choose the correct alternative:

1. "The whole sequence of life is determined by infancy" Who has given this definition of infancy –  
 (a) Freud                      (b) Hurlock                      (c) Adler
2. "Child in first six years learns double than the after twelve years." In the learning process whose thought are these-  
 (a) Gesell                      (b) Crow & Crow                      (c) Hurlock
3. Who has said infancy "the ideal of learning" –  
 (a) J. S. Ross                      (b) Valentine                      (c) Strang

### Nature of Education in Adolescence

It has been cleared after studying the main characteristics and the development related to changes that it is the most delicate and complicated time of life. At this time in adults there are revolutionary changes that take place, from physical and mental point of view. In this age he can be good, bad, lover of country and traitor, religious and irreligious, hard working and lazy, civil, humble and social or uncivilized, rude etc. so proper guidance is very important for adults. So it is the duty of parents, guardians, teachers to arrange well planned and proper Education, for the development of coming future of adults. In this relation, the sentences of **Valentine** is mentioned – "After long preaching on the part of Psychologist, the great importance of the period of adolescence from an educational point of view is at last being widely recognized."

The nature of education is decided according to the physical, mental, emotional, and social needs. It is necessary to pay attention on the following point related to this –

**(1) Education for Physical Development** – In adolescence, the development of body is swift. So first of all we should pay attention on the body this time. The arrangement should be in both of the places, school and house, to keep body healthy and powerful. For that, it is necessary to do the arrangement of nutritious food, healthy education, different kinds of exercises, and games. In the colleges, exercises and games related activities like exercise, wrestling, football, hockey, volleyball, kabaddi and other exercises should be arranged in the physical and motor development of the adults. With the help of these ,good physical health and cleanliness related habits are created and developed in them. The development of other side depends on the healthy physical development. Adults should be taken for wandering, travelling, picnic, and nature expedition.

**(2) Education for the Mental Development** – In adolescence according to the characteristics of mental development, the development of adults' intellectual power, observation power, discussion power, rumination power, memory, and imagination power can be done as per their interest, taste, ability and capacity. For this, in education, these things should be placed.

**(a)** In the syllabus, science, literature, history, geography, and changing subject should be placed.

**(b)** In the college library, speech room, laboratory, collection room should be provided.

**Notes**

(c) For the satisfaction of curiosity of adult, and for the training of observation power, and to teach the reading subjects, adults should be taken to natural and historical places for wandering.

(d) Taking the advantage of their interests, imaginations, day dreaming, and emotions, they could be engaged in literature, music, art, and scientific researches. For this, travelling, debate, literature convention, reading, change of curriculum activities should be arranged.

(e) **Language**—knowledge is closely related to mental development. So in the colleges they should practice to talk and write purely and special attention should be paid on their pronunciation.

**(3) Education for the Emotional Development**—Under adolescence, there is confusion in the emotional life of adults. Adults are seen unable to control the new feelings, and emotions. He keeps in conflict with different kinds of emotions. In these emotions, some of them are good and some are bad. Sometimes they have to face such conditions that they do not understand their duty. Under such condition they look sad and disappointed. And become the victim of mental complexities. Repressing and changing way of their wretched and distressed emotions, proper and better emotion can be developed.

(a) Education should be given for the sublimation of emotions and main instincts. This is the best method to train the emotions. The nature of the publication of the emotions is changed by this method. For this, his interest in literature, music, and cultural program should be awoken. The sexual instinct of poet Kalidas, changing in to love for literature, is the example of the sublimation of emotions. Taking the advantage of sexual instinct in adults, courtesy, artistic interest, goods habits, can be developed.

(b) Taking the advantage of Hero worship feeling and the tendency of idealism, character building and beautiful stable feelings can be developed. For this, the biographies of great men, and good literature should be given to them to read.

(c) Proper environment should be provided to them for giving moral and religious education.

(d) It is necessary for the guardians and the parents to study the emotions of adults for giving them emotional education.

**(4) Education for the Social Development**—An important work of the education is to develop the social feeling. Without the social development, a person cannot establish adjustment in his atmosphere. Extra curricular activities of school, magazines, akashvani etc have a great impact on the social development. Keeping the social development in mind, it is necessary to pay attention on the following things in education—

(a) To give the knowledge of social adjustment.

(b) To give importance to group morality and to do efforts for the development of characteristics leadership, zeal, corporation, sympathy, goodwill in them.

(c) To develop the feeling of friendship.

(d) To develop the feeling of healthy competition.

(e) To do the arrangement of group extra curricular program, and encourage them to take part in them.

(f) To introduce with his country, society, and human culture.

**(5) Religious and Moral Education**—Good ideals, behavior and conduct should be presented in front of them for the development of moral character. Ross has said-“Moral conduct is highly developed, when behavior, social appreciation, is directed by ideals not blames.” In adolescence, continued opposite thoughts arise in mind. Adolescent does differentiate between proper and improper. So in the college he should be given moral education.

**(6) Education on the Basis of Personality Differences**—According to the capacity, ability, interest and liking of adolescent, various kinds of syllabus should be arranged, for the education of adolescent in the colleges. Along with this Educational guidance and Vocation guidance should also arranged in the colleges and syllabus include such subjects, by which, in future he can choose any occupation as per his interest and need.

**(7) The use of Proper Education Method** – The tendency of own observation, discussion, thinking and rumination is grown in the adolescent. Adolescent is neither satisfied, nor benefitted by the methods of giving traditional education. So Mr. Ross has said, “The training of the subjects should be practical, and it should establish direct relationship with the daily life.

**(8) Need of Sexual Education** – In adolescence, most of the problems are related to this tendency. In Indian families, even a bit of attention is not paid for giving this kind of education, because shyness and hesitation is felt on the discussion of this matter. Consequently, the effect, of ignorance of this subject, on the boys and girls, is bad. It is the thinking of modern scientist-“ In adolescent, for guiding the sexual tendency in a proper way, it is necessary to give them proper education properly. Expressing his opinion on the need and method of this education Mr. Ross has said-“ Nobody can refuse the necessity of sexual education. There is need of this thing, that adolescent should be guided by such an adult, in who he confides fully.”

**(9) Sympathize Behavior** – Due to different changes happening in the adolescence, the different problems arise with which, adolescent always lives in a confusing condition. His complication and for the solution of his problem, parents, guardians, and teachers should behave with him sympathetically. Under this stage adolescent does not like controls and imprisonments, given by his elders. He wants freedom for doing his work. So giving him the responsibility of doing his work independently, an opportunity should be provided to him.

### Role of Teacher in Adolescence

Adolescence has been called the stage of tension and confusion. It is the age, when adolescent is neither a child, nor a complete adult. It has been called the stage of changes. There is abundance of changes in this stage. There are many physical and mental changes in this age. The nature of their moral, social, and emotional life is changed in this age.

This stage has important place in the development of human life. There are many revolutionary changes in this age. Bigge and Hunt – “The one word which best characteristic adolescence is change. The change is philosophical, sociological and psychological.”

There is a new power and unique energy in the adolescent boys and girls under the adolescence. New ambitions begin to rise in them in new form. New drives and feelings drive them. Their interests are changed according to the change in their mind and body. The sign of adults indicate in them, and imaginations fill their mind. Due to the physical changes, their emotional balance becomes non existent. Restlessness and instability creep in them. Tension and conflict originate in them. So in this condition, it is the responsibility of teacher, by giving his proper contribution, he may guide them. Behaving as a friend, he pacifies their curiosity. And give them different kinds of education.

**(1) The Arrangement of Physical Education** – In adolescence, there are many changes in the body of adolescent boys and girls. So in this condition it is the duty of teacher that he shall be made aware of the balanced development of their body. For this, physical education should be made a compulsory subject. Along with guardians, their parents should be inspired for giving good nutritious food.

**(2) Education of Social Awareness** – In adolescence the tendency of social awareness, and cooperativeness in every task is found in high intensity. So here it is responsibility of teacher that in such condition he may develop the best qualities as, corporation, love, sense of duty, honesty, and sympathy in them. In the college they should organize such community, by which they can receive the above qualities, as the member of that society. In it, the creative role of group games, scouting, travelling, NCC, NNS, etc is admirable. So in the college, adolescent should be given natural, effective and democratic environment. Only then the social awaking is possible in proper way. Able, courtesy, controlled, full of sympathy, corporative, affectionate, tender, and aware for his duty, teacher, can give important corporation in the well being and social development of adolescents. According to Strang, “The daily contact of a teacher, who is realistic, social, receptive and able, corporate very much in the social development of a child.”

**Notes**

**(3) Emotional Education** – There is abundance of emotions in adolescent. He expresses different kinds of behavior on different occasion. According to B. N. Jha – “There is so much difference in the emotional development of adolescent that adolescent can express different kind of behavior on different occasion under a condition. The condition that makes him pleasant on one moment, the same condition makes him unhappy on the other moment.” Along with this, due to the predominance of sexual instinct, the emotion of love is very intense. According to B.N. Jha-“In adolescent, the sexual instinct is so intense that it affects differently on their emotional behavior.” Teacher’s role, in the balanced emotional development of child, is important. After the family, teacher is the important person who affects much the emotional behavior of the child. Teacher can develop in them the desirable emotions, by presenting good examples, expressing the desire of following good ideals and by creating the good environment, and can prevent the growing of undesirable emotions. Thus, teacher can develop an ideal character by developing in them good habits. So it is necessary, that the behavior of teacher towards the adolescent, should be affectionate, sympathetic, tender and delicate.

**(4) Mental Development** – In adolescence like the physical changes, mental changes are also intense. Woodbirth has considered – “the mental development of person is on its highest point in the stage of fifteen to twenty.” According to B. N. Jha – “As far as in the relation of intellectual development, under the adolescent, it reaches on its highest point.” So it is necessary that the teacher should have full knowledge about the mental development of adolescents. Teacher should have proper attention for the physical health of adolescent. They should be given special education about the development of body and health by teaching. The arrangement of games and practice of the exercise etc should also be done. To encourage the tendency to follow, collect, curiosity, by the teacher good habits should be developed in adolescents. People should give occupational direction, on the basis of mental abilities, inclination and interest, by which he can determine his future.

**(5) Language Development** – Language is a powerful way to express feelings. A person conveys his feelings and thought to some one else with the help of it. The development of the language is very important in the social and emotional development of the adolescents. In adolescence, the vocabulary of the adolescents becomes very strong. According to the standards published by Stanford Binet Scale, the choice of selection of words of the adolescents grows in the following way, nine thousand words at the age of 14, eleven thousand and seven hundred words at the age of 16, thirteen thousand five hundred words at the age of 18. The ability of selection of words of the adolescents of high social and economical order happens better than those of poor socio-economical status. In this stage, because of the abundance of imagination, the interest in story, poetry and literature become dominant, which helps in the development of the language. Hence it is important that the teacher shall introduce to them good literature and encourage them to study it, so that not only good language skill develop in them, but good thoughts take shape in their thinking. This healthy thinking is the basis of their future life.

**(6) Arranging Programs for the Intellectual Activities** – In adolescence, boys and girls develop greatly. Hence the teacher shall be effortful for their intellectual development. Like exercise is important for the development of the body, in the same way, the intellectual exercise is necessary for the intellectual development in the schools, like questionnaire, debate, riddles, speech, poetry, and essay writing shall be arranged. With the help of the intellectual tests, these activities can be contributed. Often all the psychologists have accepted that intellectual tests give important information about the learning. These tests are important for the knowledge of the various subject abilities of adolescents. A successful shall know all these aspects in great deal.

**(7) Sexual Education** – Sexual education is an important education in adolescence. Because are physical changes in this stage, as a result of which there is storm of sexual feelings. At the root of various problems of the adolescents, there is sexual instinct. Therefore there is instability in their emotions and behavior and interests. Hence the teacher shall impart the sex education to the adolescents so that it develops a healthy attitude in them regarding sex. The beginning of adolescence produces fear and doubt in the adolescents. Adolescents have night fall which excrete their sperm. Girls have menstrual cycle, because of which their blood excretes, and because of having no knowledge of these activities, both, boys and

girls are anxious. And they regard it as a disease. Hence in this stage, boys before night fall, and the girls before the menstrual cycle, shall be taught about the structure and the working of sexual organs. And with the help of this, a healthy attitude shall be developed in the boys and girls for the opposite gender. They shall also be taught the process of intercourse. But the nature of the education shall not be arousing. The teacher should deploy the youth in kinds of the works which may transform the sexual energy, like literature, music, art and social welfare etc.

## Notes



**Notes** After the intellectual debates of the late years of the last century, the government has emphasized the need to include the sexual education in the school curriculum. Present your opinion discussing its positive and negative outcomes.

**(8) The Use of proper education methods**—The physical and mental development is on peak in adolescence. Hence the teacher shall use such methods of education, that the boys and girls get an opportunity to test, practice, and the ability to debate by themselves. Even in this stage do and learn shall be focused. In this way the imagination also develops in the adolescents. Hence the teacher can use it in teaching. He shall be given the opportunities to express himself. For this, extracurricular activities shall be given the due attention. With the help of above methods, this stage can be guided properly. It is the responsibility of the teacher to develop the self-control and discipline in the students.

**(9) The proper conduct of the teacher**—the teacher is an ideal for the student. His conduct affects the students greatly. An adolescent shall not be treated like a baby. Many teachers, guardian and parents think adolescents as babies which irritates them. Hence the teacher needs to behave with them in sympathetic and mature way, so that their emotional behavior is stable. It is necessary to give them the moral education in the state of mental conflict. The moral education shall be practical instead of based on principles. For this the teacher shall lead by examples rather than preaching.

**(10) The Educational Travelling and life philosophy**—In this stage, the teachers shall arrange the educational tours so that it helps the moral, social and mental development of the adolescents. In the beginning of adolescence there is no definite aim towards life. He feels weal-woe, zeal and disappointment, and moral-immoral, mutually opposite feelings. In this way, he wishes to develop his life philosophy after the mental conflict. Hence the teacher needs to give them the knowledge of life philosophy.

## 5.4 Summary

- A human takes birth in the form of a progressive creature, and from the beginning till the end he keeps on developing.
- In Educational Psychology the developing child is studied. From the point of view of Educational Psychology, dividing the child-development into various stages is considered important, and each stage is studied separately. Educational organizations from the child psychiatrist - development is divided into the following three parts - (1) infant (2) childhood (3) adolescence.
- Infancy is the most important stage among all the stages of human development. Psychologists have said that “infancy decides the entire sequence of human life.” In the infancy physical, mental, social and emotional development happens with a rapid pace. In the last years of infancy, social feelings develop. From the point of view of education, infancy is the most important phase of life.
- The second stage of human development is childhood. Child enters in childhood after infancy. Child is unfamiliar to his surrounded conditions in his infancy. His body and mind are both under undeveloped condition. While entering in the childhood he is well developed. He begins to familiarize with his atmosphere. In this stage he begins to learn education related things, as personal and social

**Notes**

behavior that is the basis of his future, so, it is necessary to pay attention to the main qualities of child, related to physical, mental, emotional and mental development.

- The third stage of human development is adolescence. It starts in the end of childhood and finishes in the beginning of adulthood. Physical, mental, social, and emotional changes take place in this age. They are very important from the point of view of personal development. This is the most complicated time of life. This time, child is in the transitional period of childhood and old age.

### **5.5 Keywords**

1. **Action Senses** – The organs with which the actions are performed like hand, eye and speech etc.
2. **Knowledge Senses** – the senses that help in knowing the matter like eyes, ear, nose etc.

### **5.6 Review Questions**

1. “Infancy decides the entire sequence of human life.” Describe the importance of infancy in light of this statement.
2. What are the importance aspects in related to the education of the infants?
3. Throw some light on the important points of the physical and mental changes in adolescence.

### **Answers: Self-Assessment**

- (1) (c)                      (2) (a)                      (3) (b)

### **5.7 Further Readings**

1. Psychology – *Dr. Saryu Prasad, Agra Book Store, Agra*
2. Education Psychology – *S.K. Mangal, PHI Learning Pvt. Ltd., New Delhi*
3. Development of Learner and Educational Learning Process – *A.K. Verma, Hindi Book Centre, New Delhi*
4. Psychology – *A study of Human Behavior: Brij Kumar Mishra, PHI Learning, New Delhi*

## Unit-6: Learning

### CONTENTS

Objectives

Introduction

- 6.1 Nature of Learning
- 6.2 Definition of Learning
- 6.3 Process of Learning
- 6.4 Features of Learning Process
- 6.5 Types of Learning
- 6.6 Summary
- 6.7 Keywords
- 6.8 Review questions
- 6.9 Further Readings

### Objectives

After the study of this unit, students will be able to –

- Understand the nature of learning.
- Know the process and characteristics of learning.
- Understand the different types of learning.

### Introduction

Man is a learning creature, and learning process begins not only since his birth but also in the womb of his mother. In Mahabharata brave Abhimanyu obtained the knowledge, of breaking the ring shaped formation of troops, in the womb of his mother. This is the direct instance of learning. Learning is a life long process. Man learns throughout his whole life. In the beginning, infant is helpless and dependent on others, but slowly he tries to adjust himself according to the atmosphere. In this adjustment, he tries to take the advantages by the experiences of the process, which is called learning by the Psychologists. Learning is an important subject in the study of Educational Psychology. First the word 'Know' was used for learning.

Notes

## **6.1 Nature of Learning**

Learning is an extensive word. Learning depends on the inborn responses. Being inspired by the inborn instinct, a man does whatever activities there are for the adjustment of his situation. According to the Psychologists- Learning is a mental process. A mental process is expressed by the behavior. A man is changed and refined on the basis of the experiences in his behavior. Two factors are included in the process of learning – maturity and ability to take the advantage from the earlier experiences. For example, if a burning stove is kept in front of a baby, he touches it because of his curiosity, as soon as he touches it, his hand burns; he draws away his hand rapidly. Then he does not go by the side of it any time, because he has learnt by his experience that fire will burn him. Thus, Learning is the progressive change in the behavior by the earlier experiences. On the basis of this, we can say that learning is an education. Learning and Education, the both indicate the same process. Both activities go on forever and every where in life. Child, growing towards the maturity, taking the advantage of his experiences, does whatever proper responses, that is called learning. As Blair Jones and Simpson have said- “any change of behavior which is a result of experience and which causes people to face later situation differently may be called learning.”

It is necessary to study the given definitions by the Psychologists to clear the meaning and nature of learning.

## **6.2 Definition of Learning**

(1) **According to Morgan and Gilliland** – “Learning is the behavior of the organism as a result of experience which is retained for at least a certain period of time.”

(2) **Gates and Others** – “Learning is the modification of behavior through experience and training.”

(3) **Woodbirth** – “the process of acquiring new knowledge and new responses is the process of learning.”

(4) **Skinner** – “Learning is process of progressive behavior adaption.”

(5) **Crown bank** – “Learning is shown by a change in the behavior as a result of experience.”

(6) **Crow & Crow** – “Learning is the acquisition of habits, knowledge and attitudes.”

(7) **Thorn dike** – “Learning is selecting the appropriate responses and connecting it with the stimulus.”

(8) **Kuppuswami** – “Learning is a process by which an organism, as a result of its interaction in a situation, acquires a new mode of behavior, which tends to persist and affect the general behavior pattern of the organism, to some degree.”

(9) **Parik** – “Learning is the process of acquiring assimilating and internalizing cognitive, motor or behavior inputs for their effective and varied use when required and leading to enhanced capability of further self- mentioned learning.”

(10) **Gaine** – “Learning is a change in human disposition or capability which can be retained and which is not simply ascribed to the process of growth. The kinds of change called learning exhibits itself as a change in behavior and in the interference of learning is made by comparing what behavior was possible before the individual was placed in a learning situation.”

(11) **Browne and Extend** – “Learning is intimately related to the basis behavior characteristics of knowledge.”

Psychologists have given many definitions of learning to make clear the conception of learning. For example, some definitions have been presented above. In fact the collection of the above definitions have been done on the basis of this, which could make clear the opinion of learning from the multi angle point of view. In spite of being completely independent, the above definitions are complementary to each other. The following things of learning factor are explained with the combination of many definitions –

- (1) There is change in the behavior by the process of learning as having been burnt in the fire, an infant does not go close to fire.
- (2) Whatever changes happen in the behavior, keep on till sometime, as he does not forget it soon that there is a lot of pain, after having a burn from the fire.
- (3) The change in the behavior is based on the earlier experiences, if a child has burn from fire, then he works in such a fashion while working with fire that he does not get a burn again.
- (4) The change that happens in the behavior could be externally visible, invisible or partially visible.
- (5) There are permanent changes in the behavior or doing work in the learning related way. The changes happening in the behavior in the form of doing work, cannot include those changes, which are originated from the main instincts, maturity, addiction, and tiredness.
- (6) Learning is the refinement of behavior. Once the changes take place in the behavior, that changed behavior can be improved in a new situation.
- (7) The learner obtains growth again and again in cognitive, affective and conative fields by the learning, which helps him with the progressive change in his behavior.

### **6.3 Process of Learning**

The process of learning has been cleared with the help of above definitions. The process of learning moves on throughout the life consciously or unconsciously. Developing by individual learning process. Its basis is maturity. Inspiration is necessary in the process of learning.

**According to Guthrie** – “Ability to learn is to respond differently to situation because of the past experiences to a situation.”

**According to the Peel** – “Learning is a change, in a person which, happens according to the changes in his environment.” Peel has explained the process of learning in brief –

- (1) By learning, permanent and temporary, both types of changes come in a person.
- (2) Learning is different from the easy, natural activities of person as blinking the eye and to draw the hand etc.
- (3) Learning is possible by the social and biological adjustments or conscious purposes.
- (4) Learning can originate both types of behaviors as social, unsocial in a person.
- (5) Education can be faultless and faulty.

**Psychologist Boaz has said** – “Learning is the process which the individual acquires various habits, knowledge and attitudes that are necessary to meet the demand of life in general.”

**According to Woodbirth** – “Learning consists in doing something new provide the new activity is reinforced and reappears in latter activities.”

This definition is revealed by doing **Skinner’s** experiment on the mice.

### **6.4 Features of Learning Process**

In the definitions of learning, Psychologists have given a specific type of nature to the process of learning. If the specific process of learning is analyzed, the following characteristics of learning process are highlighted:

**(1) Learning is universal** – Learning is such a process, which happens in the living beings in all the times and all the places. Wherever there is a being, place and time, the process of learning will take place. Human being keeps on engaging in doing something every time.

Notes

**(2) Learning is change**—The change that happens in the behavior of child is learning. Learning is that process, by which the change will appear in the child. By the learning, the sequence of changes and re-changes move on, by which child becomes the outcome of the changes.

**(3) Learning is development**—The development of child is possible by the process of learning. The contribution of learning in the whole development of child is so much important, that learning becomes the synonym of development. The Psychologists have considered that the personality of child is developed in form of progressive changes and refinement, which is possible by the process of learning. Learning is seen in the form of development.

**(4) Learning is adjustment**—Child establishes adjustment with the society and the environment by the learning process. The process of adjustment is so close to the process of learning that we understand adjustment as learning. In fact Human being has to adjust with the environment to survive. So he has to do the process of learning for his survival. Gates and others have accepted learning as an adjustment.

**(5) Learning is Purposive**—It is necessary to have some purpose for learning. The goal of learning could be attained by purpose only. Purposiveness decides the aim of learning, and provides the direction to the responses.

**(6) Learning is continuous**—Learning is neither limited to any age, or any period. Rather, it continues throughout the life.

**(7) Learning is creative**—It is the tendency of human nature, to do some creative work. Thus, doing such work is learning, which he manifests in the form of thoughts and actions. Creativity encourages man, by initiative towards learning.

**(8) Learning is response to total situation**—A person establishes adjustment with different kinds of situations after examining them on the basis of completeness. He continues to learn to do the right responses for the adjustment to the situation. So learning is a delivery of right responses to total situation of a person.

**(9) Learning is a relationship between stimuli and responses**—To establish the right and desirable responses with any stimuli is learning. On the basis of this fact, Psychologists have delivered the word 'relational' in the study of learning.

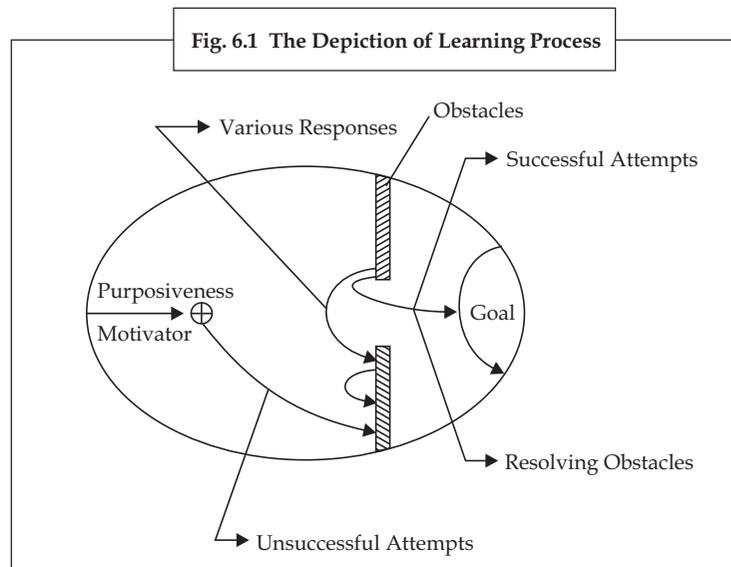


*Did u know?* The process of learning goes on throughout the life.

**(10) Learning is related with cognitive, affective and conative domains**—whatever a man learns, its field is cognitive, affective and co-native. And learning is related with cognitive, affective and co-native fields, he collects knowledge, feelings and collects skill to do activities.

**(11) Learning is Transferable**—A person can use the same skills and solutions of the problem in the other similar problems, which he has learnt in any situation. Means, learning transfers. Thus, learning is transferable.

**(12) Learning is a process**—From the psychological point of view learning is a process, which moves on in a living environment. This process is seen, in the fulfillment of the need, under the condition of stimuli- responses, in obtaining the goal, in obtaining the success in the adjustment, and in the stabilization of behavior and practical change. It is cleared that there are four important parts in the process of learning. It can be understood by the following diagram:



It is evident from the above diagram, that, being motivated by a purpose, a person begins the process of learning. In case of not being purpose motivator the process of learning does not begin. In the process of learning, firstly a person does various efforts to get his goal. In which some efforts are success and some are failure. Failure efforts do not penetrate the obstacles in obtaining the goal. Successful efforts, piercing the obstacles, help in obtaining the goal. There are four phases of learning process –

**(i) Need or Purpose** – In the process of learning, first the need for purpose or motive originates. Need is that bodily power, which makes power active for its fulfillment.

**(ii) Goal** – Need is goal aspiring, which makes a person act till acquiring the goal. The process of learning is not effective in the absence of goal perception.

**(iii) Adjustment** – A person establishes adjustment with the situation to get the goal. He tries many times to pierce the obstacle. In which the efforts that help in getting the goal after piercing the obstacle, is called successful efforts and rest are failures.

**(iv) Change** – By the process of learning, change comes in the behavior of a person that differs from the former behavior or that was not present in the behavior of the person earlier. Being permanent, this change becomes a part of a person's acquired behavior. Though, it is possible to make change in this as well. This is called the process of reinforcement.

### Self Assessment

Use the sign of right (✓) and wrong (×) in front of given statements:

1. The process of learning comes to an end after the infancy.
2. Learning can be faulty or faultless.
3. According to Crow & Crow – “Learning is the acquisition of habits, knowledge and qualities.”
4. Learning develops negativity in a person.

Notes

**Steps in the Process of Learning**

After analyzing the process and the definition of learning, the steps of learning are found. Psychologist **Miller** and **Dollard** have expressed their opinion on these steps –

“In order to learn one must want some thing, notice some thing, do some thing and get some thing.”

**Dashiell** has explained the steps of learning process more clearly. In these steps (1)Motivation, (2) purpose, (3) complication, (4) various responses for getting purpose, (5) reinforcement (6) unification are important. In the process of learning, motivation is originated in a person to fulfill his need, which has its some purpose, being inspired with the purpose, he becomes active. Every action and behavior of a person has its own purpose means his action is purposeful. The third step in the process of learning is – To have obstacle in the process of learning. On finding the obstacles, he gives various responses or behaves differently in order to achieve his aim. Whatever kind of behavior he does to remove the obstacle by his skill that includes the process of learning. Among the various types of possible responses, the response that helps in the fulfillment of purpose is reinforced. And he repeats that successful process in the peculiar situation. Thus reinforcement is an important step in the process of learning. The description of this theory has been done further. After this, the earlier knowledge of new successful responses connects to many activities. Thus, when the new experiences connect to the earlier experiences, it becomes the part of his knowledge, it has been called by the psychologist ‘pre-compliance’, and the process of learning is accomplished by the above step.

**Learning and Maturity** – Maturity has great effect on the process of learning. Maturity means the physical development. Mental ability also develops along with the physical development. There are changes in the behavior of the human as a result of this development. The change in the behavior happens due to maturity and learning. The process of learning goes on throughout life. In this way the development of the human being takes place. Maturity is also a continuous process of development. Maturity means that children become capable to doing something at a certain age which they were not able to do earlier. Maturity and the process of learning are closely related. The physical instrument of learning like spinal chord and nerves help us in learning. As the body of the child grows towards maturity, he begins to use the powers within, and his behavior keeps on changing. For this change, physical, motor and mental maturity is needed. In relation to the learning and maturity, the opinion of **Boring**, **Longfield**, and **Weld**, “Maturity means that growth and development which is necessary before the learning of any special kind of behavior.” So the physical and mental maturity is needed before learning. In this relation, **Psychologists Dennis, McGraw** and **Strayer** etc have concluded after experimenting on the twin sisters that maturity is needed for learning. In order to learn the skill which requires physical and mental maturity, forcing some one to learn it early is not beneficial or psychological. Mr. Dennis did an experiment on twin girls. One girl was trained to climb the staircase after five months whereas the other girl was not at all trained. After one year it was observed that both girls were equally capable of climbing the staircase. It is evident from this experiment that physical and mental maturity is necessary for the learning of any skill. The training given in the immaturity is useless. Hence it is harmful to force the child to learn maths, read and get knowledge of any subject. Learning under immaturity harms the child. It affects the physical health of the child as well. Hence it hinders his natural development. Hence it is necessary to focus on the level of maturity the process of learning.



Notes

Physical and mental maturity is necessary for learning. The training under immaturity is proved fruitless. To train a child read and write in infancy is harmful.

## 6.5 Types of Learning

It is not easy to describe the types of learning. Because it can be classified with various angles, hence keeping in mind the learning methods, principles, theories, ways of learning, subject matter it can be divided in the following way –

**(1) Sensory Motor Learning** – It includes the skill attainment knowledge. In this kind of learning various kinds of skills are attained. It includes various skills, like swimming, cycling, typing and painting etc. Learning of emotional activities comes under it. A child learns after following the daily activities, like he learns to talk by repeating and hearing meaningless words.

**(2) Motor Learning** – In the first stage of development children learn to control the movement of the parts of the body.

**(3) Intellectual Learning** – It includes the processes of obtaining knowledge which are following:

**(a) Perceptual Learning** – Under this, a child reacts or responds after hearing or listening the entire situation on mental level with the help of sensory organs.

**(b) Conceptual Learning** – In this kind of learning he has to take help of logic, imagination and rumination. On this subject, logic and imagination have been described in detail.

**(c) Associative Learning** – Conceptual learning becomes possible because of this kind of learning. This kind of learning comes under memorizing. It has been described in the lesson dedicated to memory.

**(d) Appreciative Learning** – In this kind of learning, children learn to explain emotionally, or describe something with beautification. With the help of these descriptions various types of learning, the purposes of learning becomes evident. These have been described in the book further.

**(e) Programmed Learning** – It has been described in a separate chapter.



*Task*

In the current education systems, the childhood has been taken away from children. Please give your opinion on the age of the child for primary education and development of learning process.

If we examine the conditions of learning, then we find the following types of learning –

**(1) Simple Learning** – When a child learns something independently and simply by playing, it is called simple learning, like a child learns to keep away from the fire during his play. In the response to such simple process he learns easily, he does not have any organized response.

**(2) Complex Learning** – Complex learning includes complex and organized processes and the level of complexity also increases, as the child learns the music, it becomes necessary for him to understand various notes and sounds, and moving forward he has to learn the complex process of symphonies and melodies. In complex learning a child has to establish a balance in various skills and processes.

**(3) Sudden Learning** – Sudden learning happens un-precedented, like a child learns something new in a mutual discussion. In this child is conscious of learning, neither he tries to learning anything systematically. He just learns all of sudden.

**(4) Purposeful Learning** – Purposeful learning as a result of effort. A child has to make effort consciously and knowingly to learn something. A child decides the goal of learning and becomes active systematically. If a child wishes to learn mathematics, then he will go to person who can teach the principles of mathematics. It is also self practiced.

## 6.6 Summary

- Learning is a life long process. Man learns throughout his whole life. In education psychology, learning is the main subject.

**Notes**

- Learning is an extensive word. Learning depends on the inborn responses. Being inspired by the inborn instinct, a man does whatever activities there are, for the adjustment of his situation. According to the Psychologists- Learning is a mental process. A mental process is expressed by the behavior. A man is changed and refined on the basis of the experiences in his behavior.
- In order to explain the meaning of learning, psychologists have given many definitions for it. Like according to Crow and Crow, "Learning is acquisition of habits, knowledge and attitudes."
- Motivation is necessary in the process of learning. Learning can produce social and un-social responses in a man.
- Maturity has great effect on the process of learning. Maturity means the physical development. Mental ability also develops along with the physical development. There are changes in the behavior of the human as a result of this development. The change in the behavior happens due to maturity and learning. The process of learning goes on throughout life. In this way the development of the human being takes place. Maturity is also a continuous process of development.
- The physical instrument of learning like spinal chord and nerves help us in learning. As the body of the child grows towards maturity, he begins to use the powers within, and his behavior keeps on changing. For this change, physical, motor and mental maturity is needed.
- Learning under immaturity harms the child. It affects the physical health of the child as well. Hence it hinders his natural development. Hence it is necessary to focus on the level of maturity the process of learning. They both are dependent on each other.

**6.7 Keywords**

1. **Learning** – To learn or obtain knowledge
2. **Maturity** – Here maturity means the physical development

**6.8 Review Questions**

1. Please explain the nature and types of learning with the help of these definitions.
2. What do you understand by the nature of learning, kindly explain the characteristics of the process of learning.
3. Please explain the various types of learning.

**Answers: Self Assessment**

1. (x)                      2. (✓)                      3. (✓)                      4. (x)

**6.9 Further Readings**



**Books**

1. Psychology – A study of Human Behavior – Brij Kumar Mishra, PHI Learning, New Delhi
2. Psychology – Dr. Saryu Prasad, Agra Book Store, Agra
3. Education Psychology – S.K. Mangal, PHI Learning Pvt. Ltd., New Delhi
4. Development of Learner and Educational Learning Process – A.K. Verma, Hindi Book Centre, New Delhi

## Unit-7: Nature of Education Theory

### CONTENTS

Objectives

Introduction

- 7.1 What is Teaching?
- 7.2 Factors of Influencing Learning
- 7.3 Importance of Learning for Teachers
- 7.4 Summary
- 7.5 Keywords
- 7.6 Review Questions
- 7.7 Further Readings

### Objectives

After the study of this unit, student will be able to –

- Know, what is teaching?
- Understand the factors of influencing learning.
- Understand the importance of learning for a teacher.

### Introduction

Teaching is an important part of learning process. A person is capable and successful in acquiring new knowledge by it. The direction of educational process is possible by human behavior and its emotions. In order to make education process effective, teaching has been considered the central object in the field of teaching. In the field of Psychology, the process of learning is not only considered as a proper Psychology but also the different parts of it as-teacher, student, syllabus, and the process of learning has been given an important place. It has been proved now that learning should be given important. It is necessary to understand the meaning of teaching, before pondering over the nature and theory of teaching.

### 7.1 What is Teaching?

Most of the people have an illusion about teaching. They consider that the meaning of teaching is to mug up or fill up a mind with knowledge, but in fact, it is wrong. Teaching is a phenomenon. The following definitions can be seen to clear the meaning of teaching:

**Notes**

**Dr. Mathur** – In the present times the word teaching does not mean that child's filled with useless and impractical things. Now teaching means that the child should be provided with such opportunities, by which child could get the ability to solve his problems according to his conditions and nature. He could plan himself, collect the material, and well organize it and get the result, which he could take in use again.

**Thomas E. Clayton** – "Teaching is a skill, that is used for the increment of the knowledge and to lit up the interest and aptitude in the students. That is a transmission between two or more people, in which a person involved with another in learning. This is a practice done in the school, in which a person, who is already educated, teaches children."

**B.F Skinner** – "Teaching is the arrangement of contingencies under which students learn. They learn without teaching their natural environment, but teachers arrange special contingencies which expedites learning, hastening the appearance of behavior, which would otherwise be acquired slowly or making sure the appearance of behavior which might otherwise occur."

**Clarke** – "Teaching activities are performed to produce change in student's behavior."

**B. O. Smith** – "Teaching is a system of actions intended to produce learning."

**Gates** – "Learning is the modification of the behavior through experience and training."

**Burton** – "Teaching is the stimulation, guidance, direction and encouragement of learning."

The following factors come after the study of above definitions –

1. Teaching explains a general opinion.
2. It is a social process.
3. It depends upon the human nature.
4. It is an objective and descriptive process.
5. This is formal and informal.
6. There are three sides of it - Student, teacher and syllabus.
7. It has its own method, and it is directed by many methods and processes.
8. Direction and guidance both are included in it.

### **Characteristics of Teaching**

There are the following characteristics of good teaching –

1. It is suggestive.
2. It is stimulating.
3. It is well arranged and well planned.
4. It is based on the progress.
5. It is full of sympathy.
6. It is based on corporation.
7. It is child centered and psychological.
8. It originates self confidence in the child.
9. It is resolving and full of remedy.
10. It is given to the child keeping in mind his earlier knowledge.

## 7.2 Factors of Influencing Learning

Notes

After studying the process of learning, it is also necessary to study the influencing factors of learning in the education, because man's nature is changeable, and its study is complicated. And personality differences are found in the learning.

Psychologists have studied such factors on the basis of their experiments, which generally affect the learning of all persons. There can be a progress in the process of learning, after getting proper knowledge of factors influencing learning. In these factors, inspiration, interest, meditation, intellect, health, the nature of subject and the different methods of learning are important. These factors can be studied in the both aspects as helpful and as an obstacle in the process of learning. Opposition of any factor is an obstacle in the process of learning. But it proves helpful to be appropriate and adapting to them. Describing the factors and conditions of learning, it is the statement of Psychologist Simpson- "Along with the other conditions of learning, some conditions are following- Proper health, good habits of living, being free of the physical faults, good habits of study, emotional balance, mental ability, act related maturity, desirable attitude and interest, better social adaptation, freedom from tradition and superstition."

On the basis of above opinions, the factors of influencing learning can be divided into four parts:

(A) Physical factors, (B) Psychological factors, (C) Environmental factors, (D) Other factors.

### (A) Physical Factors

(1) **Sense organs** – Physical factors are very important in influencing the process of learning. First Physical factors, which are included in the process of learning, are sense organs. The five types of sense organs are watching, hearing, taste, smell and touch. Representation is the basis of our whole knowledge.



*Did u know?* If we have any crippled sense organ, it is difficult to get knowledge related to this organ. For example a child, who is blind, cannot learn any thing easily. Thus in case of being handicap in other sense organs, it is obstacle in the process of learning.

(2) **Physical and mental health** – It is necessary to be physically and mentally healthy for learning. The children, who are physically and mentally fit, take interest in learning and soon learn. Unhealthy children do not take interest in learning and tire soon, consequently they learn subject less and lately. Because of tiredness there is trouble in the learning. Tiresome person can not do the work properly in spite of having interest and inspiration. So it is necessary to pay attention on the physical and mental health.

(3) **Maturity** – Learning is closely related to maturity. As soon as child grows, his physical and mental abilities also develop along. Thus, physical and mental maturity affects the process of learning. From this point of view, mature child does not face any difficulty in the learning, his energy and time do not go waste.



*Task* Learning is closely related to maturity. Explain with the example.

Notes

**(B) Psychological Factors**

**(1) Inspiration and Learning**—Inspiration has an important place in the process of learning. In the process of learning the place, importance and the utility of inspiration has been described in a separate chapter. It is necessary to have a motivator in the learning. Motivator is an internal power, which forces a person for action. The work, which is done by internal inspiration, more zeal and creativity is seen in them. A teacher should have good understanding about the needs, interests and motivations of children. Need, motive and incentive are related to inspiration. If a teacher does not understand these factors, he can not get success in the process of inspiration. In order to get incentive, child is especially encouraged for learning. Need gives him inspiration for learning. Psychologists have proved this by doing experiments on the animals and men related to inspiration. Along with the inspiration of learning, encouragement also gets along. Then they learn quickly and easily. In the education of a child, he can be inspired by the appreciation, encouragement and prize. In the same way, by the proper punishment and criticism he does not repeat the bad conduct and behavior. In the education, reward and punishment, both one by one, help in the learning of good behavior and giving up bad behavior.

**(2) Interest and Aptitude**—Learning is depended on the nature of a person. If a child takes interest in any subject then he feels easiness and joy in the learning. The first responsibility of a teacher is to develop an interest and aptitude in a child. When a child gets an opportunity due to his interest and aptitude, he exposes his whole personality, and learns that skillfully. It is necessary to make the arrangement of giving education by examining the interest and aptitude of the child in the schools, so that they could adjust themselves successfully in various situations.

**(3) Will to Learn**—The will of the person has an important place in the learning. If a person has a will of learning, then he does learning in against conditions. The person who has not any desire of learning, he cannot be taught under any conditions. As a Psychologist has said, "A horse can be taken to the pond, but you cannot compel him to drink against his desire." So it is a duty of a teacher after developing interest and aptitude in the children, to make their will power strong.

**(4) Intellect**—Intellect and capability of learning are closely related. The distribution of intellect among the children is not equal. So the different children have different kind of capability of learning. Learning mostly depends upon the intellectual ability of learner. An intelligent child learns every subject quickly, while a dull child takes time in understanding and learning. Opinion, Imagination, rumination and decision power are related to intellect.

**(C) Environmental Factors**

**Environment**—The progress of learning mostly depends on the congenial environment. The act of learning cannot be completed easily in the adverse situation. The psychological atmosphere of class affects the process of learning. **Montessori** has said, it is very necessary for a teacher to originate the psychological moment for the process of learning. The place of study should be full of fresh air and light, which makes mind and body healthy. Learning places, whether it may be school or home, should be peaceful. Attention can be gathered, only in the lonely and peaceful atmosphere. Intensive stimulus should be used in the class to attract the attention towards the subject, as helpful material and proper example etc. The atmosphere of the class should be easy, interesting and full of curiosity. Thus in the proper environment there is progress in the learning.

**Self Assessment**

Choose the correct alternative —

1. "The process, done for changing the behavior of student is learning." Who has given this definition in relation of education —  
(a) Clanton                      (b) Skinner                      (c) Clark

2. A horse should be taken to the pond, but he should not be forced to drink water against his desire. For which factor, this example is presented –  
 (a) Intellect                    (b) Desire                    (c) Environment
3. Who has given the following definition- “Education is inspiration, direction, and encouragement for learning” –  
 (a) Smith                    (b) Burton                    (c) Simpson
4. Whose statement is this-“It is necessary for a teacher to originate a psychological moment for the process of learning” –  
 (a) Kindergarten            (b) Gates                    (c) Montessori

Notes

### (D) Other Factors

**(1) Nature of subject matter** – The learning of any subject depends upon the nature of subject matter. For example, in the textbook the lesson of interesting story is learnt easily and with interest than that of complicated and criticizing essay. In this relation teacher’ method of ‘simple to difficult of complex’ theory proves useful, Means while teaching easy things, to grow towards difficulty.

**(2) The Methods of Learning** – In Learning progress especially depends on the methods of learning. The description of these methods has been done place to place. The methods of learning according to the child will be so interesting and appropriate, as much the learning will be easy. From this point of view, in the beginning classes, ‘playing method’ and ‘Learning by doing’ or ‘action method’ is used. In the higher studies ‘Community related explanation’ and other methods are used.

**(3) Practice** – In learning, an important factor that helps in bringing progress, is practice. Practice affects learning very much. It has been said in the ‘Rules of Practice’.

**(4) Teacher and the learning Process** – A teacher has in important place in the process of learning. In the dual process of learning, the conduct, thought, behavior, personality, knowledge and learning method of teacher has a direct effect on the student and the process of learning. **Montessori, Frowail and other Psychologists** have called teacher as the path guide, gardener and artist. A teacher can make the process of learning easy and fast for the students on the basis of his talent and various materials.

The learning place should be always clean, airy and full of light. Mind concentrates in the peaceful atmosphere, which is most appropriate from learning point of view.



Notes

The learning place should be always clean, airy and full of light. Mind concentrates in the peaceful atmosphere, which is most appropriate from learning point of view.

**(5) Knowledge of result** – If learner keeps on getting the knowledge of his progress while learning then he gets the encouragement and inspiration for further learning. If he gets failure and mistakes, it is essential to have a knowledge of this, learner gets the inspiration of attempting and improving again and again. So a teacher should to give him knowledge of his progress, success and result.

Besides the above important factors the following factors can be looked into from the **additional educational learning** point of view, on the basis of special division-

**(1) Factors belonging to the Learner** – As a family is the first school of a child, but when a child enters in the school with the formalities, many curiosities originate in his mind, which he wants to calm and he has to adjust with the new environment. In such conditions, the process of learning is affected by many factors, as the child (who is the basis of learning process) desires of learning, the level of ambition,

**Notes**

educational background, health, maturity, inspiration, the interest of learner, learning time, the period of learning, intellect and the learning processes etc. Being affected by these important factors he can go forward on the path of success learning anything easily.

**(2) Factors belonging to the teacher** – There are many factors belonging to the teacher influencing the learning. For example, subject knowledge of the teacher, psychological knowledge, methods of learning, the knowledge of personality differences, proper behavior, child centered education, time table, extra-curricular activities and discipline etc. these are the factors, which help teacher in teaching. In the absence of any one of these factors, learning can not be completed.

**(3) Factors belonging to the subject matter** – Some factors for influencing the learning that belong to subject matter are following, as the nature of subject matter, figure, language, method, series, example presentation, seeing hearing material, the complete purpose of interesting subject matter, difficult levels of different subject and its structure. The process of Learning is very much affected by these factors. If few things is kept in mind in developing these factors, learning will be stable.

**(4) Factors related to management to learning** – there are many factors influencing the learning and are related to management to learning. In order to maintain this system many methods shall be deployed, like part vs. whole method, sub-subject vs. focused learning, collected vs. distributed, organized vs. contextual method, and active vs. inactive method.

**(5) Environmental factors** – Many factors of environment affect learning, As-heredity, knowledge of social heredity, the effect of environment, social and cultural environment, informal reason of education, development of personality, familiar and psychological environment, physical environment of class and all situations.

**(6) Group characteristics, internal process** – Man is a social an, animal, the absence of it his existence is not considered. He develops much connectivity to the group and community, and the rules of that group, customs, limitations, and traditions affect him. It is necessary for a teacher to have knowledge of group psychology to make the process of learning more effective.

### **7.3 Importance of Learning for Teachers**

The proper knowledge of the above material related to learning is very important to complete the teaching successfully. A teacher can make teaching effective by using them. The importance of learning for a teacher can be expressed in the following way –

- (1) A teacher can use the knowledge of the principles of learning to bring desirable changes in the behavior of child.
- (2) A teacher requires the knowledge of the methods of teaching, method of learning and the alternative of learning skill to express skill in the teaching.
- (3) After choosing the rules and learning methods, a teacher can use them for the progress of each child according to the personality differences.
- (4) A teacher can understand the importance of motivation in the learning with learning knowledge, and can inspire the child for the learning by the proper motivation.
- (5) Education related knowledge informs the teacher with easily accessible and obstructive factor, so that, teacher can use the effective factors paying attention to the obstructive factors.
- (6) With the help of learning knowledge, a teacher can make learning easy and interesting by using the theory of evaluation and condition of learning.
- (7) Obtaining the knowledge of learning, a teacher can make valuable contribution and utilize the educational condition, and according to the needs, he can try an expedition in improving the condition of class.
- (8) A teacher can evaluate the significance of his teaching in context of changes happening in the student, or can decide the validity and invalidity of the learning methods on the basis of evaluation outcome of students.

## 7.4 Summary

Notes

- The direction of educational process is possible by human behavior and its emotions. In order to make education process effective, teaching has been considered the central object in the field of teaching.
- Teaching is a phenomenon. The following definitions can be seen to make clear the meaning of teaching:  
**Dr. Mathur** – In the present times the word teaching does not mean that child's filled with useless and impractical things. Now teaching means that the child should be provided with such opportunities, by which child could get the ability to solve his problems according to his conditions and nature. He could plan himself, collect the material, and well organize it and get the result, which he could take in use again.
- Psychologists have studied such factors on the basis of their experiments, which generally affect the learning of all people. There can be progress in the process of learning, after getting proper knowledge of factors influencing learning. In these factors inspiration, interest, meditation, intellect, health, the nature of subject and the different methods of learning are important.
- The proper knowledge of the above material related to learning is very important to complete the teaching successfully. A teacher can make teaching effective by using them.
- A teacher can evaluate the significance of his teaching than in context of changes happening in the student, or can decide the validity and invalidity of the learning methods on the basis of evaluation outcome of students.

## 7.5 Keywords

1. **Inspiration** – Feeling and thoughts arising in the mind.
2. **Sense organ** – organ giving the information of subjects.

## 7.6 Review Questions

1. What do you understand by teaching? Write the characteristics of good teaching.
2. Describe the factors influencing the learning process.
3. How is 'inspiration' and 'interest' helpful in the process of learning?
4. Explain the importance of learning for a teacher.

### Answers: Self-Assessment

1. (c)
2. (b)
3. (b)
4. (c)

## 7.7 Further Readings



Books

1. Educational psychology – S.H.Sinha and Rachna Sharma, Atlantic publication, New delhi.
2. The information and importance of education in the children – Seema Chopra, Hindi book center, New Delhi.
3. Education Psychology – S.K. Mangal, PHI Learning Pvt. Ltd., New Delhi.
4. Development of Learner and Educational Learning Process – A.K. Verma, Hindi Book Centre, New Delhi.

## Notes

## Unit-8: Theories of Learning: Thorndike's Theory of Learning and its Educational Implications

### CONTENTS

Objectives

Introduction

8.1 Theories of Learning

8.2 Thorndike's Stimulus- Response Bond Theory

8.3 Summary

8.4 Keywords

8.5 Review Questions

8.6 Further Readings

### Objectives

After the study of this unit, student will be able to –

- Understand the theory of learning.
- Understand the Thorndike's stimulus-response bond theory.

### Introduction

The theory of learning is the explanation of the concept of learning by any psychologist and psychological community. Under this, the extensive solution of problems related to learning has been presented. There is no need of uniformity in the learning theories. There can be different approaches in the different theories of learning. Hilgard has described more than ten theories of learning in his book 'Theories of learning'. It is difficult to decide, which theory is right or which is wrong. The statement of Frandsen, related to it, is admirable – "Theory is neither right, nor wrong. They are only more or less useful for special tasks."

The explanatory statements, that are presented in order to explain any concept on the basis of the conclusions of perceptible uses, can be named as Theory. The conditions under which learning takes place, scientists and psychologists, after observing, analyzing, and synthesizing it scientifically, have presented their collective thoughts concluding the result of their experiments, these could be called the concepts of learning. In the words of Prof. Chauhan- "Theories of learning attempt to explain the mechanism of behavior involved in learning process."



Notes

The statement of Frandsen related to it, is admirable-Theory is neither right, nor wrong. They are only more or less useful for special tasks.

Notes

## 8.1 Theories of Learning

Different psychologists have presented different theories of learning. Some theories have similar thoughts, while others have different thoughts. On the basis of similarity and differences, the classification of the learning theory can be done. In the books of Educational psychology, the classification of learning theories has been presented on the basis of their variations. Hence it is clear that the psychologists have different opinion in relation to the classification of theories of learning. With a point of view to make the study easy and limited, the classification of learning theories has been presented in the following way –

**(A) Contiguity Theory** – Under it the following theories are mainly included –

- (1) Pavlov's Conditioned Reflex Theory
- (2) Watson's Theory of Learning
- (3) Guthrie's Contiguous Conditioning Theory

**(B) Theories of Reinforcement** – Under it, the learning theories of following group are mainly included –

- (1) Hull's theory and Theories of hull's Traditions
- (2) Instrumental Reinforcement Theory

Under it, the following theories are included –

- (i) Thorndike's S-R Bond Theory
- (ii) Woodworth's S-O-R Theory
- (iii) Skinner's Operant Conditioning Theory

**(C) Cognitive Theory** – Under it, the important theory of following group is included –

- (1) **Sign Learning Theories** – Mainly Tolmen's Sign Learning Theory is in it.
- (2) **Gestalt Learning Theories** – Under it mainly Kohler's Insight Theory and Koffka Trace Theory are included.
- (3) **Dynamic Theories** – Under it Levin's Field theory and Psycho-analytical theory of Learning are included.
- (4) **Bandura's Modelling Theory**

**(5) Piaget's Development of Learning Theory** – Except the above learning theories, the description of many theories are found in the books of psychology. But here, it is not appropriate to give them place. Keeping in mind the purpose and limitations of books and not describing all the theories of learning, only the important learning theories have been described that are following –

### Important Theories of Learning

- (1) Thorndike's Stimulus- Response Bond Theory
- (2) Pavlov's Conditioned Reflex Theory

- Notes**
- (3) Skinner's Operant Conditioning Theory
  - (4) Kohler's Insight Theory

## 8.2 Thorndike's Stimulus- Response Bond Theory

Edward L. Thorndike, in his book 'Animal Intelligence', in 1898, delivered famous connectionism. The meaning of connectionism in learning psychology is to make connection between stimulus and response. In the connectionism, connection is established between stimulus and response. So it is known by the name of stimulus response theory. In this theory along with the inborn factors of a man, there is a connection between the internal and external stimulus response. In the learning psychology 'Stimulus-Response theory' is an extensive theory whose researchers, **Thorndike, Woodbirth, Pavlov, Waltson, Guthri, Tollman or Hull** are important. According to these psychologists, there is a stimulus behind each activity, which affects a man. And he does responses according to that. Thus, stimulus is related with response. The organizer of this opinion Thorndike has forced to establish connection between stimulus and response for the learning. On account of insisting this bond, Thorndike's learning theory is called 'stimulus- Response bond theory'. Thorndike's Learning Theory comes under it. And it is a part of 'Associate Theory'. According to Thorndike, a bond is established between two or more experiences. There is a stimulus for the processing of some action, which causes response. Stimulus affects a man, according to that he responds. Thus, a peculiar stimulus is connected to response; means there is a bond between stimulus and response. **Wren** has defined this theory in the following way –

"Connectionism is the doctrine that all mental process consist of the functioning of the native and acquired connection between situation and responses."

Thorndike's theory is basis of three factors –

- (1) Stimulus or S factor, which includes in the situation of environment.
- (2) Response or R Factor which exposes the activity of behavior.
- (3) Stimulus, Response and Bond factor, which establish connection between stimulus and response. Or it binds stimulus with response and the development of bond between stimulus and response is the important thing of the theory of Thorndike.

According to the **Thorndike** – "Learning, in the nervous system, is a matter of reinforcement and making connection between stimulus and response."

According to Thorndike connection is established between stimulus and response. Symbolically it is expressed by  $S \rightarrow R$ . Thorndike has presented the rules of learning on the basis of  $S \rightarrow R$  bonds. In his book 'Educational Psychology' he has written widely about this theory in the educational field.



*Did u know?* In America, Thorndike's theory got fame for 50 years, and many psychologists got the basic points for developing the learning theories.

Thorndike did many experiments on hens, cats, monkeys, fish, dogs, and men for the establishment of his theory. Experiments done on the cats are the most important. Thorndike has delivered the 'Trial and Error theory' as the types of basic learning, on the basis of the experiments done on the cats. Thorndike has forced on connecting and bonding of proper response with the stimulus in the explanation of learning process by the trial and error. So Thorndike's theory is better known by the name of 'Trial and Error' theory, because bond is established between stimulus and response by the trial and response, so originally Thorndike learning theory is known by the Stimulus Response Bond Theory.

## The chief characteristics of Stimulus-Response Bond Theory

Notes

- (1) Bonding between stimulus and response is learning.
- (2) The process of bond between stimulus and response is happened by trial and error. Learner tries and mistakes many times for learning the right process, but in many trials depriving mistakes and doing errorless trial he learns the right process.
- (3) By trial and response learner becomes expert in doing definite response for definite stimulus. For this he selects right response among other possible responses, so Thorndike's this theory is also called '**The Theory of Selecting and Connectionism**'. According to **Thorndike** –  
"Learning is the consequence of selecting the right responses and connecting them with stimulus."
- (4) This process of learning is mechanistic, because the selection of right responses is possible after removing the mistakes.
- (5) There is response according to stimulus, and according to that human behavior is decided. Thus this theory says that only stimulus decides and controls the behavior, and along with a peculiar stimulus is needed for a peculiar response.
- (6) Thorndike's theory has given a scientific base to the learning process in the field of education psychology.
- (7) This theory is a form of associate theory.

## Limitations of Stimulus-Response Bond Theory

In spite of having many qualities, stimulus response bond theory has many limitations, which can be described in the following way-

- (1) Stimulus and response have not been explained properly in this theory.
- (2) Mr. Miller has said ironically that it will not be wrong to call this theory, hyphen theory, because as the connection between stimulus and response have been expounded in it, but stimulus and response have not been.
- (3) The structure of personality has not been specially described in it; this is the reason why the followers of this theory have considered psychoanalysis theory useful in their opinions and researches.
- (4) All the psychologists have called this theory atomic and fragment.
- (5) In this theory, useless efforts are forced to learn any activities.
- (6) Criticizing the effect and result of the rule, the Practitioner have said that the process of learning has been incompletely explained in it.
- (7) According to the followers of Gestalt, the connection happens itself between experiences and we find it in entirety, so there is no need for any kind of connection.

After throwing light on the qualities and limitations of **Thorndike's** theory, it will be appropriate to throw light on the important experiments done by him, learning method by trial and error and the rules of learning for expounding Thorndike's learning related explanation.

## The Representative Experiment

Thorndike did experiments on many animals as- dogs, cats, monkeys and hens, for explaining learning related theory. But in his book 'Animals Intelligence' descriptive experiment done on the cat and its inspection is very important. Considering it as a representative experiment its description is following –

Thorndike's scientific use was done by keeping a cat in a case, which has been called a puzzle box. This was an easy experiment. The cage was prepared in such way that the door was opened by

**Notes**

pulling a string or pressing a switch. A fish was kept outside of the cage. A hungry cat was kept inside the cage. Seeing the fish and finding it she did such attempts many times, so that she could come out and eat it. In its attempt of coming outside, cat did many acts as- jumping, moving claws, wandering here and there and to pounce. In this jumping suddenly the claw of the cat was put on the string and the door was opened. Coming out, cat got success in eating the fish. Thorndike imprisoned the cat again, cat retried coming outside for eating the fish, but this time doing a less leaping and jumping in comparison of earlier, she got success in drawing the string and coming out. Thorndike saw in such types of experiments in further series the useless trials of cat became less, and she got success in coming out and eating the fish in a few minutes. The errors were less. Once it was seen, that, as soon as the cat was kept in the cage, without doing any mistakes, pulling the string the cat came outside of the case and ate the fish. With the observations of this experiment, Thorndike concluded that by developing direct connection with the right response towards the stimulus, cat learnt coming out.

According to Thorndike, it was necessary to have two things for learning the method of coming out by cat (i) it being hungry of cat- It was necessary that cat would be motivated for learning so that she could do attempt (ii) To have a fish-so that she could take its food. Thorndike delivered his rule on the basis of this experiment, which explains the development in the learning of both animal and man, in stimulus response bond structure.

**Thorndike's Laws of Learning** – Different psychologists have discovered the laws of learning, after experimenting on the animals by laboratory method. But Thorndike has got the credit of making series of laws of learning. Thorndike's laws of learning are basis on the stimulus- response bond theory or connectionism. According to this law when there is a stimulus in front of a man, he is motivated for doing a peculiar type of response. In it, a special stimulus is connected to a special response. Process of learning includes in this response. According to Thorndike, learning establishes connection between stimulus and response. Brain does the work of establishing connection. It is necessary to have a relation between body and mind in the process of learning. He studied the bond of stimulus and response and created the primarily and secondary laws of learning –

**(A) Primary Laws of Learning –**

- (1) Law of Readiness
- (2) Law of exercise
- (3) Law of Effect

**(B) Secondary Laws of Learning –**

- (1) Law of Multiple Responses
- (2) Law of Mental set or Attitude
- (3) Law of Prepatency of Elements
- (4) Law of Response by Analogy
- (5) Law of Associative Shifting

**(A) Primary Laws of Learning –**

Thorndike has said the following three laws of learning –

**(1) Law of readiness** – This law means that when learner is ready for learning, he can learn, otherwise he can't. He gets ready for learning. In order to give education to a child firstly a teacher should develop such conditions which originate interest and curiosity in a child and he will be prepared for learning. For this, a teacher can motivate a child for learning by many methods. Skillful teacher, asking questions related to lesson or earlier knowledge can originate interest in a child for the lesson by the new methods of learning. Teacher often says to the student to come after reading the lesson. Thus he gets mentally

prepared for learning many things. And his preparations for learning help him in concentrating. Thus, child learns things easily, and gets satisfaction in learning.

Notes

**(2) Law of Exercise** – Law of exercise says that under a situation, in order to determine a right response, that response should be repeated again and again. Which learning process we repeat many times, we learn it easily. Learning can be made easy by exercise. According to Dr. J. N. Sinha- “keeping other conditions constant, whenever a changeable relation is exercised between a situation and a response, it becomes strong. This is called the law of exercise.”

There are the two aspects of law of exercise –

(i) Law of Use

(ii) Law of disuse

**(i) Law of Use** – Whichever work is exercised again and again, is learnt easily. As a poem is repeated again and again to remember it. In the same way for learning riding bicycle, a child has to try many times, he falls and get wounded, but at last he learns riding bicycle. Painting, typing, learning music, playing any game etc can be learnt by using and exercise.

**(ii) Law of disuse** – This law is quite opposite to the law of use. If learnt work is not practiced or used, a man forgets it. For example – A man can not play or sing after leaving the practice of singing and playing. A player cannot play properly, when he comes in the play ground after a long time. Thus, the same thing can be said in the learning process, as- Success can be obtained in maths after doing daily practice. In brief, it can be said whichever work is not done or repeated for a long time, it is not remembered. It is called the law of disuse. So a teacher should give continue exercise to the student in the different subjects, otherwise taught knowledge, in the absence of exercise, or due to disuse, they will not remember it.



Task

Write a commentary on the experiment related to Thorndike's learning theory.

**(3) Law of Effect** – This law is also called the law of satisfaction or dissatisfaction. If after doing some work we get satisfaction, we want to do that work again and again. The law of reward and punishment in the education indicates this side, if after doing any work child gets reward he wants to do it again and again, and by doing any work if he gets punishment, he does not want to do that work, so he does not learn it. This law, in the education can be used psychologically. It is the duty of a teacher that he should develop such situation for the learning of a child so that he could get success, and feel satisfaction and pleasure. For whichever work does a child get appreciated, he learns that work soon. All the laws of learning are depend and internally related to each other.

### Self Assessment

Choose the right alternative:

- Thorndike has used symbol for the establishment of connection between stimulus and response in his theory, the symbols are –
 

(a) $(T \rightarrow R)$	(b) $(S \rightarrow R)$	(c) $(R \rightarrow S)$
-------------------------	-------------------------	-------------------------
- Thorndike's theory is depended on –
 

(a) Change	(b) nature	(c) connectionism
------------	------------	-------------------
- The author of Animal Intelligence-
 

(a) Kohlar	(b) Skinner	(c) Thorndike
------------	-------------	---------------

Notes

4. Thorndike did important experiment for his theory on—

- (a) on cats                      (b) on rats                      (c) on hens

**(B) Secondary Laws of Learning**

Except above three important laws of learning, Thorndike has presented five secondary laws of learning, which are following—

**(1) Law of Multiple Responses**— According to Thorndike, when some stimulus provokes any creature he does many responses to get satisfaction, and there are multi responses before right response, out of which many responses are useless. But if responses are not multiple, learner could not learn right response. On the basis of this law of learning, a learner should be provided an opportunity by the improvement in his mistakes in place of an obstacle in the way of learning resulting in search of methods and different solution of learning, or he should be provided directions in taking decision towards any definite and effective solution, so that he could do less useless effort.

**(2) Law of Mental set or Attitude**—Mental condition and attitude affect much in the learning. Favorable attitude comes. If a learner has lack of expected attitude and mental conditions toward the learning process, then he can't do learning. However much effective teaching will be. According to Thorndike, how will a man react towards any stimulus is depended on his pre experiences, his thought, culture etc before his adjustment with the society. Often social tendency become more effective on reacting. So it is necessary to develop the curiosity and desirable condition of a child for the learning. So, according to this rule, it is necessary that a child should be prepared mentally before learning process.

**(3) Law of Prepotency of Elements**— This law is also called the law of selective response. It means that learner does not responds towards all the factors in troublesome condition, but he has a potential in responding towards some selected factors. Towards whichever condition, learner has potential in responding, is called the elements of prepotency, which already exists in the learner. On the basis of these elements of prepotency, response happens. To recognize these elements in learning condition depends on the intellect of a learner. By the potency of recognizing these elements, it is possible to make learning analytical and conscious.

**(4) Law of Response by Analogy**— Law of response by analogy mean responses done on the basis of similarity or analogy of two situations. In it, the use of previous knowledge and earlier experience is done in the new learning condition. Here the theory of transference does work. When some knowledge or experience is assumed properly, or it is assimilated, then it can be easily transferred in any other learning conditions. So it is also called the law of assimilation. There is a process of connecting knowledge and experience. A child should understand that whatever is being explained to him is a string of knowledge, to be obtained by him in the future. And he will feel as he knows very much related to new knowledge. On the basis of this, after establishing relation between earlier knowledge and new knowledge, learner makes given knowledge his permanent part.

**(5) Law of Associative Shifting**— Thorndike's associative shifting law means that the place of response of learner goes on change; it shifts in the form of formal and later conditions, which have relation? During the time of providing new knowledge to learner, if the same conditions are originated which were presented in the time of giving earlier knowledge, then learner will do the same response. To establish this kind of associative affinity between earlier and new knowledge, is called associative shifting. So as far as it can be, associative conditions should be developed before learning, so that learner could shift the place of knowledge.

**The criticism of Thorndike's Law of Learning**— Psychologists have criticized the law delivered by Thorndike—

**(A) According to Agyviwadiion**, "the summary of learning is included in discovery." So a child should be inspired for learning and self realizing on the basis of creative activities. It can not be depended on the law of effect only. They have said criticizing the law of effect that every learner does not need reward or effect or the fruits of result. Fruit comes after some time, and the process of

learning is accomplished before. But it is necessary to say here, that inspiration has got an important place in learning by this law.

(B) Thus all types of learning cannot be depended on the law of exercise only. This law insists on to mug up. In the process of learning learner's interest, care and tendency also have important place. Often we learn many things only by an experience or one direction and there is no need of exercise.

(C) In the learning law of Thorndike, only useless efforts are focused to learn any process.

(D) It can be said that learner cannot progress properly by only depending on the law of exercise, law of effect, rather except these three laws, learner learns on the basis of newness, clarity and association.

(E) Other secondary law related to learning is based on the thought association, which is related to memory psychology. The extensive study of thinking association has been presented in the chapter 'memory or forgetting'.

In spite of having above criticism, the primarily and secondary law of Thorndike has an important place in the education. These laws provide an important contribution in the education of children. The connectivity of the above laws is highlighted in the learning method by 'trial and error' delivered by Thorndike.



Notes

The summary of learning includes in discovery. So child should be inspired for self realization and learning on the basis of creative activities.

**Learning by Trial and Error** – Firstly Thorndike presented learning method by trial and error, after doing many experiment on the animals. Thorndike's classical experiment, which he did after keeping a cat in the puzzle box, on the basis of it the learning method of trial and error, can be explained. The same experiments have been described in the earlier pages. According to Thorndike when a problem originates in front of a man, he does different types of responses in order to solve the problem. These responses are erroneous in the beginning, but after doing many responses he gets success in his response. In learning the meaning of trial and error is in the learning time in the beginning success does not come, there is some errors in it, but when it is repeated many times, after each trial errors are less, as soon as trial is done, the numbers of error is less. And at last such time comes that a man gets success in attempting his work properly. Woodworth has said the following steps of learning method by trial and error in his book 'Psychology'.

- (a) Readiness to reach some goal.
- (b) The path of reaching to the goal is not seen clearly.
- (c) To examine the situations and finding the possible way and use them.
- (d) At last obtain the proper way.

**The situations of learning by trial and error** – the following situations are originated in the process of learning by trial and error –

- (1) It is necessary to have drive in the learner. Drive inspires for the learning, and makes it active. Hunger is a drive. In the experiment of Thorndike, we saw that it was there which inspired cat for the learning (learning to open the door of the case).
- (2) When obstacle comes in the satisfaction of drive, man makes efforts. After doing trial and error, at last he learns.
- (3) There are random activities by the learner for the satisfaction of his drive, because learner does not have the knowledge of right response, like the unnecessary jumping of cat.
- (4) All of Sudden he gets success after doing right activities by random activities fortunately.

**According to Thorndike**, following practical conditions are found in the learning, by trial and error:

Notes

**Notes**

(1) **Goal** – It is necessary to have a goal for the learning. After getting the knowledge of goal, readiness will be seen in the learning process.

(2) **To be mentally fine** – A mentally recovered person tries to solve the problem, and looking for the possible way for the solution of the problem. If some obstacle comes in the way, he tries other ways.

(3) **Obstacle in obtaining the goal** – In case of originating obstacles, problem originates, and a man tries to solve the problem.

(4) **Trial** – A man tries after finding obstacles, and upon failure he tries another method until he finally succeeds.

(5) **Sudden success** – After doing many trials fortunately he gets success in the process.

(6) **Stabilization of correct Process** – When suddenly there is information of correct process, after doing many efforts, that correct process is chosen for obtaining the goal and the correct process is stabilized after repeating it again and again.

(7) **The selection of correct process** – It is the stage of learning. Effort is successful after selecting the correct process, and there is not mistake.

**Educational Utility of Trial and Error learning method** – The important utility of trial and error learning method is following –

(1) This method is like an improvement method. By this method child takes the benefit of the experience obtained by his earlier errors.

(2) After doing continuous effort, the characteristics of patience and hardwork develop in the children.

(3) In this method a child repeats the activities which he likes, these activities as a stimuli inspire him in the process of learning. He learns by the selecting successful process, so some psychologists have said this method 'Learning by selection of the successful variation.

(4) This method is depended on the practice. So learnt work gets permanent. So a teacher should encourage the student, if student gets failure in any activity. This method is very useful for serious subjects, as- math, science, grammar etc. The solution of the problems of math, the opportunity of doing by the trial and error should be provided. A child is more benefited by this method. The success after doing many trials is permanent.

(5) A child knows the goal but not get the idea of obtaining the goal, by this method, and then he does efforts himself, which develop in him the characteristics of self confidence and self dependence. These characteristics help him in developing the capability of finding the solutions of the problems and situations coming in the future, whose goals will be known to him but not the way of obtaining them.

(6) This method is not useful for the younger children.

(7) This method is specially not useful for the dull minded children.

It is clear after widely observing the Thorndike's learning related opinions that his theory, experiment, method and law have an important place in the field of psychology which can be used successfully in the educational learning process.

### 8.3 Summary

- Under some important theory of learning, the theory of Pavlov, Thorndike, Kohlar and Skinner are popular.
- The clarification of the opinion of learning by any psychologist or psychological community is learning. Under it, the extended solution of learning problems has been presented. There is no need of similarity in learning related theories.

- Different psychologists have presented different theories of learning. Some theories are same, while others are different. On the basis of affinity and differences, the theories of learning can be divided.

Notes

#### **8.4 Keywords**

1. **Drive** – to inspire
2. **Association** – Company, together hood

#### **8.5 Review Questions**

1. Throw light on 'Thorndike's stimulus – response bond theory'.
2. Explain the primarily and secondary laws of learning describing by Thorndike.

#### **Answers: Self-Assessment**

1. (c)
2. (b)
3. (c)
4. (b)

#### **8.6 Further Readings**



Books

1. Development of Learner and Educational Learning Process – A.K. Verma, Hindi Book Centre, New Delhi.
2. Educational psychology – S.H. Sinha and Rachna Sharma, Atlantic publication, New Delhi.
3. The Information and Importance of Education in the Children – Seema Chopra, Hindi book center, New Delhi.
4. Education Psychology – S.K. Mangal, PHI Learning Pvt. Ltd., New Delhi.

## Notes

## Unit-9: Pavlov's Conditioned Theory and its Educational Implications

**CONTENTS**

Objectives

Introduction

- 9.1 Pavlov's Conditioned Reflex Theory
- 9.2 Utility and Importance of Conditioned Reflex Theory in Education
- 9.3 Summary
- 9.4 Keywords
- 9.5 Review Questions
- 9.6 Further Readings

### Objectives

After the study of this unit, student will be able to –

- Understand learning related Pavlov's conditioned reflex theory.
- Understand the educational importance of conditioned reflex theory.

### Introduction

I. P. Pavlov delivered the conditioned reflex theory (1849–1936). He was the native of Russia and a famous scientist. He was provided Nobel Prize in 1904 for doing the work on the digestion process. In fact he was studying the role of the flow of saliva in the digestion of dogs, at that time, he noticed that there is growth in the flow of saliva of dog, when the food comes and the sound of the feet of someone taking food is heard. After observing this incident, he delivered learning related theory. Thus he became a psychologist in the age of fifty. He published two books, Conditioned Reflex and Lectures on Conditioned Reflex. This theory is known by the name of Connected Reflex, Connected Variation, and Conditioned Response. But on the basis of the experiment, done by Pavlov on the dog, this theory has been given the name of 'Classical Conditioned Theory'. On the basis of nature of this theory it has also been given the name of 'Response Bond Theory'. Here the main aim is, to deliver the opinion of Pavlov's experimenting on the dog and its conclusion applied on the human behavior in the field of learning. So firstly it is necessary to understand the classical Pavlov's classical experiment.

### 9.1 Pavlov's Conditioned Reflex Theory

Notes

**Pavlov's Classical Experiment** – Pavlov did his experiment on a dog in a laboratory. He added a tube in the grand salivation after doing surgery which fell in a utensil, which can be helped in the observation of salivation. During this experiment, food was given to a dog on a certain time everyday. Seeing the food the salivation of dog began to excrete. The presentation of food was a natural stimulus and the process of salivation by this stimulation was a natural response. Pavlov rang the bell in the second time, which was unnatural stimulus, and the alertness of dog and twisting the ears with this stimulation was an unnatural response. After this Pavlov rang the bell along with the presenting the food, means natural or unnatural stimulus presented together, as a response the dog salivated. This was the only response of both stimuli. This process was repeated in the laboratory many times, by which food and bell means, natural or unnatural stimulus connected reflexes were conditioned. Now in the third round Pavlov only rang the bell, means only unnatural stimulus, but did not present food even then dog salivated. Here it is an important thing that food as a stimulus substituted bell as a stimulus. This is the learning of substitution. Which Pavlov named conditioned reflex. Now a days psychologists named the Pavlov conditioned Reflex Theory Classical theory.

The above description of Pavlov can be defined in the following column –

Column No. 1 - The Main Elements of Classical Conditioned Theory	
<b>Situation before the conditioning</b>	
Natural Stimulus-Food .....	Natural Response-The Process of the Salivation
Unnatural Stimulus-Bell .....	Unnatural Response-Twisting the Ears
<b>Situation in the middle of the conditioning</b>	
Natural Stimulus-Food or	
Unnatural Stimulus-Bell .....	Natural Response-The Process of the Salivation
(The condition was repeated many times)	
<b>The Situation after the Conditioning</b>	
Unnatural Stimulus-Bell .....	Natural Response-The Excretion of Saliva

(In this condition, the excretion of saliva took place even after omission of natural stimulus, i.e. food)

Pavlov did all his experiments in the sound-proof room under controlled conditions. Pavlov's conditioned Reflex Theory depends on the mechanical process. It is clear from Pavlov above used table, that Classical conditioning may be defined as "A process in which an unnatural stimulus by pairing with a natural stimulus, acquires all the characteristics of natural stimulus."

We can see in the experiment of Pavlov, that, in the starting there was no excretion of saliva and the sound of echoing bell and there was salivation process on presenting food. And after that bell sounded along with the food, in the response there was excretion of saliva, and this process was evaluated. This experiment was repeated many times and it can be seen that the salivation process begins to grow due to presenting food along with the sounding bell and then the salivation process begin to grow with the response of sounding bell. A response condition is conditioned by reinforcement. Here Salivation process can be called Psychic Secretion before giving the food. That is basis of classical conditioning. Pavlov has divided the Reflex in the two parts, Psychological and Physics reflexes. Physics reflexes process is the outcome of any special experience. That is often called conditioning and conditioned Reflex Action. When any condition is connected to any response, without any familiar relationship, is called Reinforcement. Thus relationship is a common process, in which there is a mechanical substitution of one stimulus along with another. Although, it can not be changed in the Reflex action, yet it can be connected. In the other words, besides main stimulus it can be brought into light with the help of other stimulus, like connecting the excretion of saliva with the food bell.

**Notes**

Therefore Pavlov has also called the food a conditioned stimulus. The bell sound presents two things. In the beginning of the teaching it was conditioning stimulus because it was used in the conditioning of salivation process. When it was conditioned, it was called conditioned stimulus, because now it had an affect which was not present in it, means awakening the response of salivation process. After conditioning it was called conditioned response, because it was now connected towards the bell sound. The conditioned stimulus(food) and conditioning stimulus( bell) were mixed together and this process of connecting them is called bonding.

Pavlov has commonly called such stimulus and responses natural process. In the response of saliva excretion after seeing the food, the food will be called a natural stimulus and the excretion of saliva will be called natural response. Some times, some other unnatural stimulus is presented at the time of responding of natural stimulus, as a person with the food. According to this theory when any other unnatural stimulus present many times along with the natural stimulus, a man does natural response towards that other unnatural stimulus (a man with the food). This type of connection is called Higher Order conditioning.



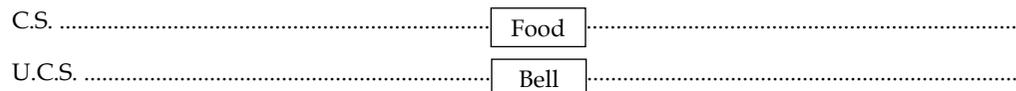
*Did u know?* In the response of saliva excretion after seeing the food, the food is a natural stimulus and saliva excretion is a natural response.

**Higher Order Conditioning**—Pavlov found on extending his experiment that other unnatural stimulus also does the work of reinforcement after presenting it along with the unnatural stimulus. Awakening natural response with the unnatural stimulus is higher natural response. Pavlov presented unnatural stimulus as the rays of light when the dog started salivating process on hearing the bell in this experiment. It was done many times, after some times it was noticed that dog salivated to see the rays of light (other unnatural stimulus). In this experiment the process of salivating to see the rays of light is higher order conditioning, because in the beginning, other unnatural (the rays of light) stimulus was not presented along with the reinforced or natural stimulus.

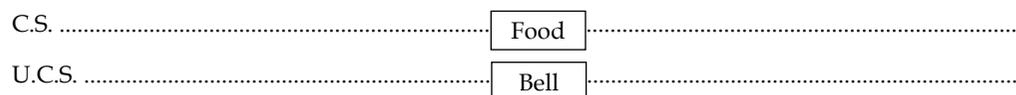
Besides higher order conditioning, Pavlov and his followers did many experiments on the dog, and presented many important opinion on the basis of those conclusions, which extended to the conditioning learning theory. These opinions are following-

**Temporal Relationship between Conditioned Stimulus and Conditioning Stimulus**—It has been found in the experiments done on the dogs, that the connection between C S and UCS is established when there is a definite close timed relationship between them. In the experiment of Pavlov, conditioned learning was seen with the closeness of five seconds between CS and UCS. There are three situations of time closeness –

**(A) Simultaneous Conditioning**—When conditioned stimulus and unconditioned stimulus were presented all together. As–



**(B) Delayed Conditioning**—When conditioned stimulus was presented after the presentation of unconditioned stimulus, As-



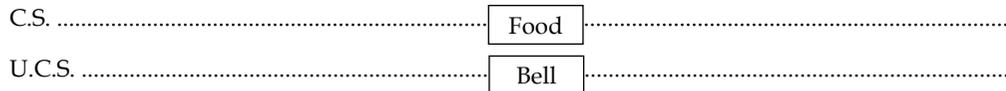
It was found in the experiments that delayed conditioned process is most affective, because soon connection is established between both stimuli in this closeness of timing.

**(C) Trace Conditioning** – When unconditioned stimulus was presented after a long time from delayed conditioning and conditioned stimulus, as-



If there is a great time interval between both stimuli in this condition, conditioning becomes impossible.

**(D) Backward Conditioning** – Backward conditioning is that condition when unconditioned stimulus is present before the conditioned stimulus, as –



Conditioning does not happen in this condition.

**Extinction** – Pavlov stopped the presentation of conditioned and unconditioned stimuli on the basis of time closeness in his further experiments, means only the bell was rung but food was not presented consequently, dog stopped the salivation process on sound of the bell. This was called extinction. It was found after evaluating each effort of dog in the salivation process on the sound of bell that the quantity of salivation was continuously less. Hence extinction finishes the conditioning process. And it makes a weak the association of the sound of the bell and salivation as conditioning reinforces that association.

**Spontaneous Recovery** – It is seen in the observation of extinction related experiments that conditioning never finishes completely; rather the capability to counter is developed in the conditioning process. According to **Morgan** and **King** – “Extinction is a process of learning to inhibit the response acquired in conditioning.”

If the same conditioned and conditioning stimuli are presented many times, soon on the basis of time closeness, conditioning is established after establishing the relationship between both stimuli as disappearing or forgetting something, the process of remembering it after it happens again. For example when food and bell are not presented altogether, it is seen the salivation of dog is stopped on the sound of bell. This process is extinction. But after presenting the food and bell sound in the time closeness again, the dog starts the salivation upon hearing the sound of the bell- This is Spontaneous Recovery.

**Inhibition** – Inhibition is that process in the function of establishing conditioning, in which any other stimulus originates inhibition in the response. It can be caused by two reasons – (a) Internal Reason – in which any internal inhibition element does work, and (b) External Reason – in which any external inhibition element of environment does work.

**Generalization** – Generalization is that process in which stimulus related to conditioning response seems same. For example, if a dog has learnt salivation on the bell sound, he salivates on the sound of metronome, because both have the same sound.

**Reinforcement** – The difference between conditioning process and extinction process is only presenting the conditioning stimulus (food). It is clear from these differences that association is going on reinforced or weak. It is necessary to have reinforcement for making conditioning response. A famous theory of learning was developed with the experiment of Pavlov's theory. Psychologist **Skinner** and **Hall** have forced this side of learning, so their theory was called reinforcement.

**Learning by Conditioned Reflex** – Learning by conditioned reflex can be understood by the classical experiments of Pavlov, which has been already described in the last chapters. This is the beginning and appropriate example of learning by conditioned reflex, which should be presented for the better understanding of the students.

\*CS = Conditioning, UCS = Unconditioning, S = Stimulus

Notes

Self Assessment

Choose the correct alternative:

1. Who is the founder of 'Conditioned Reflex Theory' –  
(a) Thorndike (b) Kohlar (c) Pavlov
2. The Nobel Prize winner in 1904 for doing especial works on the 'Diagnosis Process' was –  
(a) Kohlar (b) Pavlov (c) Skinner
3. The creation of Pavlov related to learning is –  
(a) Animal Intelligence (b) Conditioned Reflexes (c) Dynamic Theories

**G.S. Anderson** has described the learning by conditioned reflex in this way- "In conditioned Reflex Responses, according to a special stimulus whose response generally happens, is selected that this stimulus response is a different kind of learning according to the main tendency of creature. After this, a new stimulus is given with the main stimulus, and then, it is seen that this new stimulus does the same response which the main stimulus used to do. Thus, new stimulus conditions itself with the conditioned response in the learning by conditioned reflex responses."

Thus people learn by the conditioned reflex process. This connectionism is the main reason for the different habits like-fear, hatred, love, in children. For example- Child's fear from the darkness is not natural, but it happens when he is connected with the unnatural stimulus. Practically a Psychologist **Watson** did an experiment on the child, who had not fear from the animals and pleased much playing with the rabbits. One day when he was playing with the rabbit, a fearful sound was sounded. Child was frightened with it. This sound was repeated many times when he played with the rabbits. After some time he began to frighten even seeing the rabbit, when sound was not present at all.

**Evaluation of the Conditioned Reflex Theory** –Conditioned response method is depended on the above theory of learning, which is not beyond of criticism, some psychologists do not consider it today in this way. The following opinions are presented in this connection-

- (1) It is easy to learn only animal by connectionism. A man learns less through this process along with the age growth. It does not play any important role in learning difficult subjects.
- (2) Connectionism or conditioning is only possible in special situations. These situations are unnatural, while learning is possible in natural conditions.
- (3) There is no stability in learning in this method.
- (4) This method forced very much for practice and a different type of greed. The process of learning becomes mechanical after presenting unnatural stimulus many times, which does not have any newness.

It is clear now that this method or theory does not explain learning properly, but according to some psychologists this method is very important in the education and an important method in the learning.



Task

Explain the learning process by conditioned reflex theory.

## 9.2 Utility and Importance of Conditioned Reflex Theory in Education

Conditioned Reflex Action, famous by the name of Connected Reflex, Conditioned Reflex, Connected Response and Connectionism action delivered by Pavlov, is very important and useful in the learning theory and method education, because the beginning of man's learning is possible by the expecting

responses. In the educational way, the utility and the importance of conditioned reflex theory can be highlighted in the following way-

Notes

- (1) More advantage can be taken in the education of the child by the connectionism process. In the childhood many actions are related to the peculiar things and continue to adolescence. For example if a child is uninterested, hates, fears any peculiar thing and person, in the stage of adolescent his behavior is same towards the same things. Connectionism should be used carefully for the learning of good habits for the children.
- (2) This method helps in removing bad habits and in changing the conduct and behavior.
- (3) With the help of this method fear related mental diseases can be cured.
- (4) For the establishment of discipline, the theory of reward and punishment is also depended on it.
- (5) This method helps children in the social awareness and adjustment with the environment.
- (6) The scholars of society and uncommon psychology have explained many subjects on the basis of this theory. This theory can be helped in the explanation of uncommon human behavior. The opinion of Crow and Crow is, "This method is useful for the education of those subjects, in which rumination is not needed, as-writing, alphabet series."
- (7) It is the natural method of learning. Child always gets the opportunity of learning by this method.
- (8) The seeing, hearing material, which is used in the learning, is depended on this theory.
- (9) The learning process happening in the home and school can be explained easily with the help of this method.
- (10) This method should be used properly for the conditioning work of children. This method is very useful in the learning process.



**Notes** Throwing light on the importance of this method **Skinner** said – "Connecting easy process is a fundamental theory, on which learning depends."

- (11) The opinion of **Pro. Anderson** is – "The best contribution of conditioned response theory is, we get such an imaginary scientific basis material in it, by which we can developed a theory of learning."

### 9.3 Summary

- On the basis of the experiment done by Pavlov on the dog, this theory has been given the name of 'Classical Conditioned Theory'. On the basis of nature of this theory it has been given the name of 'Response Bond Theory'. Here the main thing is to deliver the opinion of Pavlov's experiments on the dog and applying its conclusion on the human behavior in the field of learning.
- **Edward L. Thorndike** delivered famous connectionism in 1898 in his book 'Animal Intelligence'. In the field of learning psychology, connectionism means to create connection between stimulus and response. In the connectionism relationship is established between stimulus and response. So it is known by the name of stimulus response theory.

### 9.4 Keywords

1. **Reflex** – Come back, Return
2. **Extinction** – Spoil, Separate, Hide, Rob

Notes

### **9.5 Review Questions**

1. Throw light on the conditioned reflex theory of Pavlov.
2. Explain the importance and utility of conditioned reflex theory in the education.

### **Answers: Self-Assessment**

1. (c)
2. (b)
3. (c)
4. (b)

### **9.6 Further Readings**



*Books*

1. Education Psychology – S.K. Mangal, PHI Learning Pvt. Ltd., New Delhi.
2. Educational Psychology – S.H. Sinha and Rachna Sharma, Atlantic publication, New Delhi
3. The Information and Importance of Education in the Children – Seema Chopra, Hindi book center, New Delhi.
4. Development of Learner and Educational Learning Process – A.K. Verma, Hindi Book Centre, New Delhi.

## Unit-10: Skinner's Operant Conditioning Theory

### CONTENTS

Objectives

Introduction

10.1 Skinner's Operant Conditioning Theory

10.2 Educational Importance of Skinner's Operant Conditioning Theory

10.3 Summary

10.4 Keywords

10.5 Review Questions

10.6 Further Readings

### Objectives

After the study of this unit, students will be able to –

- Understand the learning related Operant Conditioning Theory.
- Understand the educational importance of Operant Conditioning Theory.

### Introduction

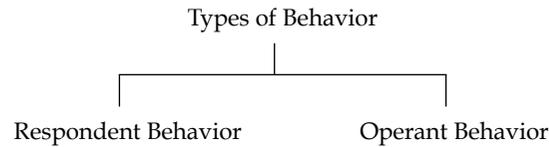
For the clarification of any conception, the explanatory statement that which is based on the conclusion of the perceptible uses, can be called a theory. After studying the conditions taking place in learning, the psychologists, on the basis of observation, analysis and synthesis, by the scientific method and by the experiments, have presented a collected opinion, which are the theories of learning. Here Skinner's Operant Conditioning Theory has been described in detail.

### 10.1 Skinner's Operant Conditioning Theory

'Operant Conditioning Theory' is a method of learning, which was developed by an American scientist **B.F. Skinner**. His learning related opinions began to spread almost in 1932 century. His two books 'The Behavior of Organism' and 'Beyond Freedom and Dignity' are famous. Skinner's

**Notes**

name is mainly known in the list of behavioral scholars. Skinner has described the two types of behaviors, as –



**(1) Respondent Behavior** – This type of behavior lives under control of stimulus. For example, the excreting of saliva after taking food in the mouth is respondent behavior. Other examples of respondent behavior can be given by the experiment of Pavlov in addition of this example, as- to close the eyes after throwing the light, to move away the hand after piercing the pin and to draw away the hand after touching the hot thing.

**(2) Operant Behavior** – This kind of behavior is somewhat different from the above behavior. This behavior is not under the direct control of stimulus. It is embed in the self desire of learner. Operant behavior does not happen until a man is willingly ready for doing this type of behavior. For example in the experiment of Skinner, the behavior of rat is operant. In the same way after ringing the bell, opening the door or not depends upon the desire of a man. On ringing the bell, opening the door related behavior is operant behavior. In the experiment of Skinner, for getting the reward, rat operates the lever. Therefore this type of learning is called Instrumental Conditioning.

He considered learning as the changing process happening in the behavior like other behaviorists. He accepted conditioning as the reason of learning, but his conditioning process is quite different. In fact before delivering his learning theory, he did historical survey of already-done learning related studies and analyzed the creativity of concept and reflex. According to him, the fundamental basis of human behavior is observed in the correlation of stimulus response relationship. In the explanation of human behavior, former psychologists delivered the concept of reinforcement, which Skinner developed through schedules of Reinforcement further. He has imagined a such version of society in his ideal novel 'Walden Two' in which human behavior can be determined and controlled in a well organized way by awarding prize.

According to Skinner we should see and ponder on the earlier environment, in order to know the reason of any types of behavior. For example the origin of criminal tendency in the adolescence is due to some qualities of environment. Changing environment is important for the changing of behavior. He has considered stimulated process very important. He has considered the external observation capable behavior as an important subject of psychology because it can be seen experienced and evaluated and this behavior can be investigated scientifically. A man's behavior can be determined and controlled by the rules of learning. **Skinner** has described two types of behavior – Stimulus produced behavior and action produced behavior. Whose responses go on and produce due to the known stimulus, is called produce stimulus behavior. It is necessary for action produce stimulus to have connection with some known stimulus. Stimulus produced and action produced response are related to conditioning, which we called S or R types. The connection of S types conditioning with stimulus produce behavior is so, because reinforcement is connected to stimulus. It has been clarified with the theory of Pavlov. S types conditional stimulus ( sound of bell) has been presented with unconditional stimulus(food),which obtain the quality of unconditional stimulus. R type conditioned is which called action produce is conditioning. Action produce conditioning is known by the name of Operant conditioning. Here operant conditioning name has been used.

Some psychologists have called operant conditioning by the name of Instrumental learning and Instrumental conditioning, because it includes the learning of such responses which are accomplished. It is a medium in achieving the food, in the solution of suffering and punishment and obtaining the goal. So some psychologists have called it as 'material conditioning'. Pavlov's classical conditioning does not accomplish anything, in it, there is only the establishment between stimulus and response.



Notes

Sometimes in the instrumental behavior, included behavior is called conductor behavior, because it conducts the environment.

Notes

## Instrumental Conditioning

**Skinner's Box** – Experiment, which has been described further, clarifies the instrumental learning and in fact the fundamental symptoms of most of a man's learning. Man, in the beginning, is motivated by some purpose, such type of response happen within the motivation general concluded process, which is used as a medium in the achievement of goal. Thus, in the attainment of any special goal whatever learning takes place, it is called instrument.

Like the **Pavlov's** classical conditioning, Reinforcement is an important element for the learning of Instrumental learning. All the elements of classical conditioning are found in the operant conditioning. Yet there are some differences in them. In Pavlov's classical conditioning theory, a dog was tied with the table and did not perform any action. In the experiment of Skinner rats are active. So this theory has been called operant (which is originated from the action) theory. Being operated, a creature gets some instrument and after doing again and again he reinforces that instrumental process. This name depends on the fact that a man does action for getting some reward or doing reinforcement in his environment; reinforcement is the attainment of that goal, which can satisfy motivation, as- in the 'Skinner Box' having the food of a hungry rat was the reinforcement. Skinner, who has used action produce and operant words, according to him, behavior is to do action for the obtaining any result towards environment, as- food, water, or achievement of any reward. It is clear that Instrumental learning or name of conditioning is the behavioral side of operant conditioning theory.

In the theory of Skinner, operant is the main thing, so it is important to understand it.

**The Meaning of Operant** – In the Skinner' theory, the operant means, action producing response or the collection of responses, by which a man attains goal and he something gets from it. This is such a learning behavior, which is used as an instrument of getting reward and outcome. Prof. **K.P. Pandey** has given the definition of operant in the following way –

"An operant is technically defined as a group of responses or set of acts which are controlled by the similar consequences."

**Prof. S.S. Chauhan** has defined operant in the following way –

"The term operant emphasizes the fact that behavior operates upon the environment to generate its own consequences."

This conclusion comes from the above opinions that operant is the some kind of behavior, but this behavior does not remain under the control of its former stimulus. It is the quality of operant behavior, that it is operated on the environment and generates outcome. According to Skinner, operant behavior is generated by the man not by stimulus. He has used the word 'operant' for this reaction.

Skinner has presented the opinion of S type conditioning in place of R type of conditioning, which means – the conditioning and connection of outcome of response with the attainment, with the help of it operant conditioning theory is derived, so now the opinion of operant conditioning theory should be understood. The opinion of operant conditioning theory is following –

## Operant Conditioning

Operant conditioning theory can be understood easily in the perspective of Pavlov's classical conditioning. We saw in the classical conditioning that food (one stimulus) is conditioned with the sound of bell

**Notes**

(other stimulus). This is S type conditioning. In which response is connected with S. S-R theory which is developed by Pavlov, Thorndike and Watson, moving forward Skinner conditioned the responses expressed in Thorndike S-R bond theory by the attainment and prize, which helps in the reinforcement of a learning response. So Skinner's theory is also called S-R Conditioning with Reinforcement. It is clear that Skinner's theory is affected by Thorndike's 'rules of effect', because its reward is like the 'indirect reinforcement of getting pleasure and satisfaction' of Thorndike. A human wants to get some pleasure by some responses. These responses become the equipment of attainment. Material responses make a person operant for attainment of result. This is operant conditioning, because this conditioning depends on the response. So this is R type conditioning. The opinion of Operant conditioning will be clearer from the following statements –

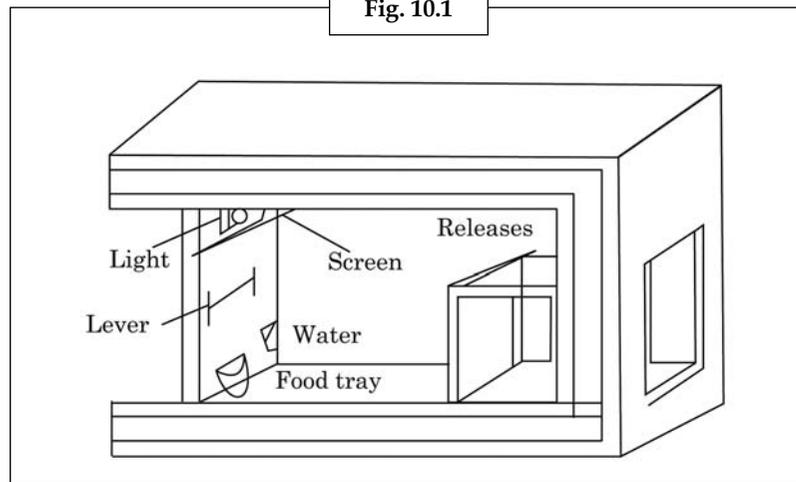
**Skinner** – "Behavior is the movement of an organism or of its part in a frame of reference provided by the organism itself."

"Operant conditioning is the learning process where by a response is made more probable or more frequent."

**Pandey** – "An operant conditioning is a process in which the behavior of an organism is emitted rather than elicited one (operant behavior) and is strengthened, in the sense of becoming more likely or probable or frequent to occur, through reinforcement."

Skinner did many experiments to display the process of operant conditioning. Operant conditioning theory can be learnt by his one important experiment.

Fig. 10.1



**The experiment of Skinner**

An experiment done on the rats is following –

Skinner prepared a box for experiment which is called Skinner's box. A lever was added with this box. Which was connected to a bowl, and by the side of lever there was a hole for the entering of rats. After pressing the lever the sound 'khatt' was echoed, and food came into the bowl. In this box a white hungry rat entered into the box by the path, prepared by the side of lever. Rat wandered here and there and leapt and jumped, naturally the lever was pressed by rat. Food came into the bowl with the sound of khatt. Rat ate the food. Naturally the lever was pressed again by the rat and food came with the sound of khatt, which was again eaten by rat. Later on pressing the lever and having the food, it was seen that rat started to live by the side of lever, pressing the lever, eating the arrived food, the rat was set with comfort. After the repetitions of this experiment, Skinner saw

that on being hungry, rat began to press the lever. This conclusion was found from this experiment that "if any strength providing stimulus is got after any action, there is growth in the strength of that action."

Skinner did not see in his experiment under which conditions does the lever presses, rather he watches the event of response by pressing the lever. He considers this response as an emitted response. According to **Psychologist Stephens** – This theory can be understood in this way – "whichever type of study includes such emitted responses, it is the suggestion of Skinner for their explanation, whatever response help in the reinforcement that will be reinforced, means the response will be more reinforced. This is the general tendency of above response, which is reinforced, that this response is reinforced only. It is not any S R tendency or condition. Rat presses the lever and gets the food, thus rat's possibility of pressing the lever is developed and this response is reinforced and rat even after having the food, presses the lever."

It is clear from the description of this experiment that rat is inspired by the reward (food) and reinforced for doing some actions. Rat's continued attempts is due to the reinforcement. It is also clear from this experiment that learning is a sequence process, which is developed by the efforts and goes on to be stronger.

He did his second experiment on the pigeons. Skinner used another special technique for the experiment on the pigeons, which is called pigeon Box. The experiments done on the pigeon, Skinner put this aim that pigeon, after completing a whole round from the right side, learnt to peck on a certain place. With this experiment, hungry pigeon which was imprisoned in the pigeon box, as soon as flying toward the right side and started to peck on the certain place, he got a grain of wheat. By this wheat it got strength for the repetition of its behavior, and moving towards the right side it respond to peck the beak. Consequently he got a grain of wheat and that's why the pigeon learnt the way to get the grain (food) by the pecking beak and moving toward the right side.

Skinner gave birth to a new conditioning theory in the field of learning by his experiments. He found the conclusion that our learning related behavior is moved by the operant conditioning. Our behavior and response is like operant conditioning to some extent.

Skinner gives a lot of importance to reinforcement in his experiment, on which, his learning theory depends. So it is necessary to understand the opinions on reinforcement.



*Did u know?* Skinner did many experiments on the pigeons and rats to expose operant conditioning process.

## Concept of Reinforcement

In the learning whichever effect falls on the responses, for its explanation Skinner takes the support of the opinions on reinforcement. According to him whichever response will help in reaching the reinforcement, only that will be strengthened. Reinforcement is not the firmness of S-R Bond, in it, emitted responses play an important role, and there is creation of a reserve of responses with each reinforcement. The process of Reinforcement happens on the basis of reinforcement elements, as- getting the food after pressing the lever. Getting the food is reinforcement and the response of pressing the lever is the reinforcement of increasing strength. **Hulse, Deese & Edeth** have defined the reinforcement in the following way:

"A reinforcement is a stimulus event which if it the proper temporal relation with a response, tends to maintain or the strength or a response or of a stimulus response connection."

- Notes** Types of Reinforcement – the types of reinforcement can be divided into two groups –
- (A) In Group
    - (1) Positive Reinforcement
    - (2) Negative Reinforcement
  - (B) In Group
    - (1) Primary Reinforcement
    - (2) Secondary Reinforcement

**Positive Reinforcement** – Positive Reinforcement includes those stimuli of Reinforcement whose presences increase the strength of response. As – Food, is a positive reinforcement for a hungry man. In the positive Reinforcement, a man does some positive response for getting something. It is signed by  $S^+$ .

**Negative Reinforcement** – Negative Reinforcement includes those stimuli Reinforcement whose absence help in the development of growth. As – if a child does not eat the food under the fear of dog, after going away of the dog he eats the food. In this condition the absence of dog is negative reinforcement. It is signed by  $S^-$ .

Often punishment is taken as a negative Reinforcement, but there is difference between them. Negative Reinforcement develops the strength of any response with its absence while punishment makes the strength of any response weaker. Punishment diminishes the probability of this happening in a response.

**Primary Reinforcement** – In the Primary Reinforcement, Reinforcer is that stimulus whose presence makes any response stronger, and its relation is established with the needed physical arrangement as-hunger, thirst, work, security. For example rat gets the food after pressing the lever.

**Secondary Reinforcement** – Secondary Reinforcement includes those stimuli of response, which make strength of making any response stronger due to their continued presence with the primary Reinforcement, means secondary Reinforcement are those Reinforcement which do not have the capability in themselves but joining with the primary Reinforcement, they get the capability of doing Reinforcement. For example in the primary Reinforcement if sound is echoed with the food, then sound even without food, does the response of Reinforcement, it is called conditioning Reinforcement.

Reinforcement is done after making a certain plan, which is called the schedules of Reinforcement. Its summary is following-



Task

Write the effect of Reinforcement in the process of Reinforcement.

## Schedules of Reinforcement

The process of providing Reinforcement is called conditioning, which can be given by the continued plan making. This continued plan is called the schedules of Reinforcement. Behavior can be adopted according to the expected goal by the well planned schedules of Reinforcement. **Ferster** and **Skinner** have described sixteen different schedules of Reinforcement in the experiments of operant conditioning. Mainly the schedules of Reinforcement are made in two ways.

**(a) Continuous and Non-Intermittent Schedules** – In which each emitted response is reinforced and there is extinction without being reinforced.

**(b) Partial or intermittent Schedules** – In which, only the partial schedule of response is followed by the reinforcement.

On the basis of above schedules, following four types of schedules can be developed-

**(1) Fixed-Ratio Schedule** – It is called in brief FR. In it, a man is reinforced for a response after many fixed response. As – After the five responses, the reinforcement of one response. Here the average is 5 : 1.

**(2) Variable-Ratio Schedule**—In brief it is called VR. In the arrangement of this schedule, the counting of expected response is changed into average margin for the Reinforcement. As – once fourth response is reinforced in the second time six and third time first response was reinforced

**(3) Fixes Interval Schedule**—In short it is called FI. In which the Reinforcement of response is done on a fixed interval time, As - To do Reinforcement after five minutes.

**(4) Variable Interval Schedule**—In short it is called VI. In which the Reinforcement of response is done on variable interval time. As—to do the reinforcement of any response sometime 2 seconds and sometimes fives seconds and sometimes after the eight seconds.

**The Effect of Reinforcement**—In the process of Reinforcement, the following effects come from the reinforcement factors:

- (1) To make a behavior stronger.
- (2) To make sides fixed for providing any happening of the behavior.
- (3) Changes take place in the behavior immediately. The changed behavior is stable for some time and it becomes weaker in the absence of the further reinforcement and finally it disappears.

**The Use of Reinforcement Theory in the Education**— There are the following uses in the Reinforcement theory –

- (1) This theory is very important in the education, because it forces on the activity of children.
- (2) This theory strengthens the notion that on the notion any activity can be increased the children by awarding the specific prize.
- (3) A child can be prepared for the satisfaction of result forever after considering this theory.
- (4) Giving prize and appreciation has an important place in giving education to the child.
- (5) By the effect of this theory, changing educational method according to its need, a child's interest can be awoken towards the study.

### Self Assessment

Tick right or wrong in front of given statements:

1. Skinner experimented on wild monkeys for the display of his theory.
2. Skinner has considered the external observation probable behavior as the important subject of psychology, because it can be seen, guessed and evaluated.
3. It is illogical to call operant conditioning as instrumental conditioning.
4. Skinner did his experiments on the rats and pigeons.

## 10.2 Educational Importance of Skinner's Operant Conditioning Theory

Operant Conditioning Theory has an important place in the education. This theory is used in the teaching of different subjects in the class learning. The use of pre-planned direction in the educational machine depends on this theory of learning, and it is delivered by Skinner. The statement prepared in the sets of frame in the education machine, is presented serial wise. When student press the component of machine, the correct answer comes in front of him. This reinforcement can be positive and negative. Correct answer verifies learning, and he is further motivated for learning, and in this way, there is reinforcement of right answer. Programmed learning depends on this theory, in which student does his reinforcement himself after getting the right answer. Following things can be said related to the educational importance of this theory from Skinner:

**Notes**

- (1) Parents and teachers can develop desirable behavior in the children with the help of this theory. Children are encouraged with the reinforcement of desirable behavior. In the class, teacher can do the desirable process of reinforcement by smiling, appreciation, and by giving more marks.
- (2) The good behavior of children, the reinforcement of getting home work or other success should be done immediately by rewarding him.
- (3) Attention shall be paid to the needs of children in the different activities of school.
- (4) This theory encourages for motivation, so, after explaining the object of subject matter, teaching in the class, children should always be inspired in the class.
- (5) This rule can be used for the improvement of bad behavior of children.
- (6) The theory of reinforcement can be helped in the skill development, adjustment and social learning of children.

### **10.3 Summary**

- ‘Operant Conditioning Theory’ is a method of learning, which was developed by an American scientist **B.F. Skinner**. His learning related opinions began to spread almost in 1932 century. His two books ‘The Behavior of Organism’ and ‘Beyond Freedom and Dignity’ are famous. Skinner’s name is mainly known in the list of behavioral scholars.
- This type of behavior lives under control of stimulus. For example, the excretion of saliva after taking food in the mouth is respondent behavior.
- This behavior is not under the direct control of stimulus. It is embed in the self desire of learner. Operant behavior does not happen until a man is willingly ready for doing this type of behavior. For example, in the experiment of Skinner, the behavior of rat is operant. In the same way after ringing the bell, opening the door or not depends upon the desire of a man. On ringing the bell, opening the door related behavior is operant behavior.
- Operant Conditioning Theory’ is a method of learning, which was developed by an American scientist **B.F. Skinner**, who has described the two types of behaviors, Respondent Behavior and Operant Behavior.
- According to him, the fundamental basis of human behavior is observed in the correlation of stimulus response relationship. In the explanation of human behavior, former psychologists delivered the concept of reinforcement, which Skinner developed through schedules of Reinforcement further. He has imagined a such version of society in his ideal novel ‘Walden Two’ in which human behavior can be determined and controlled in a well organized way by awarding prize.

### **10.4 Keywords**

1. **Conditioning** – Adopting according to the situation.
2. **Reinforcement** – To provide strength.

### **10.5 Review Questions**

1. Throw some light on Pavlov’s conditioning reflex theory.
2. Explain the importance of operant conditioning theory.

**Answers: Self-Assessment**

Notes

1. Wrong      2. Right      3. Wrong      4. Right

**10.6 Further Readings**



*Books*

1. Education Psychology – S.K. Mangal, PHI Learning Pvt. Ltd., New Delhi.
2. Psychology – Dr. Saryu Prasad, Agra book Store, Agra.
3. Psychology–The Study of Human Behavior – Brij kumar mishra, P.H.I. Learning, New Delhi
4. Development of Learner and Educational Learning Process – A.K. Verma, Hindi Book Centre, New Delhi.

## Notes

**Unit-11: Kohler's Insight Theory****CONTENTS**

Objectives

Introduction

11.1 Kohler's Insight Theory

11.2 Educational Importance of Kohler's Insight Theory

11.3 Summary

11.4 Keywords

11.5 Review Questions

11.6 Further Readings

**Objectives**

After the steady of this unit, the student will be able to –

- Understand learning related Kohler's Insight Theory.
- Understand educational importance of Kohler's Insight Theory.

**Introduction**

Kohler's Insight Theory depends on the concepts of Gestaltists. Kohler himself had a distinctive place among the Psychologists who developed Gestaltism. The founder of Gestaltism was Max Wertheimer. It is necessary to understand the concept of Gestaltism for the understanding of Kohler's Insight Theory. The meaning of Gestalt is 'whole form'. Gestaltism means presenting the whole form as a figure. In the words of **Vardimer** – "The characteristic of any whole form is determined by its nature or internal organization but not by its individual elements." It is considered under the concept of Gestalt the the form of anything is not to be seen as small parts but as a whole, this is because it is bigger than that of whole parts. The reaction towards the evidence of images established in the environment depends on the stimulating conditions; we learn any new thing after the creation of a new whole figure. This process of organization or reorganization that is presented in the form of changes happening in the responses, is called learning. The learning related concepts of Gestaltists are following –

**According to the Gestaltists** – Gestaltism is developed by the German Psychologists (Vardimer, Kolfa and Kohler) as a consequence of running the Buddhist movement. It was primarily related to the observation in the beginning but learning psychology as well came under its coverage later on. Gestalt theory developed in the response of association theory. According to it, a man learns the

whole nature of any thing fragmentally, means whatever we watch, hear and feel, its whole figure is so large that after jumbling up the different parts of it, a large figure of that thing appears. According to the Gestaltists – “A Gestalt of form is a whole characteristics of its individual elements, but by the internal nature of the whole.”

In learning, a man keeps watch on the whole condition, and then finds out the solution. Under this theory, in the process of learning, there is an internal insight for succeeding in the solution of any problem.

Notes



*Did u know?* The thought of learning by the internal insight, in the field of learning is the alternative of Pavlov conditioned theory, Thorndike's stimulus-response bond theory and Skinner's Operant conditioning theory.

Gestaltists talk about the memory symbol, these memory symbols are totally collected. These memory symbols go on changing from one situation to another; these changes can be brought by thought or time interval, the way in which they are recollected, it is related to Gestalt learning. Famous Gestaltist Kohlar has presented the insight theory of learning, in which relation the following things are stated –

## 11.1 Kohler's Insight Theory

German native **Wolfgang Kohler** was sent to Teneriffe situated in Canary island for the study of human psychology in 1913 by an organization “Prussian Academy of Science”, where he studied the chimpanzees extensively in places that were desolated in the beginning of first world war. He has presented this description in his book ‘Mentality of Apes’ in 1925. In this book he has presented his theory of insight on the basis of the outcomes of many experiments done on the apes. The important element of his theory is insight, so it is necessary to understand insight.

**Meaning of Insight** – During the time of solving any problem when suddenly any solution comes in mind, the change that happens rapidly in the observation is called insight. In the reference of learning, insight is the catch of whole condition. In fact insight includes in watching all the situations as a collected lot. In the learning psychology we see that a living being learns by trial and error or by following others. But there are such activities which he learns soon without discussing with anyone through his idea. This immediate plan is insight, by which a man learns. According to Good- “Internal knowledge or insight is the sudden, definite and current knowledge of real condition.”

According to **Kohler**, “In more than one technical ways, the meaning of insight is to get the solution of any problem at once, by which, such a procedure begins that moves according to the situation and brings the solution of problem in the form of direct knowledge and data. He says that the real creation of any condition should be opened upwards for the observation.”

**Learning by Insight** – According to Kohler a man cannot learn by the trial and error, but first he does the direct observation of problematic situation through his mental strength and intellect. Then he does some responses. The learning process happens on the basis of alternative presentation of whole situations. When a man comes under a situation, he establishes relationship with the different elements and things and does conditioned responses after understanding the whole situation very well. It is the indication of insight to have the understanding of all the situation and then reacting. So this is called learning by insight, which we give the name of internal sight.

Notes



**Notes** The capability of learning is found in men and animals. Insight is related to intellect, rumination and imagination. Mental efforts are done in the learning of this method.

**The characteristics of learning by Insight** – The important characteristics of learning by insight are following –

- (1) In the learning by insight, first a man observes the entire situation and then establishes the connection between problem and situation.
- (2) After watching the *problem* and situation and doing efforts suddenly he gets the result, although he gets success after a period of trial and error behavior yet this behavior is not the useless trial and error. It is the direct effort of definite and problem centric solution.
- (3) All efforts of the solving a problem are connected to one another and help in the changing and organizing of proper behavior.
- (4) After some efforts, the insight of sudden solution comes in a man.
- (5) A learner feels helplessness before insight, but he becomes expert after finding the solution of one problem by insight. Thus, learning by insight moves towards the skillfulness from helplessness.
- (6) Skillfulness learnt by insight can be repeated and transformed under the new situation. High level of solving a problem and capability of good transformation also come in a man.
- (7) Insight depends upon the understanding, which is connected to the intellectual level. More insight is seen in the creature of higher level than that of low level.
- (8) Insights also affect the period of learning.
- (9) The insight is also affected by experience in learning. However more experience does not mean more insight.



**Task** Which theory, the Gestaltism developed in response of?

### The experiments of Kohler

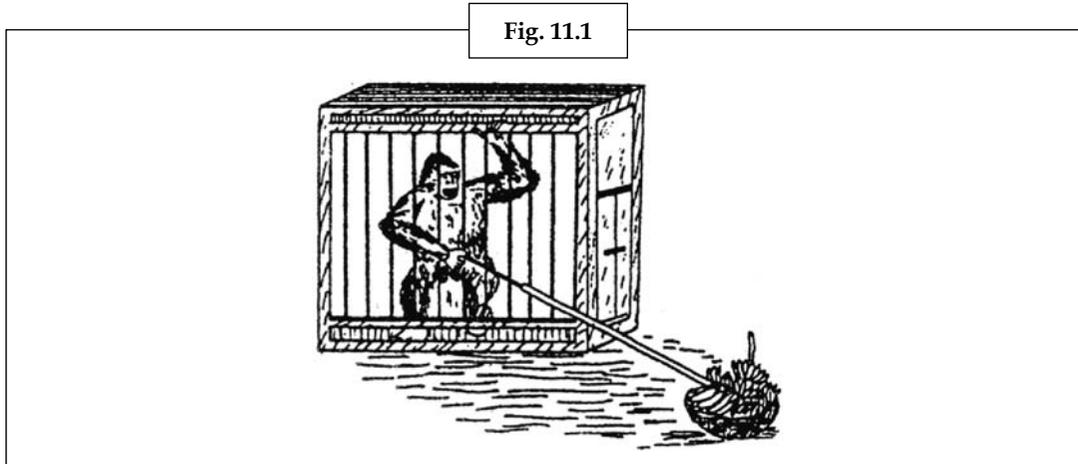
By the experiments of Kohler, his insight theory can be evidently understood. He did many experiments on the chimpanzee in the Tenerife Island. Kohler started his experiment by keeping six apes in the cage of wood. There was an intelligent ape among them who was named Sultan by Kohler, and mostly experiments done on Sultan. Kohler presented two types of problem in front of Sultan. Stick problem and Box problem.

**Stick Problem Related Experiments** – A chimpanzee was kept in a cage and a Sharp Stick was put by it side and bananas were put outside of the cage, which he could not get by stretching his hands out. Chimpanzee first tried to get the banana by spreading its limbs but he could not get the banana. After some time he picked up the stick lying by the side of cage and pulled the bananas with the help of it. He was satisfied after getting the bananas. After using the sticks he got the bananas, which was the outcome of his insight.

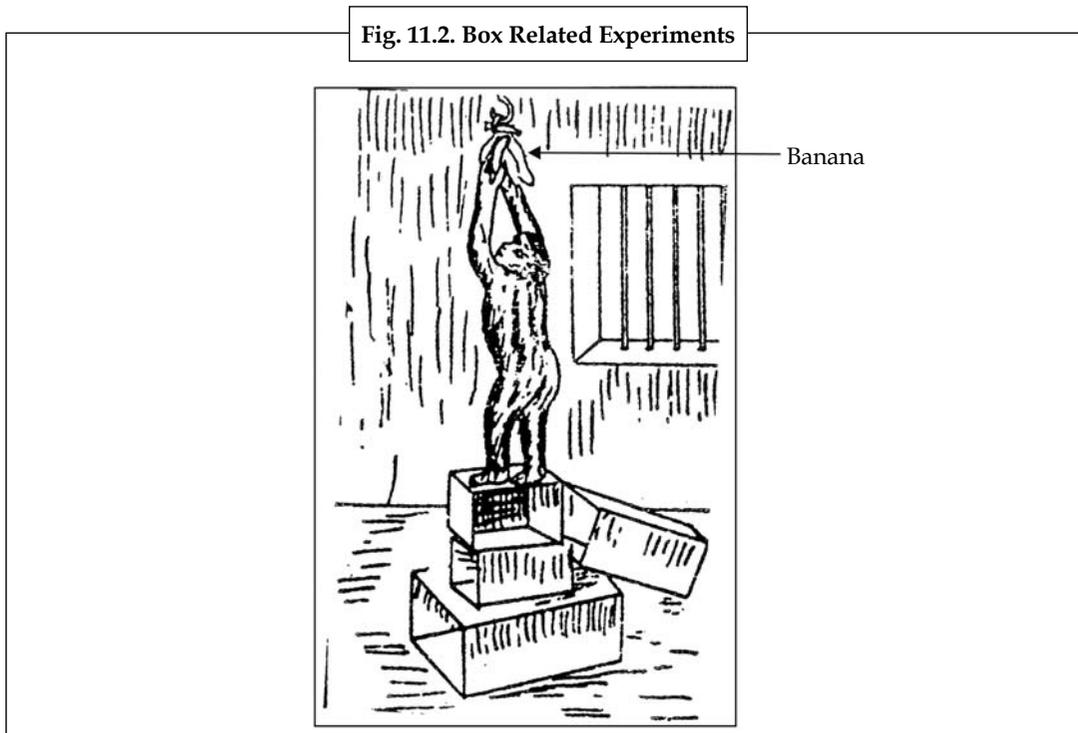
After this Kohler put two sticks in the cage which could be made longer by fitting into each other. Bananas were kept outside of the cage at a distance. Hungry ape tried to get them after spreading the hands but being failed he tried to get the bananas by a stick – Again he could not get success, then he started to play with the both sticks suddenly the one side of the stick was fitted with the another side of it. And

after the joining of one stick with the other, it became longer. He got success in getting the bananas like earlier. In the second day again an ape was kept in the same condition, and it was seen that after joining the sticks soon he pulled up the bananas without wasting the times. Ape got this insight suddenly. Before getting the insight, ape tried to establish the connection among the conditions of the cage, the distance of bananas and the length of stick and got the goal after resolving the problem by insight.

Notes



**Box Problem Related Experiments** – In the Box related experiment Kohler kept Sultan in a cage. A bunch of bananas was hung from the ceiling of the cage and a wooden box was kept in the cage. Bananas were out of it reached. First he tried to get the banana after leaping and springing but could not get success. And he wandered here and there in the cage and kept on watching on the box, suddenly he pulled the box under the hanging bananas and climbing upon the box he got success in getting the bananas.



**Notes**

Second day again a hungry ape was kept inside the cage but this time the bananas were on the more height. And there were two boxes in the cage. After wandering to and fro he came to the boxes and after pulling up the box he brought it right under the bananas, yet he could not get it. Then he put the second box upon the first box and got the bananas after climbing on it. Here ape established the connection between the two boxes. In this way three boxes by putting on one another, Ape learnt to get the bananas.

**Self Assessment**

Fill in the blanks:

1. Kohler’s theory of insight ..... depends on the thought.
2. Kohler’s learning theory ..... is called the theory.
3. Kohler did his experiments on .....
4. Kohler kept his chimpanzee’s name .....

**The Conclusion of the Experiments** – From the above experiments of Kohler the conclusion comes that process of any action related to mind can be done on the two level –

- (1) Learning at Perceptual Level
- (2) Learning at Conceptual Level

A human being at the perceptual level, with the help of sense organ and after having the perceptual knowledge of entire situation, does reaction and then he learns. A man is thoughtful and wise by the insight. So he watches troublesome situation entirely and finds out the solution of his problem soon. We can say that the process of learning is at the perceptual level in the experiment related to the boxes.

In the process of learning at the conceptual level mind helps, when some complicated situation is originated in front of any one and he has to take the support of intellect with the physical capabilities. Kohler’s stick related experiment indicates it.

**The helping factors producing insight** – It is known through the conclusion of above experiments that insight arising helping factors are following –

- (1) **The observation of entire situation and problem** – After studying the whole thing, the whole situation is known.
- (2) **Intellect** – There is more capability of insight in intelligent people. And in the dull minded people, less capability is found.
- (3) **Trial and Error** – In the process of doing trial and error, suddenly an insight is produced.
- (4) **Experience** – According to this theory, there is a transformation of experiences in learning. This experience after being organized adopts the form of Gestalt or whole. As a chimpanzee did many unsuccessful efforts to get the bananas after climbing upon the box and did not succeed, then putting one box upon another and got the success. In this way a man makes rules on the basis of watching, trial and error and all past experiences, and after organizing them Gestalts are prepared.

Thus it can be said that learning by insight is a high level learning, because it includes mental efforts, and there is the use of intellect and imagination in it. A man learns after observing the condition on high intellectual level and understanding and reacting to the entire aspect of problem. Here, it is proper to say that the learning method by insight has been hidden in the method of learning by trial and error. In resolving any problem, not only insight works but thinking and trial also used. For example- during the time of resolving math problem effort and insight both work. Then result comes.

**Difference between the learning method of ‘Trial and Error’ and ‘Insight’** – In short, the following differences are found between both learning method.

- (1) Trial and Error method focused on the motor skill due to depending on the motor level, while in the learning by insight the use of mind and intellectual skill is more focused.

- (2) Every one can use Trial and error method, but common intellectual level is needed for the use of insight method.
- (3) Trial and error method especially depends on the exercise, inspiration and emotion, while insight method depends on observation.
- (4) Trial and error method depends on the practice and hard work, while the insight method the solution of problem comes suddenly.
- (5) In Trial and Error method, each time new effort has to be done in a new way for the new problem, while in insight method problems are resolved in the absence of practice.
- (6) In trial and error method the focus of a man is towards the goal, while in insight method, the unconscious mind is more active- conscious activities happen less.
- (7) In trial and error method mastery comes slowly, while in insight method mastery comes quickly.
- (8) Trial and error method is useful for learning any skillfulness in sequence, while in the solution of any problem insight method is more useful.

It can be said in the conclusion that as the trial and error method cannot be used in the all levels of learning, in the same way insight method is not completely faultless. In fact both the methods should be used in the learning according to the situation.

## 11.2 Educational Importance of Kohler's Insight Theory

The importance of Gestalt and insight theory in the education is following –

- (1) This method provides appropriate opportunity for the development of imagination, discussion and thinking power of the children.
- (2) This method can give more help in the creative work.
- (3) A child himself is always ready for acquiring the knowledge after searching by this method. The knowledge which he gets in the special condition, he arranges that generalization in his mind properly. And this process helps him in the learning. For example- after eating the green unripe mango, he knows about the generalization of mango, that all the green unripe mangoes are sour.
- (4) This method has proved more useful for math, science. In resolving new problem of math, he uses new ways and formula by his insight.
- (5) Insight method is necessary and more useful in the research works of the higher level of education.
- (6) According to **Crow & Crow** – “This method is more useful in art, music and literature.”
- (7) A teacher should present a complete problem in front of student, as – in the geometry complete problem should be presented not formulas.
- (8) A teacher should keep in mind the rules of readiness for the successful use of this method and student should always be prepared for grasping the situation.
- (9) A Student should be inspired by the teacher for the learning till then he does not get the solution of the problem. By the effort of teacher, curiosity and interest develops in the students. So it is his duty that he develops the interest and curiosity in the student in this type of learning.
- (10) This theory forces on the organization and completeness of experience, so teacher should help the student in the reorganization of the experiences.
- (11) The solution of a problem should be presented in proper way not in improper way. Student learns the entire things first, then its parts. According to Gestaltist – “We come towards a part from the whole, not towards the whole from a part.”

Notes

### 11.3 Summary

- Kohler's Insight Theory depends on the concept of Gestaltist. Kohler himself had a distinctive place among the Psychologists who developed Gestaltism. The founder of Gestaltism was Max Wertheimer. It is necessary to understand the concept of Gestaltism for the understanding of Kohler's Insight Theory. The meaning of Gestalt is whole form. Gestaltism means the concept of presenting the whole form as a figure.
- Kohler's insight theory depends on the thought of Gestaltist. Gestaltism means, the concept of observing any figure completely or entirely.
- According to **Kohler**, "In the technical way the meaning of insight is to hold the solution of any problem at once, by which such a procedure begins that moves according to the situation and brings the solution of problem in the field of direct knowledge and in the context of counting. It is his saying that the real creation of any condition should be opened upwards for the observation."
- A Student should be inspired by the teacher for the learning till then he does not get the solution of the problem. By the efforts of the teacher, curiosity and interest develops in the students. So it is his duty that he develops the interest and curiosity in the student in this type of learning.

### 11.4 Keywords

1. **Insight Theory** – The theory of internal sight.
2. **Mastery** – Skillfulness, expertise.

### 11.5 Review Questions

1. Describe Kohler's learning related 'insight Theory'.
2. Throw light on the characteristics of Kohler's 'Insight Theory'.

### **Answers: Self-Assessment**

1. Gestaltist
2. Insight
3. Chimpanzee
4. Sultan

### 11.6 Further Readings



**Books**

1. Educational Psychology – S.H. Sinha and Rachna Sharma, Atlantic Publication, New Delhi.
2. Education Psychology – S.K. Mangal, PHI Learning Pvt. Ltd., New Delhi.
3. Development of Learner and Educational Learning Process – A.K. Verma, Hindi Book Centre, New Delhi.
4. The Information and Importance of Education in the Children – Seema Chopra, Hindi Book Center, New Delhi.

## Unit-12: Transfer of Training or Learning

### CONTENTS

Objectives

Introduction

- 12.1 Meaning of Transfer of Learning
- 12.2 Theories of Transfer of Learning
- 12.3 Types of Transfer of Learning
- 12.4 Conditions of Transfer of Learning
- 12.5 Educational Importance of Transfer of Learning
- 12.6 Summary
- 12.7 Keywords
- 12.8 Review Questions
- 12.9 Further Readings

### Objectives

After the study of this unit, the student will be able to—

- Understand the meaning and theory of transfer of learning.
- Know the types of transfer of learning.
- Understand the supporting conditions in the transfer of learning.
- Understand the importance of transfer of learning in education.

### Introduction

It is the opinion of Educational Psychologist that the knowledge obtained by the study of any subject proves useful in other subjects and situations. Often it is seen that the learning of any one action and subject helps in the learning of other action and subject. Ancient Psychologists have given important place to some subjects in the education. It was their opinion that mind can be trained properly by these subjects. It is the statement of **Plato**—“If geometry is taught to a dull minded, necessarily he will get some intelligence. The person, who will read geometry, will be more intelligent to understand all the subjects than any other person.” It is the opinion of Educationalist **Locke** that by the teaching of maths, a man is judicious and he can transfer this judgmental power in the learning

**Notes**

of other subjects. In the current times, the changes are going on in this method of training the mind. From the educational point of view, for getting the success the use of any learnt subject can be done in other subject. In education from the syllabus creating point of view, transfer theory has an important place in learning. Here, learning transfer and training transfer, two words have been used. Learning transfer means to make a use of self acquired knowledge in other situation by student. Training word includes both learning and teaching, thus both the words are related to application. So here, for comfort, learning transfer word has been used. So it is necessary to pay attention on the meaning, theory, type and educational importance of learning.



Notes

Philosopher Plato has said expressing his opinion related to learning that “if a dull minded was thought geometry he will get some talent. The person, who will read geometry, will be more intelligent to understand the entire subject than any other person.”

## 12.1 Meaning of Transfer of Learning

In education, transfer of learning means ‘To make use of learnt application and subject in other situations. In other words, Acquiring knowledge in other subjects and situations is affected by the acquired knowledge in one subject and situation, is called the transfer of learning. It is also called learning transition’ and learning transfer. For example- the knowledge which is gained in learning maths helps in the learning of Physics, chemistry and statistics. This application is called the transfer of learning. In this way a child uses his general knowledge of maths in the buying of thing in the market. It is evident that there is transition of education in some form in related fields. The meaning of learning transfer is evident with the following definitions given by psychologists –

- (1) **Velon and Veainstein** – “Transfer of learning means that performance on one task is by affected performance on another task”.
- (2) **Crow & Crow** – “The carry over of habits of thinking, feeling or working of knowledge, of skill, from one learning area to another is usually referred to as the transfer of training.”
- (3) **Callesanik** – “transfer is the application to carry over of knowledge, skill, habits, attitude or other responses from the situation in which they are initially acquired to some other situation.”
- (4) **Prof. Sorenson** – “Transfer is discussed to carry over the knowledge, training and habit acquired in one situation to another situation.”
- (5) **Pretorson** – “Transfer is generalization for it is extension of idea to a new field.”

It is evident from the above definitions, that, to make use of earlier learnt, acquired knowledge, skill, habits or other responses in other situations, is called transfer.

## 12.2 Theories of Transfer of Learning

After understanding the theories of learning it is necessary to know, how does transfer happen? For this, it is necessary to study the different theories of transfer. These theories are following-

- (1) **Faculty theory of Mind and concept of Formal Discipline** – This theory depends on the faculty psychology. According to it mind is made after mixing up many faculties, like- observation, memorization, imagination, discussion, and decision. This strength is different and free from one another. After training them and doing practice they can be made fast. And they can be used skillfully in any situation. For example if faculty is trained of memory, it is necessary to learn those words, which



are not useful for person at that time. Therefore it is the opinion of followers of this theory, that logical power can be trained by maths and then it helps in the learning of those subjects in which logical power is needed. According to this theory the selection of the learning subjects should be done in this way, by which, the mental faculties could be strengthened. Current psychology does not accept the division of mental faculties, so this theory cannot be accepted.

**(2) Theory of Identical Elements** – The founder of this theory Thorndike confirmed this, on the basis of his experiments, when there is similarity between the subjects and the contents of two experiences, there is more possibility of transfer. If there is similarity between both, the acquired knowledge of one subject proves fruitful in the study of other subject. As maths knowledge in Physics and in statistics, history's knowledge in political science, Psychology's knowledge in Educational Psychology, and the knowledge of philosophy helps us in the study of Educational- philosophy and we do not feel complication. The main reason of it, that, the identical parts and elements are found in these subjects. Sir Gates has given his statement in its confirmation- "It is seen that there is a higher ratio of transfer in the identical elements." That's why during the time of selecting subjects students try to select the subjects, which have identical elements in some parts. As- Selecting political science with current history.



*Did u know?* As math's knowledge in Physics and statistics, history's knowledge in political, Psychology's knowledge in Educational Psychology, and the knowledge of philosophy helps us in the study of Education-philosophy.

**(3) Theory of Generalization** – The founder of this theory is Mr. Charles Jud. According to this theory when a person finds out a general theory with the support of his experience, study and knowledge, he can transfer it in other situations. Explaining this theory Mr. Jud has said, "according to this theory, development of individual skill, complete possession on individual facts, attainment of individual habits and instincts have less importance in other situations from the transfer point of view- Till then skillfulness, facts and habits are not orderly related those other situations, in which it could be used.

It is evident from the above statement that child should be given education not only for discipline in one situation but also should be trained for well conduct and behavior in different times or situations.

**(4) Theory of 'G' and 'S' factor** – The founder of this theory is Spearman. According to him a child needs a general and individual capability for the learning of each subject. General capability or intellect is used in every sphere of life. But individual intellect is used in the specific situation. General intellect helps a man in every situation, so general capability and element is transferred, not individual elements. History, Geography and Literature are related to general capability, but drawing, music etc are related to individual capability.

**(5) Theory of Gestalt psychologists** – Among the Gestalts Psychologists, mainly Kohler's name comes. Kohler forces on the using of insight after observing the entire situation. These psychologists give importance to insight in learning. The development of insight is learning, which is used in one situation. According to these psychologists- To carry over the performance of insight, used and developed from one situation to other is called transfer of learning. A man observes the similarity between first and last situations and transfers the insight gained from one to another situation. This transfer happens due to the observed similarity. This type of transfer is seen in the solution of a problem, in which a man uses the solution gained from one situation into another similar situation. So this transfer is purposeful and effortful and equal opportunity is needed for this. Kohler has confirmed this theory by doing many experiments on the chimpanzee. According to Bayles, it is necessary to have three things for transfer of learning. (1) Arrival of opportunity. (2) To observe the opportunity. (3) The instinct of taking advantage with the opportunity in a man.

### 12.3 Types of Transfer of Learning

There are six types of transfer of learning –

**(1) Positive Transfer** – When the learning of one subject proves useful into other subject, it is called positive learning. We find in the positive transfer that, the affect of previous obtained knowledge, skill, instinct or other responses is seen in later obtained knowledge, skill, instinct or other responses. For example the man who has learnt typing on the English type writer, he learns easily typing on Hindi type writer. Means English typing proves useful for learning. The opinions of psychologists related to positive transfer are following.

**(i) Morgan and King** – “Positive transfer occurs when something previously learned benefits performance or learning in a new situation.”

**(ii) Sorenson** – “A person learns through transfer to the extent that the abilities required in one situation help in another.”

Positive Transfer is like a horizontal and vertical. Its description has been presented in no.3 and 4.

**(2) Negative Transfer** – When the learning of one subject and skill hinders in the learning of another subject and skillfulness or produce complication, which is called negative transfer, as it is difficult for a science side student to learn Arts side subjects. And other example as- the skill or knowledge of previous learnt English typing hinders in the learning of Hindi typing on Hindi type writer. This is negative transfer. In relation of negative transfer in which, we find after completing previous task in the completeness of later work, Psychologists have following opinions-

**(i) Morgan and King** – “Negative transfer occurs when something previously learnt hinders performance or learning in a new situation.”

**(ii) Boring and others** – “when learning one task makes the learning of second task harder we speak of negative transfer.”

Negative transfer is horizontal and vertical type as well. Its description has been presented in point no. 3 and 4. The nature of negative transfer is of two types –

**(a) Retro-active Negative Transfer** – When something previously learnt is affected or forgotten by the learning of new thing, it is called retro active negative transfer. For example it is difficult to remember previously learnt poem after learning the new poem.

**(b) Pro-active Negative Transfer** – When previous learnt thing affects or hinders the learning of the new thing, it is called proactive negative transfer. For example, the previously learnt poem hinders in the learning of second poem, or the lines of previous poem interfere in the memory.

**(3) Horizontal Transfer** – There are two types of horizontal transfers. When different types of talents and knowledge help in the learning of other talents and knowledge, it is called horizontal transfer. This transfer occurs between two subjects in a class. For example in the tenth class, a student’s maths related learning helps in the study of Physics. We call this type of transfer positive horizontal transfer. On the contrary if the learning and talent of one subject hinders in the learning and talent of other subject, it will be called negative horizontal transfer. For example tenth class student obtains knowledge and talent in maths, but this obtained knowledge hinders in the learning of Hindi and English. This type of learning will be called negative horizontal transfer.



*Did u know?* When a student earns talent and knowledge in maths and this knowledge hinders in the learning of Hindi, then this types of learning transfer is called horizontal transfer.

**(4) Vertical Transfer** – There are two types of vertical transfers, negative and positive. When the talent and knowledge obtained in a situation proves helpful in the obtaining knowledge of related subjects

moving further, it will be called positive vertical transfer. For example, learnt maths in class eight proves helpful in the learning of maths in tenth class by a student. On the contrary, when obtained knowledge and talent related to one subject hinders in obtaining knowledge and talent related to that situation, this type of transfer is called negative vertical transfer, for example- the literature knowledge of class eight's student hinders in obtaining knowledge in next class, this type of learning will be called negative vertical transfer. Means the first step of learning hinders in the learning of second step.

## Notes



**Task** Clear the difference between horizontal and vertical transfer.

(5) **Lateral transfer** – when the efficiency of one organ of body affects the other related talent of the same organ, then, this type of learning will be called lateral transfer. For example- the skill of Hindi writing by the right hand affects the skill of Sanskrit writing.

(6) **Bi-lateral Transfer** – When the acquired efficiency by one organ of the body affects the efficiency of another organ, then this type of transfer will be called Bi-lateral transfer. For example a man learns to write with right hand but according to the need he can also write with left hand, even while he has not practiced to write with left hand. We can see in this situation that the talent of right hand was transferred in left hand.

## 12.4 Conditions of Transfer of Learning

The following conditions prove helpful in the transfer of learning –

(1) **Generalization** – Much as a person is capable in finding the general theory or rule on the basis of his previous experiences, there is transfer of training.

(2) **Understanding** – Identical knowledge is acquired after the understanding of any thing very well. Consequently there is more transfer. So it is better to understand any subject well for the transfer of teaching.

(3) **The degree of mastery on the subject-matter** – More the skill is gained after the deep studying of any subject, more transfer of that subject into others subjects is possible.

(4) **Deliberation** – If a man after keeping his previous experiences tries to understand the new situation or subject by the effortful and proper education methods, there is the transfer of teaching.

(5) **Attitude toward the material of transfer** – A person's positive attitude towards the material of transfer proves helpful in the positive transfer.

(6) **Method of Teaching** – Above teaching methods provide help in the transfer of teaching.

## 12.5 Educational Importance of Transfer of Learning

**For the education** – It affects of the process of learning transfer in education. Following things should be paid attention to for the transfer of learning in education-

(1) **Transfer and syllabus** – The most important use of transfer is for the development of syllabus.

For the discipline in the children, the favorable syllabus should be prepared, means it includes such subjects which are useful and related to the problem of daily life. The nature of syllabus should be practical. It is the opinion of Thomson- "It is beneficial to have more subjects in the syllabus. The more subjects will be, more students will learn the abilities of surviving."

**Notes**

**(2) Transfer and Teaching method**—A teacher should provide the education by the proper method for the positive transfer. They should be given education in such a way that he could make the use of acquired knowledge of one subject, in the learning of other subjects. Child should also be given necessary guidance for the transfer. Children should be told identical element related to subject for the transfer of one subject’s knowledge in to other subject. For this it is necessary to pay attention to the rules of association. For the success of transfer, a teacher should try to make his subject more interesting.

**(3) Generalization**—A teacher should follow such an educational method during the time of teaching, following which the student could himself find out the general theory related to subject. Student should be provided opportunity and should not be interfered in that. After developing the characteristics of generalization, child uses it soon in the new situation. It is the statement of Handrix related to it “The child who has the knowledge that after multiplying six by eight makes forty eight, he can soon tell that 8 chairs in 6 rows are 48.” So whatever a teacher teaches should be taught on the basis of generalization. There is more possibility of transfer with it.

**Self Assessment**

Fill in the blanks:

1. Plato has said, “if a dull minded should be ..... taught, he will get some growth.”
2. Lock’s opinion that man is judicious with the teaching of .....
3. The knowledge of history provides helps in the learning of .....
4. Psychologists in learning of transfer have given importance to Kohler’s ..... theory.

It is evident from the above details, that, in the process of learning, transfer has an important place. A teacher should learn some more other things on top of the above things-

- (1) A teacher should explain the subject clearly.
- (2) According to the mental condition and personality differences in the children , the teacher should chose the subjects and educational methods, and favorable situations should be provided for the transfer.
- (3) During the time of teaching, a teacher should follow the co-relation theory. He should teach new knowledge after connecting with the previous knowledge. He should tell about the similarity of the same factors coming in the teaching of the new subject and the factors of the other subjects during the time of teaching. This method transfers the teaching.
- (4) For the success of transfer, Ruminaton power should be developed and the interest toward the study should be awakened. A child should always be provided the inspiration of getting knowledge.
- (5) Education should always encourage children for the fact that, whatever knowledge has given him, they use it in the common life. After using the required knowledge in the different fields of life, the capability of gaining success in all the sphere of life is developed. In this way they are able to adjust themselves with the situations of the future life.

**12.6 Summary**

- It is the opinion of Educational Psychologist that the knowledge obtained by the study of any subject proves useful in other subjects and situations. Often it is seen that the learning of any one skill and subject helps in the learning of other skill and subject.
- It is the statement of Plato—“ if geometry is taught to a dull minded, necessarily he will get some intelligence. The person who will read geometry, will be more intelligent to understand all the subjects than any other person”

- Learning transfer means to make use of self acquired knowledge in other situation by a student.
- Some important theories of learning are – the theory of mental power and the opinion of formal discipline, the theory of similar elements, the theory of generalization, the theory of general and individual parts, the theory of gestalt psychology.
- None of these theories can be given importance. It will be proper to see these theories in coordination point of view.
- There are six important types of learning- positive, negative, negative transfer, horizontal transfer, vertical transfer, lateral transfer, Bi-lateral transfer.
- In the process of learning, transfer has an important place. A teacher should learn some other following things except the above things.
- For the discipline of the children, favorable syllabus should be prepared, means it includes such subjects which are useful and related to the problem of daily life.
- They should be given education in such a way that they could make the use of acquired knowledge of one subject, in the learning of other subjects. Child should also be given necessary guidance for the transfer.
- During the time of teaching a teacher should follow such teaching method, by which student could discover the general theory related to own subject.

### 12.7 Keywords

1. **Transfer** – to carry over.
2. **Learning Infection** – knowledge obtained from one subject affect the learning of other subject.

### 12.8 Review Questions

1. What do you understand by transfer of learning?
2. Throw light on the theories of transfer of learning.
3. Explain in detail the types of transfer of learning.
4. Describe the importance of transfer of learning in education.

### **Answers: Self-Assessment**

1. Geometry
2. Maths
3. Political
4. Insight

### 12.9 Further Readings



Books

1. Psychology – *Dr. Saryu Prasad, Agra Book Store, Agra.*
2. Psychology – *The study of human behavior- Brij Kumar Mishra*
3. Education Psychology – *S.K. Mangal, PHI Learning Pvt. Ltd., New Delhi.*
4. Development of Learner and Educational Learning Process – *A.K. Verma, Hindi Book Centre, New Delhi.*

## Notes

## Unit-13: Motivation in Learning

**CONTENTS**

Objectives

Introduction

13.1 Nature and Definitions of Motivation

13.2 Origin of Motivation

13.3 Development of Motivation

13.4 Causes of Motivation

13.5 Summary

13.6 Keywords

13.7 Review Questions

13.8 Further Readings

### Objectives

After the study of this unit, the student will be able to—

- Understand the nature of Motivation.
- Understand the origin and development of motivation.
- Know the causes of motivation.

### Introduction

Man is an active creature by his nature. He is always engaged in some work, and continues to do some kind of behavior. He does not do any work or behavior without any purpose. And the purpose of his work is to make the fulfillment of some especial goal. For example a student studies with a great zeal and intensity while other is detached from the study. What is the cause of it? This type of question arises— Why do we take food? Why do we earn money? Why do we take education? It can be found in the answer of these questions that there are some motives for the action and behavior of any person, which motivates him, for doing action and behavior in different situations.

Krech and Krachfield has said clearly— The question of motivation is the question of why. In fact Needs, Driver, Incentive, Motive are the main sources of motivation. Hilgard has written— “the

need gives birth to driver, the driver is the condition of developed intensity, which progresses toward the action and starting behavior. Stimulus is some thing related to external environment, which satisfies the needs and in this way diminish the driver by action." The motivator can be understood in the same words of needs, desires, intensity, natural situation, decisive qualities, habits, interests, stable incentive. In short motivation is the creation of above four facts: need, driver, stimulus and complex organization.

### **13.1 Nature and Definitions of Motivation**

The English word Motivation is originated from the Motum word of Latin language. According to the general and verbal meaning of motivation, move, motor and motion we can call any stimulus a motivation, which helps a person for reacting and behavior. This type of stimulus can be both internal and external. But from the scientific point of view, motivation is an internal power, which internally motivates a person for doing any action. This type of motivation can be called the driving power of physical instrument. The following definitions have been presented for explaining the psychological meaning of the word motivation:

- (1) **Wood worth** – Achievement = Ability + Motivation. Means Achievement is obtained by ability + motivation. The ability of a person is developed by getting motivation. This type of ability is possible by the achievement of motivation.
- (2) **According to Lowell** – "motivation may be defined more formally as a psychological or internal process, initiated by some need, which leads to an activity which will satisfy that need."
- (3) **According to Good** – "Motivation is the process of arousing sustaining and regulation activities."
- (4) **According to Blare, Johns and Simpson** – "Motivation is a process, in which a learner's internal energies or needs are directed towards various goals and objects in his environment."
- (5) **According to P.T Young** – "Motivation is the process of arousing action, sustaining the activities in the progress and regulating the pattern of activity."

After analyzing the above definitions, related to motivation the following things are clarified –

- (1) Motivation is psychophysical or internal process or stage.
- (2) Motivated process is originated due to any need.
- (3) Motivated process leads towards the direction of doing any important activity.
- (4) This process goes on till the attainment of any purpose.

In the psychological context, the meaning of motivation is by the internal stimulus, as a consequence of which we do any action and behavior. Psychologists have not concluded external stimulus under motivation. For example hunger is such an internal stimulus, according to which we can be inspired for having the food, so hunger can be called motivation. A person can be inspired for having the food after seeing the plate of food. Here the plate is an external stimulus, but eating process did not get inspired. A man will not take the food, until he gets internal motivation, so we can say internal stimulus, which motivates a man for doing any activity, is called motivation. Motivator is more important in the motivation. So it is essential to throw light on the meaning and definition of motivator.

#### **Motivator- Meaning and Definition**

The meaning of motivator – In the action and behavior of a human being, inborn, natural and acquired instincts are hidden. These instincts inspire for behavior, so psychologists have called it motive. So we can say that the motivation instinct lies in the root of human behavior, which inspire a man for doing some activities.

**Notes**

The word motive should be understood by the definition given by the psychologists. Motivation is a mental set and motivator is a factor which motivates a man for doing some especial action. So we can say that motivation tells about the situation and motivators are due to its reason.

The definitions of motivator- For explaining the concept of motivator, the psychologists have given many definitions of motivator –

**(1) Shaffer and others** – “A motive may now be defined as a tendency to activity initiated by a drive and concluded by an adjustment.” This definition is evident by an example- In the state of hunger there is a contraction in the layers of stomach, and a man feels intensity on his internal side. And getting ride of this confusing stage he searches for eating material. His searching goes on until after getting the food he quenches his hunger. In this example the state of hunger is motivation. And the cause of state of hunger is called hunger motive. From this point of view the function of motivator tendency are –

- (1) Arousing the activity,
- (2) And continue it,
- (3) And continue to lead it towards the definite dimension until he gets the goal.

According to the above definition hunger drives and inspires for having the food. And hunger drive comes to an end after having the food. And there is difference between the motivator tendency and motivation of food. Motivator is an extended word under which need, motive, driver and incentive all come.

**(2) Gates and others** – “Motives take a variety of forms and are designated by many different terms, such needs, desires, tensions, sets determining tendencies, attitudes, interests, persisting stimuli and soon.”

**(3) Wood worth** – “A motive is a state or set of the individual which disposes him for certain behavior and seeking certain goals.”

**(4) MacDougal** – “Motives are conditions physiological and psychological within the organism that dispose it to an act in certain ways.”

**(5) Gilford** – “A motive is any particular internal factor or – condition that tends to initiate and to sustain activity.”

**(6) J. Drever** – Motive is an effective - conative factor which operates in determining the direction of an individual’s behavior towards an end or goal, consciously apprehended or unconscious.”

**(7) Thomson** – Motive is an effective and conative factor which operates in determining the direction of an individual’s behavior towards an end or goal, consciously apprehended or unconscious.”

**The sides of Motivation**

We can say on the basis of above definitions that the initiation of motivation is by some need and end after the attainment of any goal. Motivation is an extended word. There are the three sides of motivation, which are following –

- (1) Need
- (2) Drive
- (3) Incentive



**Task** Write the sides of motivation with example.

**(1) Need** – There are some fundamental needs for sustaining the life of every creature, And it is necessary to fulfill them. As it is necessary to fulfill the needs of water, air, food, sleeping. If these physical needs are not met, tension and imbalance arouse in the body, as a consequence of which he becomes activated. For example being hungry, activeness is sustained in a man until he gets his food. After getting the food his need is completed. And his tension and his activeness come to an end. Giving the definition of need Boring and Langefield have said-“A need is tension within an organism which tends to organize the field or organism with respect to certain incentives of goals and incite activity directed toward their attainment.”

Therefore, the psychologists have also said need, such as a condition, which is felt in the reduction and absence of any thing. Man is always active to complete this reduction. As for the fulfillment of consumption of eating material he tries to get the food, he searches for water for the fulfillment of water; here the reduction of water and eating material is the needs of water and food.



Notes

The initiation of motivation is from some need. If bodily needs do not fulfill, there is tension or imbalance in the mind of man, and consequently he becomes active.

**(2) Drive** – The stage of tension that arises due to the needs of creature is called drive. Thus need is generated by the drive – As-thirst-drive, by the need of water and hunger-drive originated, by the need of food. The feeling of hunger and thirst is an internal stimulus. This generates tension in the man. A man does action for having food and quenching the thirst. Thus to inspire for doing action is the chief characteristics of drive. Psychologists have given the definitions of drive in this way –

**Deshiyal** – “Drive is original source of energy that activates the human organism.”

**Sheffar and others** – “A drive is a strong, persistent, stimulus that demands an adjusting response.”

**(3) Incentive** – Incentive is a thing of external environment, which satisfies the drives after fulfilling the need. For example – hunger is a drive, which is satisfied by the food. Therefore food is an incentive for ‘hunger- drive’. According to Hillgard-“In general, an appropriate incentive is one that can reduce the intensity of a drive.”

The internal stage of a man is indicated by the need and drive, while incentive is presented in the external environment. In the words of **Boring and Lang** field, “an incentive may be defined as an object, a situation or an activity which excites, maintains and directs behavior.”

### Relation among Need, Drive and Incentive

There is a close relationship in these parts of motivation. Hillgard has cleared the need drive incentive formula. How does this formula work, has been clarified very well after the understanding of the meaning of these thrice. Hillgard has written about the close relationship of these three. “Need gives rise to drive state which is a drive of heightened tension leading to activity and preparatory behavior and the incentive in the external environment that satisfies the need and thus reduce the drive through consummators activity.”

## 13.2 Origin of Motivation

The development of man depends on the activity of maturation, exercise and learning. These elements are related to the origin of its motive. A man performs some action without any learning due to maturation. Thus the origins of some motives are natural. Other motives are originated as the consequences of experiences and efforts. These are learnt and acquired motivation. For example the feeling of hunger for

Notes

**Notes**

an inborn infant is such a motive, which is natural and without learning. Hunger is an internal intensity. In fact this intensity generates due to the reduction, consequences motivation arises. Motivation arises due to internal reasons." The inspiration of an adult man in some parts is basically instinctive and in some parts it is learnt or acquired.



*Did u know?*

The origin of motivation is for the fulfillment of the physical need. For example in the beginning there is a motive for the fulfillment of need of hunger and thirst. Then a man needs money for the getting the pleasure. And the desire of getting pleasure inspires him for collecting the money.

A man learns to behave according to the culture, rules and traditions of the society, in which environment he lives.

The relation of the origin of this type of motivation. (1) Maturation (2) Needs and internal intensity (3) and with environment.

### **13.3 Development of Motivation**

Motives develops according to the development of needs, age and experiences. In the beginning this development is physiological, and soon it is psychological. A man has some natural needs at the time of birth. In the beginning due to the need of hunger, thirst and toilet he gets the motive of the cause of action and behavior. And he weeps and cries, and soon and later he learns to control over the environment with the growth of age. Consequently changes come in his behavior towards his inspiration. In the childhood due to the main instinct and emotions a child gets enjoy in playing and meeting with others. He gets the motive of doing especial kind of behavior for gaining this pleasure. In the same way in the adolescent according to the development of age and qualities, he gets the motivator power for the fulfillment of physical, mental and social needs and the development of motives go on in sequence.

### **13.4 Causes of Motivation**

There are two causes of motivation –

- (1) Natural cause
- (2) Acquired cause

**(1) Natural causes are following –**

- (a) The activities related to the surviving desire-as hunger and thirst etc.
- (b) The sense of self defense.
- (c) The feeling of getting comfort and pleasure.
- (d) The sense of resolving problem.
- (e) Love feeling (sexual).
- (f) Emotion, main instincts and thought.
- (g) Will power
- (h) Unconscious mind.

**(2) Acquired causes are following –**

- (a) Social ideal, situation, relation and environment.

- (b) Habit, etiquettes and interest.
- (c) Stable emotion, complex feeling.
- (d) Cultural and social achievement as- thought, feeling, education.

### Self Assessment

Choose the correct option:

1. "Motive is a process of initiating, sustaining and regulating any activity." Who has given this definition of motivation –  
 (a) Woodworth      (b) Lowell      (c) Good
2. Motivation process is such a tendency, which is finished by – who has given this definition of motivation –  
 (a) Gates and others   (b) Shafer and others   (c) Woodworth
3. "Motivation is an effective creative factor, whose functions is a work of making certain the condition of behavior and carrying towards the purpose or consciously or unconsciously determined goal." Who has given this definition of motivation –  
 (a) Drever      (b) Thomson      (c) Gillford

### The Function of Motive

According to the concept of Gates – There are the three types of motive on the basis of inspired behavior of man –

**(1) To make behavior strong** – motivation provides strength to a man for doing some work, which helps him in the generation of Activeness. For example hunger and thirst generates muscles and glands responses inside of a person. The excretion in muscles and glands provides such a physical strength to a person that he becomes active. Besides it motives provide personal stability for the longer behavior. Hebb has found out this conclusion with his studies that motivated behavior is skillful and appropriate. In the absence of appropriate behavior reduction comes in the strength of doing work.

**(2) Selection of the behavior** – Motives provide capability of doing selective behavior to a person. Motivated behavior moves in a proper way. A man selects that useful behavior among much possible behavior. This helps him in the attainment of goal and satisfies his needs. Motives prepare a person for reacting for peculiar stimulus. Motives tell how a man should behave in a different situation.

**(3) Movement of the behavior** – Motives does the work of moving the behavior. They move the behavior in this way that the direction of behavior is toward the satisfaction. Although, it is difficult to move the inspired behavior due to the proportion of aimed goal and the obstacle creativity of situation. But the swiftness of motives sustains the proportion of the behavior of man and provides guidance in the direction of getting success in the struggle of attainment of goal. In this condition there is the requirement of this things that the behavior of man is in the side of determining purpose and he will use his whole power for it.

### 13.5 Summary

- Man is an active creature by his nature. He is always engaged in some work, and continues to do some kind of behavior.
- There are some motives for the movement of action and behavior of any person, which motivates him, for doing action and behavior indifferent situations.
- We can call any stimulus, a motivation, which helps a person for reacting and behavior. Which internally motivates a person for doing any action.

**Notes**

- We can say that the motivation instinct lies in the root of human behavior, which inspired a man for doing some activities. It can thus be explained by example—In the stage of hunger there is a contraction in the layers of stomach, and a man feels intensity in his internal side. And getting ride of this confusing stage he searches for eating material. His searching goes on until after getting the food he quenches his hunger. In this example the stage of hunger is motivation. And the cause of stage of hunger is called hunger motive.
- The development of man depends on the activity of maturation, exercise and learning. These elements are related to the origin of its motive. A man performs some action without any learning due to maturation. Thus the origins of some motives are naturally. Other motives are originated as the consequences of experiences and efforts. These are learnt and acquired motivation. For example the feeling of hunger for an inborn infant is such a motive, which is natural and without learning. Hunger is an internal intensity. In fact this intensity generates due to the reduction, consequences motivation arises. Motivation arises due to internal reasons."The inspiration of an adult man in some parts is basically instinctive and in some parts it is learnt or acquired.
- Motives develops according to the development of needs age and experiences. In the beginning this development is physiological, and soon it psychological.
- In the childhood due to the main instinct and emotions a child gets enjoy in playing and meeting with others. He gets the motive of doing especial kind of behavior for gaining this pleasure. In the same way, in the adolescence, according to the development of age and qualities, he gets the motivator power for the fulfillment of physical, mental and social needs and the development of motives go on in sequence.

### **13.6 Keywords**

1. **Motives** – Purpose, Cause
2. **Stimulus** – To provoke, Awake.

### **13.7 Review Questions**

1. What do you understand by motives?
2. Throw light on the sides of Motives.
3. Explain in detail the origin and development of motives.
4. What are the causes of motives? Explain the function of motives.

### **Answers: Self-Assessment**

1. (c)
2. (b)
3. (a)

### **13.8 Further Readings**



**Books**

1. Development of Learner and Educational Learning Process – A.K. Verma, Hindi Book Centre, New Delhi.
2. Psychology – Dr. Saryu Prasad, Agra Book Store, Agra.
3. Education Psychology – S.K. Mangal, PHI Learning Pvt. Ltd., New Delhi.
4. Psychology-the study of human behavior – Brij Kumar Mishra, PHI Learning Pvt. Ltd., New Delhi.

## Unit-14: Nature and Theories of Intelligence

### CONTENTS

Objectives

Introduction

- 14.1 Nature and Definition of Intelligence
- 14.2 Characteristics of Intelligence
- 14.3 Difference between Intelligence and knowledge
- 14.4 Kinds of Intelligence
- 14.5 Summary
- 14.6 Keywords
- 14.7 Review Questions
- 14.8 Further Readings

### Objectives

After the study of this unit, the student will be able to –

- Understand the nature of intelligence.
- Understand the characteristics of intelligence.
- Explain the difference between intelligence and knowledge.
- Understand the types of intelligence.

### Introduction

Intelligence is a common word in daily life, which is used in many meanings. During the time of studying personality differences in detail, we will see that two persons are not similar, some are more intelligent and some are dull minded, some are slow and some resolve the problems within few minutes. There are many reasons for personality differences, among which Intelligence is important. Mental ability of a child is affected by his intelligence. This is a universal truth that, an intelligent man gets success in all the spheres of life, on the other hand a proper environment is also needed for his development. Intelligence is not one quality in itself but a collection of many qualities. A man cannot be called intelligent or dull minded, until the intellectual characteristics in his behavior are tested. Intellect cannot be seen directly, so we can say that intellect is an imagined power. A man mostly uses intellect in understanding the

**Notes** different problems and in learning them. It is necessary to know his intellectual level and mental capability for mental development. From this point of view this question should be pondered “what is intellect?”

### **14.1 Nature and Definition of Intelligence**

“What is intellect?” Psychologists have different opinions in regard of this question. Different Psychologists have described the nature of intelligent according to their opinion. So we can understand the nature of intelligence after studying the definitions given by them. The definitions given by psychologists are following –

1. **According to W. Stern** – “Intelligence is a general capacity of an individual consciously to adjust his thinking to new situation.”
2. **According to C. Burt** – “Intelligence is the innate capacity to adapt relatively to new situations.”



*Notes* Intellect can not be seen directly, it's an imagined power.

3. **According to A. Binet** – “To judge well, to comprehend well, to reason well, these are the essential activities of intelligence.”
4. **According to F. Galton** – “Intelligence is the power of recognition and learning.”
5. **According to L. Terman** – “Intelligence is the capacity to carry on abstract thinking.”
6. **According to Thorndike** – “Intelligence is the power of good response from the point of view of truth or fact.”
7. **According to Buckingham** – “Intelligence is the ability to learn.”
8. **According to W. C. Dougall** – “Intelligence is the capacity to improve upon innate tendency in the light of previous experience.”
9. **According to Wells** – “Intelligence is the ability of adjusting to new situations.”
10. **Spearman** – “Intelligence is the power of attention.”
11. **Stout** – “Intelligence is the general ability of the individual.”
12. **Woodrow** – “Intelligence is an acquiring capacity.”
13. **Ebbinghans** – “Intelligence is the power of combining parts.”
14. **Wechsler** – “Intelligence is the aggregate or global capacity of the individual to act purposefully, to think rationally and to deal effectively with his environment.”
15. **Garret** – “The ability demanded in the solution of problems which require the comprehension and use of symbols, i.e words, numbers, diagrams, equations, formulas.”
16. **Woodworth** – “Intelligence is a way of acting.”

### **14.2 Characteristics of Intelligence**

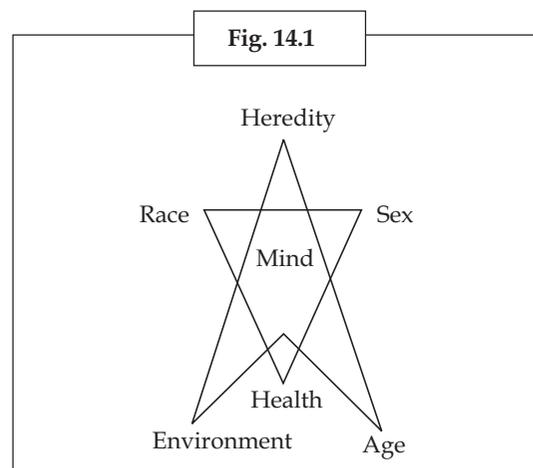
On the basis of the definitions given by psychologists, intelligence has following characteristics –

1. Intelligence is an innate power. It is gained from heredity.
2. Intelligence is the power, by which, a man organizes his behavior according to the situation after removing its complication.

3. Intelligence is the capacity of learning.
4. Intelligent is the ability of taking advantage from previous experiences.
5. Intelligence is the ability of abstract thinking, means with the help of intelligence we can think of something which is not evident.
6. Intelligence is the set of different abilities.
7. Intelligence is the essence of all special abilities.
8. Knowledge obtained by intelligence can be used in new situations.
9. There is difference between intelligence and knowledge.
10. Due to the sexual differences, difference is not seen in intelligence.
11. Intelligence is the power of introspection. Intelligence itself criticizes the actions and thoughts done by a man.
12. Intelligence tries to understand any problem, and then inspires the mind to take decision.

Notes

**Factors influencing the intelligence** – There are many factors influencing the intelligence –



**1. Heredity** – Many psychologists did various experiments in this context and found out the conclusion that heredity effects intelligence. As Freeman considered that intelligence is closely related to heredity. **Gesell and Galton** found out the conclusion that intelligence is more effected by heredity not by environment. **Pearson** proved this on the basis of his study that the children of intelligent parents are also intelligent to a large extent. Besides it, Psychologists like Schvesinger, Dason, Newman also considered that intelligence is more effected by heredity. So it is an important factor.

**Environment** – Many psychologists also did many experiments in the relation of environment. They believe that intelligence is more effected by environment than heredity. Kodak studied such eighty mothers who had brought up their children in good environment to know the effect of environment on intelligence. **Wellman Leahy** and **Skeel** also proved on the basis of his experiment, if a child is provided good environment, big changes can be brought in his intelligence. The psychologist of this belief also accept that intelligence is more affected by environment.

**Age** – The relationship between intelligence and age is also accepted as an important factor. Many experiments and study have been done in this context. As by- Terman, Miles & Miles, Johns, Thorndike, Spearman etc. On the basis of all these experiments it has been concluded that, generally intelligence grows from the age of 16 to 20 years, but in India it is considered that the development of intelligence happens till the age of 25.

**Race** – Psychologists also accepted the effect of race on intelligence in their study and reached on the conclusion that race difference has no effect on intelligence. There are three groups of people are found

**Notes**

in all the races - intelligent, common and dull minded. Their percentage can be more or less, however some psychologists considered that intelligence is also affected by the race.

**Sex** – Intelligence is affected by sex, or not, many experiments also have been done in this connection. Psychologist Witty considered that there is no especial difference between sex difference and intelligence, but if girls are not provided proper environment, their ruminations side go backward, and the girls, who do not get liberal environment, are less intelligent than the boys. **MacMeeken** (1939) evaluated the intelligence of 875 children in his study, who were from Scotland. The evaluation of the intelligence of these children was done by Stanford Binet Test. After the study it was found that boys' IQ was on average was 100.5 and girls' IQ average was 99.7. Both the mean of I.Q and S.D was 15.9 and 15.2 respectively. Some psychologists' concept was that girls I.Q were more than that of boys from six to fourteen. After this at the age of sixteen both, girls' and boys' IQ is equal and after this age boys' IQ is more.

**Health** – As it is said that 'Healthy mind grows in healthy body'. It has been felt that from daily life's experiences that better is the health, better is the development of the intelligence in the child. So health also affects the intelligence of a person.



*Did u know?* It has been concluded on the basis of many psychological experiments that the development of intelligence happens between the age of 16 to 20, however it is believed that it grows till the age of 25 in India.

### 14.3 Difference between Intelligence and Knowledge

According to the psychologists there are following differences between intelligence and knowledge –

1. Intelligence is an innate power obtained by heredity, while knowledge is obtained power. Knowledge is attained in environment.
2. Intelligence is stable, knowledge is increased by gaining. Intelligence is not more or less, but knowledge can increase.
3. More intelligence can develop more knowledge, but more knowledge cannot develop more intelligence.
4. A man can be a scholar, but it is not necessary that he will be intelligent. In this way it is not necessary that whoever is intelligent, will also be a scholar.
5. To know many things is knowledge, but to use them is intelligence.
6. Psychologist Ross said that "Intelligence is the goal and knowledge is only a way to reach it."
7. Psychologist Ballard said that "Intelligence is a mental ability which is evaluated by the means like knowledge, interest and habit."
8. "In the worldly life intelligence the usable knowledge and thinking is intelligence." These thoughts have been expressed by Sir Adams.
9. If a man's intelligence is destroyed, his knowledge is finished.
10. Intelligent men can face difficulties easily, while scholars are unable in doing so.



*Notes* Explain the meaning of obtained and innate in the context of intelligence and knowledge.

## 14.4 Kinds of Intelligence

Psychologist Thorndike has considered intelligence, as the collection of many abilities. He has given the following three types on the basis of it –

1. Abstract Intelligence
  2. Social Intelligence
  3. Motor or Mechanical Intelligence
- 1. Abstract Intelligence** – Minor feelings are known by this intelligence. Poets, Author, Painter etc express their feeling by this intelligence. Words, digits and symbols are used in this type of learning. This is a process of learning the academics. And the processes of solving of those problem in which words and symbols are used. So it is the giving of abstract and oral intelligence to express the opinion by the medium of words and symbols. It is necessary to develop Abstracts intelligence in such subjects as- reading, Mathematics, Geography, History in school. New planning, new invention, new rumination is possible by this intelligence.

Abstract intelligence can be tested by three types –

- a. Level of ambition** – by the evaluation of the level of the ambition of a man, that man's abstract intelligence is known. Highly ambitious man will have high intelligence.
- b. Doing different types of job** – The man who are involved in different type of working, their capacity of working can be known under abstract intelligence.
- c. Speed of doing work** – the man who does abstract actions with high speed. His abstract intelligence will be less or more according to that.

## Self Assessment

Put right or wrong sign in front of given statements:

1. Psychologist 'Galton has said about the intelligence – "Intelligence is the power of learning and recognition."
2. Intelligence can be gain by effort.
3. In India intelligence is developed till forty years.
4. Intelligence is an innate and obtained power.
- 2. Social Intelligence** – This intelligence is related to the social conditioning, which helps a man in adapting according to the society. Due to the social intelligence, a man affects another man with his behavior. This type of man is happy, practical and takes interest in social activities. Due to the social intelligence a man leads a successful life in society. These types of men are occupational, politician and social worker.
- 3. Mechanical Intelligence** – Mechanical intelligence means the power or ability, by which, a man can adjust himself with the situation related to mechanical or material things. The children, who have this intelligence, are seen in the starting period. They try to repair by opening their watch, toy and bicycle. Such children, after growing up, become expert mechanic, engineer. Mechanically intelligent children are expert in games and physical activities.

## 14.5 Summary

- Intelligence is a common word in daily life, which is used in many meanings. During the time of studying personality differences in detail, we will see that two persons are not similar, some are

**Notes**

more intelligent and some are dull minded, some are slow and some resolve the problems within few minutes. There are many reasons for personality differences, among which Intelligence is important. Mental ability of a child is affected by his intelligence. This is a universal truth that, an intelligent man gets success in all the spheres of life, on the other hand a proper environment is also needed for his development. Intelligence is not one quality in itself but a collection of many qualities.

- Various Psychologists have described the nature of intelligence on the basis of their thinking.
- Intelligence has some characteristics. Intelligence is the capacity of learning. Intelligent is the ability of taking advantage from previous experiences. Intelligence is the ability of abstract thinking, means with the help of intelligence we can think of something which is not evident.
- There are many factors influencing the intelligence: heredity, environment, race, age, sex and health.
- Psychologist Thorndike has considered intelligence, as the collection of many abilities. He has given the following three types on the basis of it, i.e. Abstract intelligence, Social Intelligence and Motor or Mechanical Intelligence.
  1. Abstract Intelligence
  2. Social Intelligence
  3. Motor or Mechanical Intelligence

**14.6 Keywords**

1. **Obtained power** – collected power

**14.7 Review Questions**

1. Explain the nature of intelligence.
2. Write the characteristics of intelligence.
3. Which are the factors influencing the intelligence? Explain in detail.
4. Explain the difference between intelligence and knowledge.

**Answers: Self-Assessment**

1. (✓)
2. (×)
3. (×)
4. (✓)

**14.8 Further Readings**



**Books**

1. Psychology – *Dr. Saryu Prasad, Agra Book Store, Agra.*
2. Psychology – *The study of human behavior – Brij Kumar Mishra, P.H.I Learning Pvt. Ltd., New delhi.*
3. Information on the importance of education for children – *Seema Chopra, Hindi Book Centre, New Delhi.*
4. Development of Learner and Educational Learning Process – *A.K. Verma, Hindi Book Centre, New Delhi.*

## Unit-15: Intelligence Tests

### CONTENTS

Objectives

Introduction

- 15.1 History of Intelligence Tests
- 15.2 Kinds of Intelligence Tests
- 15.3 Intelligence Testing in India
- 15.4 Method of Measuring Intelligence
- 15.5 Intelligence Quotient
- 15.6 Utility of Intelligence Tests
- 15.7 Summary
- 15.8 Keywords
- 15.9 Review Questions
- 15.10 Further Readings

### Objectives

After the study of this unit, the student will be able to –

- Understand the history of intelligence tests.
- Know the kinds of intelligence tests.
- Know the intelligence tests in India.
- Understand the intelligence measuring method, intelligence quotient and the utility of intelligence tests.

### Introduction

As two men look different in their color, physique, height, and weight, so they are different in mental abilities. It is important in the field of education to study the differences in mental abilities. Keeping in mind the differences of the mental abilities of students, teachers have to arrange the educational work and divide the classes in different groups. The differences between the mental abilities and capabilities are decided by intelligence.

**Notes**

In education it is necessary to study the personality differences. Many methods are used for obtaining the knowledge of personality differences. Psychologists have made different tests for the measurement of personality differences. Intelligence tests have been prepared for the measurement of intelligence. Intelligence tests help in the solution of many problems related to education, so it is necessary to obtain knowledge about them.

### **15.1 History of Intelligence Tests**

It is evident after describing the meaning, nature, kinds and theories of intelligence that psychologists define the intelligence as the ability of learning, ability of rumination and the ability of adjustment.

The credibility of intelligence and its connection goes to personality differences. In 1796 in Greenwich astrological laboratory, a man named Kinnerbrooke was appointed as an assistant supervisor. He studied the movement of stars, planets with the help of telescope and calculated the time. His speed was slow, so he was fired from the job. After some time astrologers pondered on this event and found out that every man has different ability and capability. So they developed the thought of personality equation.

In the modern times, scientific studies related to intelligence tests were started in Europe. The famous German Psychologist, Wundt established first laboratory of psychology in 1879. In this laboratory intelligence test was done on the scientific basis. Here the measurement of intelligence was done by the instrument. Being encouraged by the work of **Wundt**, the psychologists of other countries also started doing work related to intelligence tests. In this relation **Alfred Binet** of France, **Thorndike** and **Terman** of America have done works that worth mentioning. Other psychologists as **Galton**, **Cattell** and **Pearson** have also invented many intelligence tests, but these tests measured common mental activities, so these cannot be called intelligence tests. In this field the first and prominent was **Alfred Binet**. In 1905 Binet prepared exercise for the intelligence test of different ages' children with the help of psychologist Simon, which was called '**Binet-Simon Scale**'. Binet Simon Tests were considered in different countries. Then after 1908 Binet Simon Scale was improved in America and Europe. Terman in America corrected the name of Binet Simon Scale between 1913 and 1916 and kept its name **Stanford Binet Scale**. In 1937 **Terman**, in India, made some improvement in it with the help of **Merril** and kept its name **Terman-Merril Scale**. These tests are used for the measurement of intelligence for the children in America and India. Even in Indian psychologists' laboratory, Allahabad corrected Binet Simon tests for the Indian children. In India **Dr. Sohanlal**, **Dr. Jalota**, **P. Lajjashanker Jha** and **Dr. Bhatia** etc have prepared different tests.

### **15.2 Kinds of Intelligence Tests**

Different psychologists have prepared different tests for the measurement of intelligence. It is evident from the study of intelligence tests' History that many intelligence tests had been prepared even before **Binet** in which **Cattell's** intelligence test was also present, but Binet, with the help of Simon in 1905 prepared an intelligence test, which has a scientific basis and which was used in different countries as a first famous intelligence test. Although after improving many things it has been given a new look yet many intelligence tests have been prepared in comparison of it. Today many intelligence tests are present, for the measurement of intelligence. If we put light on the kinds of intelligence tests, they can be divided between two groups –

- (a) Personal or community intelligence test
- (b) Verbal or non-verbal intelligence test

Intelligence test can be divided into four parts by the combination of above two groups –

1. Personal translation intelligence test

2. Personal non-verbal intelligence test
3. Community verbal intelligence test
4. Community non-verbal intelligence test

Notes

It is necessary to understand the differences and the nature of both groups before describing the different kinds of intelligence tests –

**(a) Personal or community intelligence test** – Personal intelligence test includes the testing of one man at a time, on the contrary, when many people are tested together at one time, it is called community intelligence test. Personal and community intelligence tests have some differences which are following-

**Difference between personal and community intelligence tests**

Following differences are found in the personal and community intelligence test

Personal Test	Community Test
1. This test takes much time.	1. This test is often completed within 45 to 50 minutes.
2. This test can only be taken by a trained man.	2. This test can be taken by a common man.
3. This is appropriate for the young children.	3. It is appropriate for the elders and adolescence.
4. This test has difficult questions.	4. It has easy questions.
5. There is difficulty in the making of this test's questions.	5. Questions are prepared easily in it.
6. This test is expensive.	6. This test is not expensive.
7. Child is often confused in this test.	7. In the community test, they support happily.
8. There is close intimacy established in this test between the child and invigilator.	8. There is lack of this thing in community test.
9. The results of this test are more valid and reliable.	9. The conclusions of community test are less valid and reliable.
10. In this test, community intelligence cannot be known.	10. Community can be guessed in the community test.

We can say after the above description that personality test is better in comparison of community test. Personality test needs more money, time and trained man, so community tests are used mostly. But as far as the question of validity and reliability, personality tests are appropriate.

**(b) Verbal or Non-Verbal Intelligence Test** – Language is used in the verbal intelligence test. Many questions are collected together in a small book in this test. In the verbal test words and digits are mostly used. In this test it is necessary for a man to have knowledge of language and digits. In non-verbal intelligence test language is not used. Some indications are indicated for doing some work in this test, so it is also called '**Performance Test**'. Performance intelligence tests are used for the people who do not have the knowledge of language or illiterate. Mostly non-verbal or performance intelligence tests are in the form of personality tests.



*Did u know?* In non-verbal intelligence, test language is not used, indications are provided for doing some works. So it is also called performance test.

**Notes**

**Difference between verbal or non-verbal intelligence test**

In verbal or non-verbal intelligence test, following differences are found-

Verbal Test	Non-Verbal Test
1. In verbal test, it is necessary for a man to have knowledge of language and digit.	1. In non-verbal less test it is not necessary to have knowledge of the language.
2. In verbal intelligence test the marking of responses is done after reading the instructions given in language and digits.	2. In the non-verbal intelligence test examiner gives oral instructions. The candidate verbal instructions and functions. Instructions can also be written, but the response does not use words or numerals.
3. For the marking of responses in the verbal test, putting tick on the words/sentences, filling in the blanks, matching the correct responses are used as methods.	3. In the non-verbal test, to recognizing the picture completing the organs, making the figure, joining the parts according to the picture etc. methods are used.
4. In the verbal intelligence test, time limitation is not so important.	4. In the non-verbal test for the measurement of Intelligence, limitation of time is given importance.
5. The effect of the development of language affects the result of this test.	5. The effect of level of the knowledge of language does not fall on the conclusion of non-verbal intelligence test.
6. Mostly, verbal intelligence tests are taken in groups.	6. Non-verbal intelligence tests are often taken individually.

Now it will be appropriate to briefly describe the four groups of intelligence tests that emerge from these two broad categories –

**1. Personal verbal intelligence test** – One man is tested at a time in the personal verbal intelligence test. It is necessary for a man to know the language which is used in the test. Specific personality verbal intelligence test are following –

**(a) Binet-Simon Intelligence Scale** – Binet developed an intelligence test with the support of his companion **Simon** in the effort of recognizing weak students, which was published in 1905. Binet test is considered first among the successful intelligence tests. In 1908 and 1911, both tried to make it complete after doing corrections in it. This test is known with the name of Binet-Simon Scale test.

In **Binet-Simon Scale** test Intelligence is done on the basis of mental age. Some questions are given to know the mental age each year. The child who responds correctly to the entire questionnaire for the determining age, his mental age is calculated, for example, if five years child gives correct answers of the questions determined for four years’ age, his mental age is considered to be four years, but if he answers correctly to the questions determined for the seven years, his mental age will be considered seven years. In the comparison of real age, if the mental age is more, the child will be considered more intelligent. This type of intelligence measurement is expressed as intelligence quotient. To know the intelligence quotient methods are given. Binet- Simon intelligence test was decided for 3 to 15 years old girls/boys, four questions were determined for 4 years’ child and no questions were determined for 11 to 13 years age. For three years’ age, following questions were determined –

- (i) Tell your name.
- (ii) Point your mouth, nose and ear with your hand.

- (iii) After seeing a picture tell some important things.
- (iv) Repeat easy sentence of six words.
- (v) Repeat two digits after hearing once. As 2-3, 3-7, 6-8 etc.

It was found in the final studies that Binet-Simon Scale had many faults. The main fault was if any child could not answer the questions determined for his age, his mental was considered less than his real age.

**(b) Stanford Binet Scale**—In spite of having many faults in Stanford Binet-Scale, it became world famous and got success in getting the attention of popular psychologists. To make Binet-Simon intelligence Scale free of faults, **Cyril Burt** of England and **Lewin M. Terman** of America, who were professors of psychology in Stanford University, did important work in 1916. Thus improved intelligence test is known by the name of '**Stanford Binet-Scale**'. While doing correction Terman made it fault-less with the help of his friend **Maud A. Merrill** in 1937 and again in 1960. 90 questions were put in place of 54 exercises of Binet in this corrected intelligence test, in which, some questions of Binet were also included. The intelligence of boys and girls of 2 to 14 years of age is measured by this scale. In this test two months were decided for the correct answer of each question for the age till 13, four months for the age till 14, and five months were decided for normal adult. On the basis of the answers of the questions of this exercise, mental age is known. And decision is given about the measurement of intelligence in the ratio to his real age. For example, in the exercise of Stanford Binet for the age of three years the list of determining questions is followings—

- (i) Telling the name of his family.
- (ii) To say about itself whether boy or girl (sex knowledge).
- (iii) Repeat the sentence of 6 to 7 words.
- (iv) Telling about his mouth, nose, ears etc with his finger.
- (v) Seeing the knife, Scissors and keys etc, to tell their name.
- (vi) Seeing any picture, telling its important things.

Through the above mentioned questionnaire Binet - Simon and Stanford - Binet Scale IQ differences can be seen.

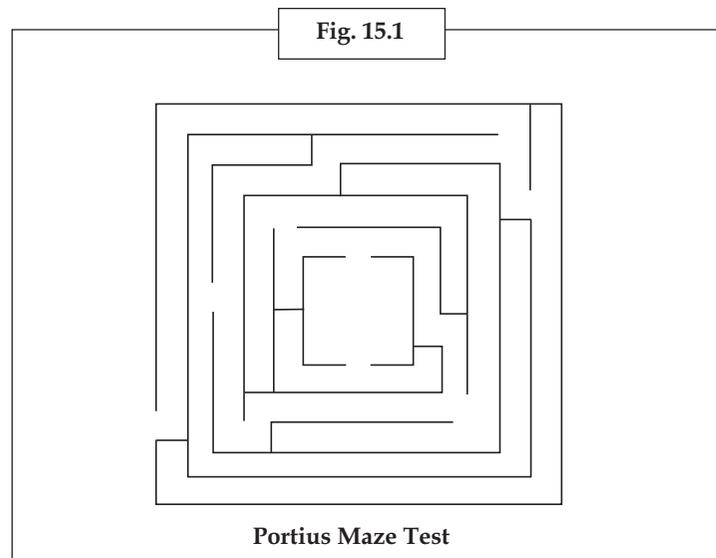
**2. Personality Non-Verbal Intelligence Test**—Personality nonverbal intelligence tests are for those who do not have language related knowledge. Pictures, things and figures are used in place of language. This type of intelligence is also called performance intelligence, because answers are given in it in a performing way. Important nonverbal intelligence tests are following-

**(a) Picture Drawing**—This test is appropriate for the child from 4 to 10 years. Paper and pencil is given to the child, he is asked to draw the picture of a cow. In this test, marks are given on the basis of the completeness of the picture.

**(b) Picture Completing Test**—In this test in front of the child picture is given cutting in square in shape, and said to them, after collecting make a complete picture.

**(c) Maze Test**—In this test, child is given such a picture which has many ways to reach to a destination. The children, who reach there without any difficulty, are considered intelligent.

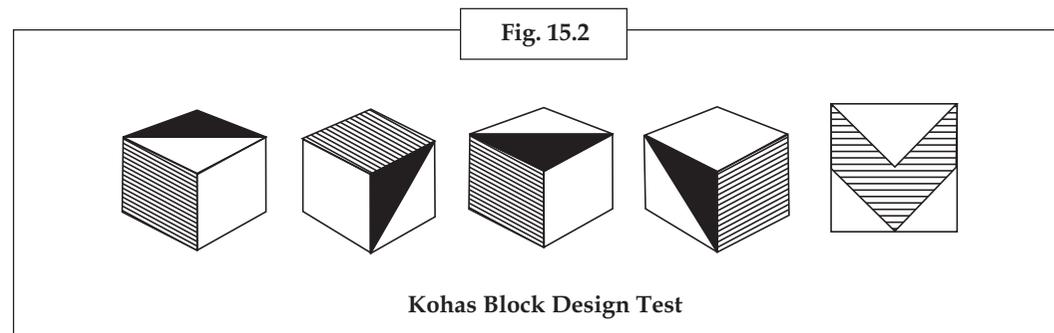
Notes



**(d) Form Board Test**—In it, there is a board of wood in which, the holes of different shapes are made, as circular, semi-circular, triangular and quadrangular etc. The pieces that have been cut out have to be fixed in proper places. The child, who puts the proper pieces in proper places within proper time, is considered intelligent.

**(e) Performance Group-Test made by Dr. Alexander**—Alexander has invented a Battery after assembling up three test for the measurement of intelligence. This battery has following three tests—

**I. Kohas Block Design Test**—In this test, there are sixteen colorful cubes of one inch and ten designs. These designs are prepared upon the piece of card-board with the same color. Child has to jumble up all the cubes in such a way that design is made. Child has to jumble up all the cubes in many ways for different designs.



**II. Cube Construction Test**—This test has three parts—

- (i) In the first part**, there is a big model Block of  $3'' \times 1'' \times 1''$ . Its four surfaces are of red colors and upper and lower surface are simple. Apart from this, there are 9 cubes made of 1inch. Its surfaces are colorful. Arranging the small boxes the shape of the model block is obtained.
- (ii) In the second part** of the model block, only the lower surface is not colorful. There are 9 cubes of 1 inch cube in it, whose surfaces are colorful. It is asked to them to prepare the shape of model block by jumbling them up.

(iii) **In the third part** there is a colorless cube of two inches and cubes of 8 cubes of 1 inch, out of which three surfaces are colorful. Assembling up, all these small cubes have to be put in a shape.

**III. Pas Along-Test**—In this test, there are 8 square or rectangular pieces of red or yellow color. These have to be moved without lifting that the required design is obtained. There are eight designs in this test.

(f) **Object Assembling Test**—Wacksler test is famous among this kind of tests. A human figure is divided in to many in it and child has to prepare a complete human figure after assembling the different parts.

(g) **Bhatia Battery**—The founder of Bhatia battery is Chandra Mohan Bhatia. It is also made for the measurement of intelligence in Indian situation. In this Battery, there is a assembling of five tests, which are following-

- (i) Kohas Block design test
- (ii) Alexander pass along test
- (iii) Pattern drawing test
- (iv) Immediate memory test
- (v) Picture creativity test



Notes

Intelligence test prepared by Dr. Bhatia is very good for the measurement of intelligence in Indian situation.

In the above test, there is limitation of time. Only 45 minutes are given for the responses. Students can answer the questions as early they want. On the basis of it, the speed of person is also tested along with the intelligence. In the tests where time is limited, they are called **time limited test**.

Some tests don't have time limitation. Student can take long time for responding the questions. In this test, it is also seen how accurate work a student can do along with the intelligence.

**3. Community Verbal Intelligence Test**—language is more used in it. In this test many questions that are collected in a small book. In the verbal test words and digits are used mostly. Children's verbal ability is measured by these tests.

The examples of the questions of Verbal intelligence test's are following—

1. In the following words which words are different from other words, underline them—  
Chair, Table, Cupboard, Bed, Shirt.
2. Which is not matched with the rest four among the five words?  
Chine, Japan, Mumbai, India, France.
3. The opposite of night is -pupil, king, day, evening.
4. 1, 4, 12, 16, 20—Write the successive terms of this sequence.
5. The meaning of mountain is—Field, Coast, Hill, Stone.
6. Vimal runs faster than Kamal. Hari runs slower than Kamal. Who runs fastest? Kamal, Vimal, Hari?

Group verbal intelligence test was developed during the time of First World War, because armies were to be selected within the short span of time. The main tests of this group are following-

(a) **Army Alpha Test**—This is for the people who know English. This test was developed in America for selecting officers, supporting staff and soldiers in large number during the time of World War I. It seems that the subject material of this test has been taken from the **Stanford-Binet Test**.

**Notes**

**(b) Army General Classification** – Army general classification had been prepared for the classification of army for the different divisions during World War II in America. In this test, there are three kinds of problems, As-Vocabulary, Maths and the problems related to the counting. This test was used for conducting the intelligence test for about of 12 lacs applicants.

In the field of collective intelligence test, notable efforts have been done in India. In which, Dr Mohanlal's B.P.T 12, B.P.T 13, B.P.T 14 are for the age of 12, 13,14. Dr. Jalota's and Dr. Joshi's tests are considered important. Besides it many intelligence tests have been prepared by Psychologists' Laboratory, Uttar Pradesh which are for the classes of eight, ninth and tenth standard.

**4. Group Nonverbal Intelligence Test** – Language is not used in it. In this test the picture of any animal is made and mistakes are to be found in the given picture. **Terman, Thomson, Hangto, Balard and Cattell** etc. psychologists gave essential contribution in the construction of intelligence test. Ballard's saying in this relation – "To find out fools and not to plough donkey with bull and to place capable person on the right position is possible with this plan." This type of test is applied for many men together without using language. This group's noted tests are following –

**(a) Army Beta Test** – Army beta test was also developed during the time of First World War in America for the fulfillment of purpose like Army Alpha test. The selection for the various positions for different divisions in the army was to be done from the people who were illiterate or had no knowledge of English language. Hence this method was adopted to find out the people with relative intelligence among the people with no knowledge of English language. Intelligence is measured in this method by counting of the articles, telling the relation between two articles with respect to the printed figure, and marking the elements of the figure which do not correspond to these articles at all etc. problem resolving.

**(b) Chicago Non-verbal Test** – Chicago non-verbal test is used for the age from 6 years boys or girls till the adulthood. It has proved more useful for the intelligence test of the age of 13 years. In this test, many working instruction are given, as telling the equality or inequality in different shapes, completing the picture after assembling the separated pieces of the picture, counting the things with the help of wooden pieces and recognizing the same things among the different things and putting them in different classes.

Besides the above in the group verbal intelligence test, **Cattle's** cultural independence test and **Pigeon's** non-verbal test have important place, where different kinds of shapes are shown and similarities or differences have to be shown in those shapes.

### 15.3 Intelligence Testing in India

The development of intelligence testing has been done in India some days ago. In the above described intelligence test, it was attempted to use Binet test in the Indian situation. Intelligence test related work was being done in the 'education department 'or psychological Bureau' in the universities of the different states. In 1922 Dr. C.H. Rice published '**Hindustani Binet Performance Test.**' This test is the corrective form of Binet test. After this, whichever performance test was constructed, **Dr. Bhatia Battery of Performance Test** is worth mentioning.

**Bhatia Battery of Performance Test** – Dr. Bhatia constructed the performance test for the children on the basis of battery of performance test made by Alexander. Following five tests are included-



*Task*

In your opinion, what are the reasons of late start of the intelligence testing in India?

1. Kohas Block Design Test.
2. Alexander Pass Along Test.

3. Pattern Drawing Test.
4. Immediate Memory Test for digits.
5. Picture Construction Test, it has two tests of the same types which have been described above.

Notes

**Pattern Design Test**— In the Pattern Design Test, 8 line art were drawn on different cards. It is asked to draw the similar picture putting them in front.

**In the Immediate Test for Digits**— some digits as 7, 5, 11, 14 are asked to repeat once they are shown or told.

**Picture Construction Test**— There are five scenes from Indian life, putting them in the different pieces it is told to assemble them. Complete picture is prepared with this activity.

Apart from these intelligent test, following tests have been prepared in Hindi—

1. **Verbal Intelligence Test**— This was constructed in psychological Bureau in U.P. This test is for the age of 10 to adulthood.
2. **Verbal Intelligence Test**— This test has been prepared in U.P., this test is for the children of class 8, 10, and 12.
3. **Verbal Intelligence Test**— This test is for the children of 10 to 16. It has been constructed by Dr. S.A. Mohsin.
4. **General Mental Ability test**— This test has been constructed by Dr. Jalota. This test is for the age of 12 to 16 years.

Besides it, many intelligence tests have been prepared, which are used in the different fields according to the need.

### Self Assessment

Select the correct alternative:

1. The credit of establishing the first laboratory goes to —
  - (a) Alfred Binet
  - (b) Wount
  - (c) Terman
  - (d) Alexandar
2. The American psychologist who corrected 'Binet-Simon Scale' was —
  - (a) Pearson
  - (b) Galton
  - (c) Terman
  - (d) Alfred Binet
3. The credit for preparing the first intelligence in India goes to —
  - (a) Dr. Sohan Lal
  - (b) Dr. Bhatia
  - (c) Dr. Jalota
  - (d) All above
4. The basis of intelligence test prepared by Dr.Bhatia in India was —
  - (a) Cattell's Performance Test
  - (b) Binet Performance Test
  - (c) Alexander's Performance Test
  - (d) Binet-Simon Test

## 15.4 Method of Measuring Intelligence

It is necessary for us to obtain knowledge about two subjects for knowing the method of measuring intelligence.

1. Mental Age
2. Intelligence Quotient

**Notes**

**Mental Age**—Mental age of a man is the indication of the level of intelligence. Mental age, in some especial age, expresses the mental maturity of a child. According to Dr. Mathur, “Mental age is the expression of limit of the development obtained by any man which is known by his works, and it is expected of him in some specific age.” In psychology various kinds of intelligence tests have been constructed for the different ages and for determining mental age. Mental age can be known by these intelligence tests. For example, if any intelligence test, for the age of 12 years child’s determines average score as 75, if the test score of any child is 75, his mental age will be considered 12 years even if he is 10 years old. There is no fixed relationship between the real age and mental age of any child. The mental age of 12 years old child can be equal to 8 years old child also. It is necessary to use intelligence test for knowing the mental age. The knowledge of mental age is obtained on the basis of the responses of the above descriptive tests.

**15.5 Intelligence Quotient**

After knowing the mental age of a man, it is not found whether he is intelligent, common or dull minded. **Psychologist Terman** invented intelligence quotient for measuring the intelligence. What is Intelligence Quotient? To know this, first it is necessary to find out the chronological age and mental age. After this, intelligence quotient is known by the following formula.

$$\text{Intelligence Quotient} = \frac{\text{Mental Age}}{\text{Chronological Age}} \times 100$$

Or, I.Q. =  $\frac{M.A}{C.A} \times 100$

For example if the mental age of any child is 15 years and his chronological age is 12 years, his intelligence quotient is obtained in this way –

$$\text{Intelligence Quotient} = \frac{15}{12} \times 100 = 125$$

The meaning of this intelligence quotient is that, the child is intelligent. Generally, whose intelligence quotient is 100 or approximately, they are considered of normal intelligence.

**The Classification of Intelligence Quotient**

Psychologists have put the intelligence of man in the following classes on the basis of the counting of intelligence quotient.

Intelligence-Quotient Class	Intelligence Class
1. From 140 till 200	Genious
2. From 120 till 140	Very Superior
3. From 110 till 120	Superior
4. From 90 till 110	Average
5. From 80 till 90	Dull
6. From 70 till 80	Feeble Minded
7. From 50 till 60	Moron
8. From 25 till 50	Imbecile
9. Under 25	Idiot

## 15.6 Utility of intelligence Tests

Notes

Intelligence tests have important place in the field of education. According to modern psychologist, education should be provided considering child as the central point. So it is necessary providing education, keeping in mind the intelligence and the capability of child. From this point of view, intelligence tests have become the important aid to education. Intelligence tests have following utilities in education –

1. **Help in the Selection of the Student** – Intelligence test helps in the entrance of proper student for proper class. Unworthy student are found out by it. And only worthy students are selected.
2. **Help in the Psychological Classification of Child** – Children can be divided into various classes with the help of intelligence tests. Genius, Average and dull minded children, Putting them in different classes, education should be provided to them according to their ability.
3. **Help in the Measurement of Especial Ability** – The best student in the college can be selected by this test, whoever gets highest place in the debate or other activities.
4. **Help in the Dealing with the Problematic Students** – The intelligence quotient of such a child found out by the intelligence test, whether the reason of his behavior is lack of intelligence or any other reason. Thus, with the help of intelligence test, the reason of uncommon behavior is known and they can be cured or improved.
5. **Help in Giving Work According to the Capacity of a Child** – The working capability of child can be found out by the intelligence test.
6. **Indication Towards the Future of a Child** – Douglas and Dazed have said, “intelligence tests point towards the future of a child.” His future problem can be found out by this test.
7. **Help in the Selection of Syllabus** – It can be found on the basis of the test which subjects are proper for which students.
8. **Help in the Annual Examination** – On the basis of these tests, if intelligent student get less mark in the examination or gets failure, or due to illness he does not obtain good marks, he can be promoted to the next class.
9. **Verification of the Works of a Teacher** – How has teacher taught the students, it can also be found out by these tests.
10. **Help in the Teaching Work of Teachers** – By using the intelligence test, genius or dull minded child can be put in the different classes. Teachers feel comfort in teaching in this type of class, in which the students are of same level of intelligence and student also learns with interest.
11. **Help in the Guidance Related to Occupation** – Student’s occupational ability can also be known by the intelligence test and they can be provided help in the selection of occupation.
12. **Knowledge of the Progress of the Students** – Teacher finds this by using the intelligence quotient, that, according to his ability, a student is progressing in his subjects or not. Thus by this test, the hardwork done by the student can be known.
13. **Diagnosis of Mental Health** – By the intelligence test, mental unhealthiness can known and cured.
14. **Help in Deciding Scholarships** – By these tests, worthy students can known, and scholarships can be given to them.
15. **Remedy of Extravagance in the Education** – Often in the colleges, many youngsters post-pone their education after failure. So for removing this extravagance, knowledge of a child’s ability can be known, and they can be provided help in the selection of the proper subjects.
16. **Help in the Study of the Specific Classes of Children** – Intelligence test helps in the survey of the intellectual level of other racial community or specific classes as- dumb, deaf and blind.
17. **Utility in the Field of Industrial and Occupation** – By the intelligence test, help can be taken in the selection of the employees and officers for the government and non-government services. Thus,

**Notes**

we can see that the use of the intelligence test in the different field of day to day life is increasing. Many problems can be resolved and cured by the intelligence test in all the important spheres of life. Especially its usage has been proved very important in the educational field.

### **15.7 Summary**

- It is important in the field of education to study the differences in mental abilities. The differences between the mental abilities and capabilities are decided by intelligence.
- In education it is necessary to study the personality differences. Many methods are used for obtaining the knowledge of personality differences.
- Psychologists have made different tests for the measurement of personality differences. In modern warfare, intelligence-tests began in Europe in relation to scientific study.
- In this relation **Alfred Binet** of France, **Thorndike** and **Terman** of America have done works that worth mentioning. Other psychologists as **Galton**, **Cattell** and **Pearson** have also invented many intelligence tests, but these tests measured common mental activities, so these cannot be called intelligence tests. In this field the first and prominent was **Alfred Binet**.
- Today many intelligence tests are present, for the measurement of intelligence. If we put light on the kinds of intelligence tests, they can be divided between two groups – (a) Personal or community intelligence test (b) Verbal or non-verbal intelligence test.
- The development of intelligence testing has been done in India some days ago. In the above described intelligence test, it was attempted to use Binet test in the Indian situation. Intelligence test related work was being done in the ‘education department’ or psychological Bureau’ in the universities of the different states. In 1922 Dr. C.H. Rice.
- Intelligence tests have important place in the field of education. According to modern psychologist, education should be provided considering child as the central point. So it is necessary providing education, keeping in mind the intelligence and the capability of child. From this point of view, intelligence tests have become the important aid to education.

### **15.8 Keywords**

1. **Quotient** – Obtained
2. **Non-Verbal Intelligence Test** – In it language is not used.

### **15.9 Review Questions**

1. Explain the intelligence test in detail.
2. Write a short comment on the history of intelligence test.
3. Explain the main differences between ‘Binet-Simon Scale and ‘Stanford Binet Scale’.
4. Explain the situation of intelligence tests in India.
5. What do you understand by intelligence quotient?
6. Explain the utility of intelligence test.

**Answers: Self-Assessment**

Notes

1. (b)                      2. (c)                      3. (c)                      4. (d)

**15.10 Further Readings**



*Books*

1. Psychology-Study of the Human Behavior – *Brij Kumar Mishra, P.H.I. Learning, Pvt. Ltd. New Delhi.*
2. Psychology – *Dr. Saryu Prasad, Agra book Store, Agra.*
3. Development of the Learner and Educational Learning Process – *A.K. Verma, Hindi Book Centre, New Delhi.*
4. Educational Psychology – *S.K. Mangal, PHI learning Pvt. Ltd. New Delhi.*

Notes

## Unit-16: Theories of Intelligence

### CONTENTS

Objectives

Introduction

- 16.1 Theories of Intelligence
- 16.2 Guilford's S.I.Model
- 16.3 Productional Implications
- 16.4 Summary
- 16.5 Keywords
- 16.6 Review Questions
- 16.7 Further Readings

### Objectives

After the study of this unit, the students will be able to –

- Understand the different stages of the theory of intelligence.
- Understand Guilford's intelligence theory related S.I.Model.
- Know the Productional implications of Guilford's theory.

### Introduction

Educational Psychologists have tried to explain the organizational form of intelligence by different theories or opinions. Binet, Terman and Stern have considered intelligence as the most powerful mental unit, as Thorndike divides it in three parts – social, concrete and abstract. Spearman establishes intelligence as general and especial form. Presently the discussion has been made on the theories of intelligence in detail.

### 16.1 Theories of Intelligence

Psychologists have accepted the following theories about the organization of intelligence –

1. Unifactor or Monarchic Theory
2. Two factor Theory

3. Three factor theory
4. Multi factor or anarchic theory
5. Multi mental Ability theory
6. Group factor or Oligarchic theory
7. Hierarchical Theory
8. Cattell's Theory
9. Unified Theory

**(1) Unifactor or Monarchic Theory** – It has been called one factor theory. The followers of this theory are Binet, Terman and Stern. According to it, intelligence is a unit and entire intelligence does only one type of work at one time when active. According to this theory intelligence is the most powerful mental power, which dominates all mental abilities. But this theory is considered faulty, because we cannot say if a person is good in Mathematics, he will be good in arts as well.

**(2) The Two Factor Theory** – the follower of this theory is psychologist, Spearman. According to this theory, there are two factors of intelligence, means intelligence can be divided between two parts.

- (a) General Ability or 'G' factor
- (b) Specific Ability or 'S' factor

**According to Spearman**, intelligence is the addition of two kinds of strengths. General ability helps a man in all kinds of activities and special ability helps in doing some special work. As-one is intelligent in music or art and other in Maths or Science. For the skillfulness in special activities, 'S' factor is needed.

**General factor of intelligence has following characteristic** – (1) it is found in all the factors. (2) It is innate. (3) This factor is always equal. (4) There is difference in the general ability of every person. (5) The man who has this factor more, he gets more success than other person. (6) This factor is more needed in all works of life.



**Notes** Spearman has considered difference in the general ability of man, one who has this factor more, he succeeds more than others.

**These are Characteristic of Special Factor of Intelligence** – (1) this factor is found in different people in less or more quantity. (2) Different kinds of special factor are determined for different activities. (3) the person who has more quantity of any special factor, he gets more ability in that. (4) Special factor can be acquired. (5) Different persons have different kinds of special factors.

**(3) Three Factor Theory** – In this theory, **Spearman** added collective factor with 'G' and 'S' factors of intelligence. According to it, three factors are needed in the intelligence test- general intelligence, special intelligence and language and spatial knowledge. This theory is in controversy. Psychologists have expressed their difference of opinions in this theory. So this theory cannot be all accepted.

**(4) Multi Factor or Anarchic Theory** – the founder of this theory is **Thorndike**, the famous psychologist of America. According to his opinion intelligence is the collection of many kinds of powers and there is no need of any kind of equality in these different kinds of powers. **Thorndike** does not consider the equal factor of intelligence, in his opinion, all men have unique intelligence. If one has the ability in one subject, his ability in other subject can not be guessed. **Thorndike** has divided the intelligence in three parts –

- (i) Social Intelligence
- (ii) Concrete Intelligence
- (iii) Abstract Intelligence

Notes



*Did u know?* Psychologist, Thorndike does not accept the equal factor of intelligence; rather in his opinion every man has a special intelligence.

**(5) Multi Mental Ability Theory** – Thorndike has called intelligence the collection of many abilities, but Psychologist Thurston and Kelly have said that the intelligence is made of a collection of some mental abilities. Kelly has described nine following abilities in the construction of intelligence –

- (i) Social Ability
- (ii) Verbal Ability
- (iii) Numerical Ability
- (iv) Motor Ability
- (v) Physical Ability
- (vi) Mechanical Ability
- (vii) Musical Talent
- (viii) Interest
- (ix) Ability to deal with special relations

Thurston concluded after using different kinds of psychological tests that intelligence is the collection of following seven Primary Mental Abilities:

- (i) Number Ability or N
- (ii) Verbal Ability or V
- (iii) Spatial Ability or S
- (iv) Word Fluency Ability or W
- (v) Reasoning Ability or R
- (vi) Memory Ability or M
- (vii) Perceptual Talent or P

It can be written in this way in English formula:

$$\text{Intelligence} = N + V + S + W + R + M + P$$

**(6) Group Factor or Oligarchic Theory** – The follower of this theory is G. Thomson, the famous psychologist of Scotland. According to him, there is a group or collection of special abilities. There is equality among the same abilities of a group or collection, as under the collection of the literature abilities there will be a close relation among poem, story, and fiction and essay, but these abilities will have no relationship with the abilities of the collection of science.

**(7) Hierarchical Theory** – The follower of this theory is **Burt** and **Vernon**. They have given hierarchical theory to the mental abilities. And they have told the four following mental abilities.

- (i) General mental health
- (ii) Two parts of mental Ability-
  - (a) Performance, mechanical, internal and psychical abilities
  - (b) Verbal, numeric and educational abilities.
- (iii) Division of above two level of abilities into many mental abilities, like memory, imagination and thoughts
- (iv) Special mental abilities

**(8) Cathell's Theory** – Cathell has told the two factors of the general factor of theory of Spearman. These two factors are –

- (a) Crystallized Intelligence – Cathal has called it GF factor and
- (b) Fluid Intelligence – Cathal has called it GE factor.

The effect of heredity falls on the development of fluid intelligence. So, due to the different reason and heredity related changes, there is difference in the intelligence of different persons. The development of the crystallized intelligence is affected by the environment. Therefore, due to the environmental differences or similarities, equality or inequality can be seen in the intelligence of difference persons. According to Cathal, after philosophical analysis, the above two factors they can be divided among many factors. Cathal has constructed 'Culture Free Test for the measuring the intelligence'. By which fluid intelligence is measured.

Notes

### Self Assessment

Fill in the blanks in the following sentences:

1. The founder of anarchic theory is .....
2. Guilford has delivered ..... theory.
3. "Intelligence is the power of learning" according to .....
4. If a man's ..... is destroyed, his ..... is finished.

**(9) Unified Theory** – Guilford has delivered the unified theory. According to Guilford, intelligence is a "structure of intellect Model". There are three parts of structured model which includes different abilities. These are following –



Task

Which is the most scientific theory among the different theories of intelligence in your opinion? And why?

## 16.2 Guilford's S.I.Model

Under many intelligence related theory, Guilford has constructed his own theory. According to Guilford-intelligence is only a structure of primary intellectual abilities. Guilford said that every intellectual ability is special or unique in itself. There is need of some or the other intellectual ability in doing every work in proper way. Therefore, in Guilford's opinion, every intellectual ability should be measured in different way. Sir Guilford accepts that there are some similarities shown among some mental abilities. Guilford has put these in the three groups on the basis of these similarities-

1. Process or operation
2. Content or material
3. Product

Sir Guilford has described some special mental abilities for the each parts of these three, which is described in short –

1. **Process or Operation** – process means the nature of mental process by a man, means what will be nature of mental activities adopted by man in doing any given work, its explanation comes under the 'process'. For example, if a man is asked to explain the pros & cons of mobile, here the evaluation will be found comprising of five factors of process, under which following five important mental abilities come –

Notes

- (a) **Cognition**—on the basis of this ability a man remembers any thing again. Repeat it and try to recognize it.
  - (b) **Memory**—on the basis of this ability a man, on the basis of his previous experiences, establishes relationship with the present. He remembers his previous experiences and remembers them carefully.
  - (c) **Divergent thinking**—on the basis of this ability, a man uses his intelligence in the many dimensions. He can think about different dimensions, can take decision according to the situation. His thinking is not one sided.
  - (d) **Convergent thinking**—convergent thinking is the other side of divergent thinking. Both types of thinking are important in the life of a man. With this type of thinking, a man becomes capable in a way that he finds out correct solution for any problem at last.
  - (f) **Evaluation**—on the basis of this ability, a man lives in whichever atmosphere or doing work on whichever problem, he tries to keep all information about them. Then, after analyzing the entire situation he reaches out to the correct decision by the proper method.
2. **Content or Material**—Content means the field of information, which serves as the basis for all process. Guilford has divided this kind of information among four parts. Under process, whichever examples have been presented, evaluation is included in them. Its content is semantic. But sometimes it happens that the information obtained by person is not semantic, rather it is in the form of pictures. In this condition, the nature of content will be called figural. Under it Guilford has described the following four parts—
- (i) **Figure**—It means that a man tries to understand and recognize some special figure after watching it. He does this work with the help of his sense organs. And inspect the figure thoroughly in a proper way.
  - (ii) **Symbolic**—It means that after understanding the different symbols in proper way, a man can use them according to the importance in his life. It is needed to understand the different kinds of symbols to do different kinds of work in life.
  - (iii) **Language**—Language related ability is considered important to succeed in life. In the condition of having good command over language, a man can convey his own thoughts to others very well and understand others' thought very well. Even the nature of thoughts can also be easily perceived.
  - (iv) **Behavioral**—It means social intelligence, which helps a man in the understanding of different human communications easily. It has been considered as the most important stage of life.
3. **Product**—the meaning of product is the result of the process done by any special kind of content. Guilford has divided it in 6 parts. For example, if we tell any student to put odd and even numbers in different categories, then the work done by the student will be put under product category. When content is used in any process, result is obtained. Under it, six types of abilities come, they are following—
- (a) **Units**—It is important to understand the meaning and knowledge of seeing, hearing and symbolic units. Means, here a man tries to understand the uniqueness and characteristics of sensory perceptions.
  - (b) **Class and Category**—Under it, the ability of the classification of the units come. It is seen in it that a man can put thoughts in category or not.
  - (c) **Relation**—Under it, it is observed that a man can understand the relationship among different things, or not, along with this whether he can explain this relationship or not.
  - (d) **Systems**—According to it, providing the arranging the nature of different kinds of thoughts and problems and finding out their solution etc are included.
  - (e) **Transformations**—It is related to that type of ability in which a man can learn of the nature of particular thing after making a specific change, or to advice which change will be able to bring

about the specific form.

Notes

- (f) **Implications** – it means that the man has the sufficient ability to understand the contained meaning in the thought, things and facts. So some people use implication as the contained meaning.

It is clear from the above description, that, in the context of intellectual abilities, mental abilities have the followings things contained in them as per Guilford –

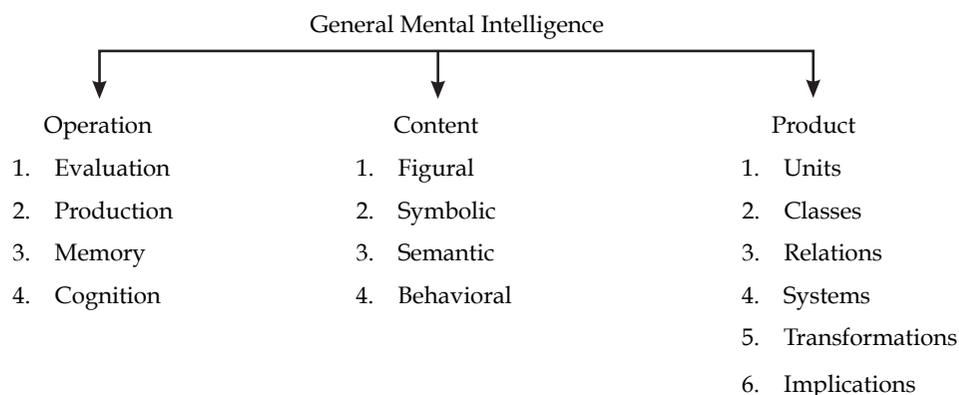
1. Five operations
2. Four contents or materials
3. Six Products

According to Guilford all these mental abilities are related to one another. Thus, the total counting of the intellectual dimensions can be called –  $5 \times 4 \times 6 = 120$

Guilford's above descriptive theory is one of the best extended theories. Yet the assumption of Guilford states that this model is quite theoretical and changes can be done in it. The most important thing is that it gives birth to new possibilities in the scientific field.

This theory of Guilford can be understood in short in the following way, that, intelligence is a logical structure which is made of two main things-memory and rumination. The classification of the rumination has been done under cognition, product and evaluation. Product has been divided between two classes-divergent thinking and convergent thinking. Thus, in total there is a collection of five intelligence parts, which has been cleared by the medium of some processes. The classification of five collections has been done on the basis of two theories. Under it whichever types of outcomes (units, classes) are included and the types of content (figure, language, symbolic and practical) that have been taken, in this connection Guilford ends his theory, stating, that the blank cells indicate towards those primary mental abilities, whose discovery still remains.

Its long factors – Guilford presented a model of the shape of box, on the basis of scientific analysis in 1967, which is known by the name of Intellect Structure Model. He made cubes of  $5 \times 4 \times 6$  in this model, means total 120 cells, in which different factors depending on the three factors related to mental ability have been put. Minimum one factor or ability has been kept in each cell, in some cells, factors more than one can be put. There is no arrangement of it. Guilford has described each factor in three dimensions and on the basis of his factor analyzing research; he has got success in establishing the existence of 80 factors, and was hopeful for the remainder. Guilford has divided all the factors of intelligence in this way.

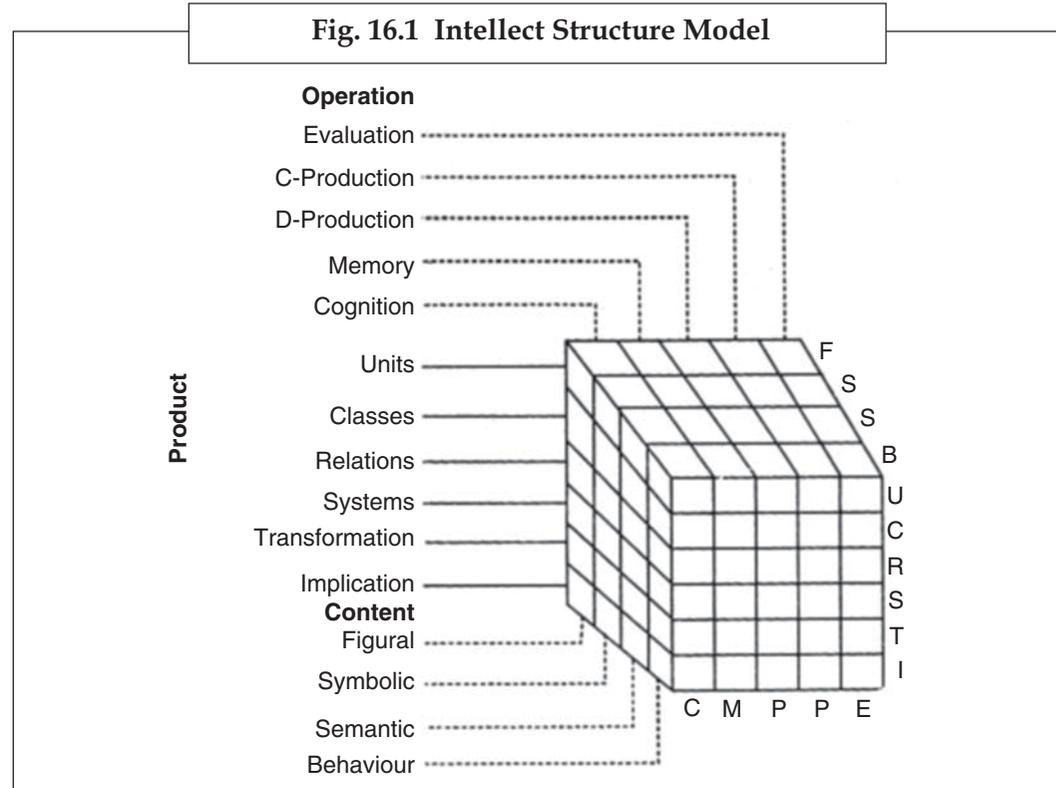


### 16.3 Productional Implications

As far as the question of the implication of this theory in the educational field, Guilford had told during the time of delivering this theory that this theory will give birth to new possibilities in the field of education and in the field of research. Guilford had this belief that this theory would provide a new

**Notes**

nature to the entire educational learning process. He has compared learner to computer. Difference between them is so that student determines his program himself, while computer depends on others.



In short it can be said that Guilford's above descriptive theory is not completed yet and it is necessary to do further discoveries in this regard. There is no doubt that Guilford has shown a new way of searching by delivering this theory in the field of intelligence. Igink writes in the relation of this theory-

"Guilford classifies the intellect into operations, which it can perform, different contents of these operations and different products. By taking all possible interactions we obtain 120 cells corresponding to different mental abilities. Of these, Guilford claims to have evidence in actual factorial studies for eighty. He is optimistic about the discoveries of remainder."

**16.4 Summary**

- Intelligence affects the mental ability of a child. What is intelligence? The answers to this question have been given by the psychologists as per their opinions. Psychologist have explained the nature of intelligence with the help of various definitions, and their conclusion is, that, intelligence is a general ability. It is a collection of different abilities and the essence of special ability.
- Psychologists have accepted the following theories about the organization of intelligence.
  1. Unifactor or monarchic Theory
  2. Two Factor theory
  3. Three factor theory
  4. Multifactor or anarchic theory
  5. Multi mental Ability theory

6. Group factor or Oligarchic theory
  7. Hierarchical Theory
  8. Cathell Theory
  9. Unified Theory
- Under many intelligence related theory, Guilford has constructed his own theory. According to Guilford – intelligence is only a structure of primary intellectual abilities. Guilford said that every intellectual ability is special or unique in itself. There is need of some or the other intellectual ability in doing every work in proper way. Therefore, in Guilford’s opinion, every intellectual ability should be measured in different way. Sir Guilford accepts that there are some similarities shown among some mental abilities. Guilford has put these in the three groups on the basis of these similarities –
    1. Process or operation
    2. Content or material
    3. Product

### 16.5 Keywords

1. **Helper** – supportive
2. **Helpless** – move away, different

### 16.6 Review Questions

1. Throw light on the theories of intelligence.
2. Write the difference between monarchic and anarchic theory.
3. Evaluate the ‘Unified theory’ of Guilford.

### **Answers: Self-Assessment**

1. Thorndike
2. Unified
3. Bankingham
4. Intelligence, Knowledge

### 16.7 Further Readings



Books

1. Educational Psychology – S.H. Sinha and Rachna Sharma, Atlantic Publication, New Delhi.
2. Educational Psychology – S.K. Mangal, P.H.I. learning, Pvt. Ltd., New Delhi.
3. The information and importance of education in the children – Seema Chopra, Hindi book center, New Delhi.
4. Development of the learner and educational learning process – A.K. Verma, Hindi book centre, New Delhi.

## Notes

## Unit-17: Memory

**CONTENTS**

Objectives

Introduction

17.1 Meaning and Definition of Memory

17.2 Factors of Memory

17.3 Characteristics of Good Memory

17.4 Kinds of Memory

17.5 Summary

17.6 Keywords

17.7 Review Questions

17.8 Further Readings

### Objectives

After the study of this unit, students will be able to –

- Understand the meaning of memory.
- Introduced to the characteristics of good memory and the factors of memory.
- Be capable in obtaining the information of the kinds of memory.

### Introduction

There is a great importance of memory in our day to day life. It is difficult for a man to move his life properly without memory. Whatever a man feels ever, that continues to collect in some form in his mind. The experiences, which are on the unconscious level of mind or are not conscious, they are called collected. And which comes on the level of conscious mind, they are called memory. According to the needs, these collected experiences help us in different situations. Memory helps us in the practical activities of life. If man could not remember his previous experiences, he would not have got so much progress today. Thus we can say that development and education is dependent on the tendency of collection of previous knowledge and experiences, good memory is needed for it. Especially intellectual work cannot be done in the absence of memory. Memory has an important place in the education. It is almost impossible to get knowledge without memory. So it is necessary to think in detail about the nature of memory.

## 17.1 Meaning and Definition of Memory

Notes

Memory is a mental process. With its help we bring our previous experiences, which are stored in our unconscious mind as mental instinct, into our current conscience. Many kinds of events happen in our daily life. If we see any place or things, get some experiences from them, which do not remain in the conscious mind forever but in the unconscious mind. The impressions of those experiences are marked in the mind. The process, of coming in the conscious mind of these experiences collected in the unconscious mind, is called memory. For example- Tajmahal is worth seeing among the different historical places in the Agra. I have seen it many years ago. Seeing it directly, an image that has been stored in my mind, that was on my unconscious level. Today when describing Tajmahal to my younger sister, the experiences which were collected on the unconscious level came into the conscious mind, it is memory.

The definitions of memory given by psychologists are following –

**(1) Scout** – “Memory is the ideal revival so far as ideal revival is merely reproductive in which the object of past experiences are reinstated as far as possible in the order and manner of their original occurrence.”

**(2) Woodworth** – “Memory is the direct use of what is learned.”

**(3) Mc Dougall** – Memory implies imagining of events as experienced in the past and recognizing them as belonging to one’s own past experience.”

**(4) W. James** – “Memory is the knowledge of past condition after being detached from the conscious or it is the knowledge of an event or fact, about which we have not thought till sometimes, along with we have to think this that we have thought or experienced about it before.”

**(5) Nunn** – “The power of collecting our experiences when connected with consciousness, we call it memory.”

**(6) Ryburn** – “After sometimes collecting our previous experiences and getting them, the power which we have for bringing them in the field of consciousness, that is called memory.”

We can say on the basis of above definitions that memory is such a mental process by which collected or past experiences, due to need are again brought in the consciousness.



Notes

Under the memory all learned or experienced things come. Thus memory is the process of awakening, make it living and memorizing the past experiences or thoughts.

## 17.2 Factors of Memory

Memory is a complicated mental process. According to Woodworth, four following factors are included in memory –

1. Learning
2. Retention
3. Recall
4. Recognition

**(1) Learning** – First it is necessary to learn for memorizing the content of anything. What is the process of learning and how does it happen? In this relation it has been described in the chapter related to learning. There is a close relation between learning and memorizing. We cannot remember anything without learning it very well and we can learn anything without remembering it. In order to learn any

**Notes**

lesson, a child repeats it again and again, understands its meaning and connects it with other lessons. In this process its traces fall on the mind. Thus remembering the learnt things from that lesson, he establishes association to the past knowledge with new knowledge. In this section of memory the rules of learning are followed completely.

**(2) Retention** – To remember anything is only to do retention of learnt things. The power of remembrance depends upon the power of retention. Retention is that power of mind by which we keep the learnt or remembered content in the mind. According to Woodworth- “Retention is such a situation in which everything, which is learnt, until it is repeated again, lies in it.”



*Did u know?* When we learn any lesson carefully, mind is activated and during this process, this activity leaves engrams, which is called 'Memory Trace'.

These traces are not destroyed. These are protected in the form of mental purification on the unconscious level. We can remember that learnt material till the memory traces are present in our mind. Retention is such a factor which can be proved by remembrance. We can remember those things again which we have retained in our mind. Thus remembrance depends upon retention and retention depends upon learning.

**The factors influencing the retention-power** – The factors influencing the retention power are following –

**(a) Mind** – Mental activities are influenced by mind. Memory traces are marked in the mind. The man whose mind is more developed, his memory traces are also more powerful, consequently, retention process is also affected due to personality differences means it is affected by less intelligence or more intelligence.

**(b) Health** – Retention power is also affected by health. The men who are not healthy, they cannot retain the learnt, seen or experienced things for a long time. For example, in the morning when we are not tired or we are healthier, at that time we learn any things immediately. So students are forced to do study or learning, after getting up early in the morning. So they can retain the learnt things very well.

**(c) Interest** – Whichever subject is learnt with interest and care. That remains in mind for a long time. For making the retention- power swift, teacher should pay attention for awakening interest of the child towards the subject.

**(d) Rumination** – Retention-power is also related to rumination. In whichever subject we are interested, we think about that subject. When we think about any problem, past experiences and learnt things are remembered soon. And mind absorbs them properly.

**Favorable conditions of Retention** – Psychologists have done many experiments related to favorable conditions of retention. The conclusion obtained from these experiments can be presented in the following form –

1. The period of stimulus is internally related to retention-power. The stimulus remaining in mind for a longer time can be absorbed in mind for longer.
2. It has been concluded from the study of **Lunt, Enbinghas** and **Croger**, that the favorable effect falls on the retention-power by more teaching. Within the definite period, the more child will be thought, the more he will assume.
3. Favorable effect falls of the speed of learning on the retention-power. Any subject that is learnt quickly it is retained with equal swiftness.
4. The effect of the health of child falls on retention-power. Healthy child can retain the learnt thing for a long time.

5. Whichever learning material is learnt with attention and interest remains in mind for a long time. Means attention and interest also favor the retention-power.
6. It is necessary for making retention powerful that memorizing materials are stimulating, fast, clear and meaningful. The more are these qualities in the stimulus, more will be the retention. These qualities provide favorable condition to retention.
7. Above learning method provides retention favorable conditions. as- retention is good and long in learning by the active method than passive method.
8. If we have more quantity of material. It throws a favorable conditioning effect on retention-power. Long time and hard work is taken in the learning of big content. More time and hard work makes retention-power strong. A child assembles the different parts of a big content looking into its essence rather than the small content. It helps in retention.
9. Some psychologists have concluded that sleeping after remembrance proves helpful in the form of favorable condition to the retention-power. During the time of remembrance if mind is diverted, hindrance comes in retention. But after learning any subject if child takes rest, memory traces get good opportunity for being powerful.

Notes



Task

Tell on the basis of your own experiences, which is the better way to remember and to learn?

10. Experiences or content learnt for some purpose is stable in memory for long times. So, often it has been seen that the content learnt during the examination time is kept in mind for a long time, because the effect of purpose falls on it.

11. In the retention, past collected knowledge is more important. If content is not related to past collected knowledge, there is difficulty in retention. The mixture of past collected knowledge provides conditioning stage to retention.

12. Retention is also affected by feelings and emotional situations. The feeling of Suffering, pleasure, fear and hopelessness etc traces deep mark in the mind that is kept in mind for a long time. But this kind of educational situations cannot be developed for providing favoring condition to the retention.

**(3) Recall** – To bring the past experiences in consciousness is recall. The concepts which are marked on mind with the past experiences, they come on the level of consciousness by a recall. Recall depends on retention-power. If a child, after learning any lesson absorbs it in a proper way, he can remember it easily. "Recall is the mental process, by which we bring our past feelings in our consciousness without presented by any original stimulus." There are two kinds of recall- (a) Spontaneous (b) Deliberate. In the first kind there is no need of any kind of effort, they come on the level of consciousness itself according to the need. In the second type of recall, there is a need of effort. As in the examination hall, there is need of effort for the remembrance of the answer of the question in writing. Besides, the factors influencing the retention power there are some other factors that influence recall, which are following –

### Self Assessment

Choose the correct alternative:

Who are the memory of the following definitions:

1. "Memory is the correct use of learnt things" –
  - (a) Scout
  - (b) Woodworth
  - (c) William James

Notes

2. "The meaning of memory is to imagine the experiences of past events and recognize this fact that it is a past experience."

- (a) McDougall (b) William James (c) Woodworth

3. "Four factors have been included in memory."

- (a) McDougall (b) Nun (c) Wood worth

4. How many kinds of recall are there?

- (a) Two (b) Four (c) Six

**(a) Emotional Stage**—Emotional stage affects the process of recall. In the time of recall if a man is worried, fearful and nervous, he does not recall the well learnt or assumed things. For example in the examination hall, some times seeing the question paper, student does not answers some question, but coming out of the hall he remembers the answer of the question properly, because his retention power is good. Its reason was emotional stage. If a man is cheerful and healthy, he recalls things quickly.

**(b) Mental Set**—When a man is mentally prepared for learning any thing, he can recall more things. For example- in the examination times student reads or learns whichever subjects, he learns them successfully, because in the mind of student there is a mental tendency of learning the subject due to the examination, which helps him in recall.

**(4) Recognition**—Recognition is an important factor. According to **Woodworth**—"to know the past experiences is recognition, or to introduce that thing in the current time which we have been introduced in the past." For example, An adult man when sees his teacher after many years who taught him in the forth and fifth class, he recognize that "**he taught me maths**" Teacher also recognizes him by recall that 'he was the mischievous boy of the class. Thus association of ideas depends on the feelings of introduction.

### 17.3 Characteristics of Good Memory

Important qualities and characteristic of good memory are following—

**(1) Quick Learning**—The first characteristic of good learning is quick learning. The child who learns any thing after reading or hearing on time, then his memory is called good.

**(2) Good Retention**—If a child can remember learnt thing for a long time, his memory is more stable. This is the quality of good memory.

**(3) Quick Recall**—There is also another quality of good memory- recall. Learnt content is early recalled that is so useful. From the educational point of view quick recall is the most important quality for the student.

**(4) Quick and Accurate Recognition**—For good memory, not only quick recall but quick and accurate recognition is also needed. Child reads many things related to subject, learns and remembers, in the examination time he recall these things, but without quick and accurate recognition he is not able to answer the desired questions.

**(5) Forgetting of Meaningless Things**—This is also a good quality of good memory that child forgets useless things and remembers useful things. Useless things hinders in the remembrance, recall, retention and recognition of useful things.

### 17.4 Kinds of Memory

Psychologists have given the following kinds of memory —

**(1) Immediate Memory**—After learning a fact or any subject, immediately repeating is immediate

memory. But in this type of learning, there are more possibilities of forgetting.

Notes

(2) **Permanent Memory** – Learnt things are remembered in it for a long time. It found more in the children.

(3) **Active Memory** – To recall the past experiences after making efforts according to desire is called active memory, as- in the examination hall remembering effort fully to write the answers of the questions.

(4) **Passive Memory** – When we recall our past experiences without any effort that is called passive memory. For example, as- telling the name of blackboard, remembering its blackness.

(5) **Personal Memory** – To recall our own personal past experiences is personal memory, as- after watching any event, remembering some experience of our childhood.

(6) **Impersonal Memory** – In this type of memory besides our personal experiences, other experiences obtained by the means of friend, books, and newspaper are remembered.

(7) **Rote Memory** – To memorize any subject without understanding it well and to recall it successfully when needed is rote memory. Now a days, most students take the support of this type of memory for getting success in the examination. This type of memory helps in the learning of tables in the maths.

(8) **Logical Memory** – Learning content after understanding it properly and remembering it and telling it when needed is logical memory. It is also called intellectual memory. This type of memory is useful in the education of a child.

(9) **Habit Memory** – When a man learns or repeats anything again and again, it turns into his habit. Due to this habit he does not make effort to remember it.

(10) **Sense Impression Experience** – In this type of memory, when we recall or recognize anything by fact and thought due to the experience of the sense impression, as- telling about something after touching, tasting and smelling it or remembering any fact after hearing.

(11) **Physical Memory** – When we do some work repeatedly, our related parts are in the habit of doing the same work and there is no mistake in doing that work, as in typing fingers freely fall on the proper letters.

(12) **True Memory** – Psychologists have called it the best memory. In this kinds of memory, content is remembered in sequence. The sequential knowledge of learnt content becomes stable in it. Facts can be recalled soon by true memory. This type of memory is important in education.

## 17.5 Summary

- Whatever a man feels ever, that continues to collect in some form in his mind. The experiences, which are on the unconscious level of mind or are not conscious, they are called collected. And which comes on the level of conscious mind, they are called memory. Memory helps us in the practical activities of life.
- Memory has an important place in the education. It is almost impossible to get knowledge without memory.
- According to Mc Dougall – “Memory implies imagining of events as experiences in the past and recognizing them as belonging to one’s own past experiences.”
- Memory is a complicated mental process. According to Woodworth, four following factors are included in memory – 1. Learning 2. Retention 3. Recall 4. Recognition
- The first characteristic of good learning is quick learning. The child who learns any thing after reading or hearing on time, then his memory is called good.
- Psychologists have given the following kinds of memory – 1. Immediate Memory 2. Permanent Memory 3. Active Memory 4. Passive Memory 5. Personal Memory 6. Impersonal Memory 7. Rote Memory 8. Logical Memory 9. Habit Memory 10. Sense Impression Experience 11. Physical Memory 12. True Memory.

**Notes**

**17.6 Keywords**

1. **Recall** – Call back
2. **Recognition** – Identity, Consideration

**17.7 Review Questions**

1. What is memory? Explain the meaning of memory with definition.
2. Throw light on the factors of memory.
3. Mention the characteristics of good memory.
4. Mention the kinds of memory.

**Answers: Self-Assessment**

1. (b)
2. (a)
3. (c)
4. (a)

**17.8 Further Readings**



*Books*

1. Psychology–The Study of Human Behavior – *Brij Kumar Mishra*.
2. Education Psychology – *S.K. Mangal, PHI Learning Pvt. Ltd., New Delhi*.
3. Development of Learner and Educational Learning Process – *A.K. Verma, Hindi Book Centre, New Delhi*.
4. Psychology – *Dr. Saryu Prasad, Agra Book Store, Agra*.

## Unit-18: Forgetting

### CONTENTS

Objectives

Introduction

18.1 Nature of Forgetting

18.2 Causes of Forgetting

18.3 Theory of Forgetting

18.4 Methods of Minimizing Forgetfulness

18.5 Educational Importance of Memory and Forgetting

18.6 Summary

18.7 Keywords

18.8 Review Questions

18.9 Further Readings

### Objectives

After the study of this unit, the student will be able to—

- Understand the nature of forgetting.
- Search the causes of forgetting and methods of minimizing the forgetfulness.
- Understand the theory of forgetfulness.
- Understand the educational importance of forgetfulness and memory.

### Introduction

It is evident after considering the nature of memory, that, memory specially depends on the process of learning and retention. Forgetting means failure in recalling and retaining of the learnt things. Memory has an important place in the education, but along with it, it is also necessary to study forgetfulness, because forgetting is because of memory. Forgetting makes mind free from the unnecessary and useless things and helps in acquiring new, necessary and worthy things.

The concept of Psychologist Munn—“Forgetting, like memory, is a necessary aspect of learning process, for use must forget incorrect responses while we acquire correct ones.”

So here is the nature of memory, educational vision, principles, causes and prevention will be considered.

Notes

### 18.1 Nature of Forgetting

It is necessary to know the causes and nature of forgetting for the process of learning. In order to get success in the learning process, it is necessary to resolve the causes of forgetfulness. Forgetfulness is such a mental process, by which we are unable in bringing learnt things, experience and thought on our conscious level, means retained experiences cannot be recalled. In forgetfulness, past acquired experiences, which are marked as the memory traces on the mental screen, man finds himself unable in recalling or recognizing them. The disappearance and removing of this memory trace is forgetfulness. Psychologists have given following definitions to clear the meaning of forgetting.

- (1) **Munn** – “Forgetting is failing to retain or to be able to recall what has been acquired.
- (2) **Drever** – “Forgetting means failure at any time to recall any experiences. When attempting to do so or to perform an action previously learned.
- (3) **Freud** – “Forgetting is a tendency toward off from memory that which is unpleasant.”

The meaning of forgetting is evident from the above description. Psychologists have done some experiments on forgetting, which throw light on the causes of forgetting. Among them, the name of Ebbinghaus is mentioned. He has called forgetting ‘Passive Mental Process’. Rejecting the opinion of **Ebbinghaus, Skaggs, Pilzecker**, and **Freud** have called forgetting ‘Active mental Process’. According to them, we do not forget due to the passage of time, the reason of forgetfulness is that there are other activities and causes, happening between the learning and recall.

### 18.2 Causes of Forgetting

The causes of forgetfulness can be classified between two classes –

- (a) Theoretical
- (b) General

(a) **The Theoretical Causes of Forgetfulness** – The theoretical causes of forgetfulness are following-

(1) **Theory of Disuse** – The founder of this theory is ‘**Sir Ebbinghaus**’. According to him-when acquired content is not used for long time or it is not practiced, we began to forget it. It is clear that lapse of time originated of disuse is responsible for the forgetfulness. As soon as the time passes, the quantity of forgetfulness grows.

(2) **Repression Theory** – Psychologists Freud and his followers delivered this theory. According to him, man has suffering and unloving experiences in his life. He does not want to recall them deliberately. Being repressed, these kind of pathetic experiences are forgotten.

(3) **Theory of Interference** – Muller, Woodworth and Pilzecker has thrown light on this theory. According to them if any activity is done between learning and recall, it is interfering in the recalling of previous learned material. This process is called “Retrospective Inhibition’ it means backward stoppage. The process that happens between learning and recall is called ‘Introspection Activity’. More the special activity differs from learned activity, higher will be the quantity of forgetfulness.



Task

According to Freud, “Suffering experiences are disappeared, being repressed in the unconscious mind.” In the context of Freud’s opinion, explain forgetfulness.

**(b) General Theory of Forgetfulness** – General reasons of forgetfulness are following –

**(1) Nature of the Learning Material** – If the learning and remembering content is more meaningful, interesting and easy; the process of forgetfulness is less. On the contrary, if the content is useless and complicated, forgetfulness is more.

**(2) Amount of Learning Material** – If any subject is longer, more time and practice is needed for learning it. Due to more practice, it remains learned for many days. On the contrary, small subject is learned soon, there is no need of more practice in it. Consequently these kinds of learned subjects do not leave traces in the memory and we soon forget them. Thus, less long or short subject is also the cause of forgetfulness.

**(3) Degree of Learning** – If any subject is learnt or practiced for a long time, it is remembered for long time. On the contrary, we soon forget the under learning subject.

**(4) Defective Method of Learning** – If learning method is defective; we forget the learnt material soon.

**(5) Lack of Interest and Attention** – In whichever subject, man is not interested, he does not pay attention in it. In spite of learning, he forgets it.

**(6) Lapse of Time** – Larger the time interval between learning and recalling, more is the process of forgetfulness, as- it has been cleared in the disuse theory.

**(7) Age and Intelligence of Learner** – The quantity of forgetfulness also depends upon the age and intelligence of learner. The process of forgetfulness will be slow in the adult and sharp intelligence.

**(8) Lack of Repetition** – When learnt material is not repeated for many days, it is also forgotten, because memory traces begin to look dull in lack of repetition.

**(9) Emotional Causes** – There are often physical and mental changes due to the orientation of emotional causes as fear, anger, anxiety, confusion, etc. In such conditions it is difficult to remember learnt or past experiences. Often students forget a well prepared lesson in fear and confusion in the examination hall.

**(10) Desire of Forgetting** – When we do not want to learn any things, we often forget. Often man does not want to remember the tragedy that happened in his life, so he forgets it. Thus forgetfulness is inspired by desire. When child learn without desire he forgets it soon.

**(11) Doubt** – Doubt gives birth to mental weakness. By which there is lack of confidence in a man. Thus he begins to forget necessary things because of doubt in mind.

**(12) Brain Injury** – If the brain of man is injured, his memory-power is destroyed.

**(13) Mental Shock** – If any person gets any mental shock due to any cause, his memory power is also affected by it.

**(14) Mental Conflict** – The problem created by mental conflict is also the cause of forgetfulness.

**(15) Use of Intoxicants** – The persons who use intoxicant, their memory power is dull. After learning, if any material is not used, content does not remain learnt for more days.

**(16) Mental Disease** – Mental disease makes memory- power weak. In the above points the causes of forgetfulness are emotional imbalance, feeling complexities, doubt mental conflict, etc. other things come under general memory.

### **18.3 Theory of Forgetting**

Some theoretical sides have been given for mentioning the causes of forgetfulness before it. In fact Psychologists have presented the theories of forgetfulness for presenting the extended basis of the causes of forgetfulness. So here is the description of important theories that have been presented.

Notes



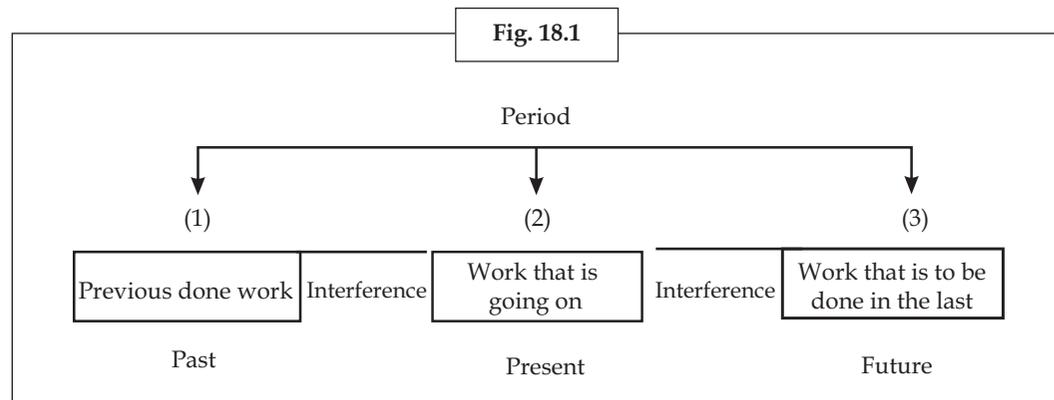
**Notes** Forgetfulness is related to learning. There is no question of forgetfulness without learning. So the theory of forgetfulness was delivered, that it may be protected from the bad effect of forgetfulness and for making learning effective.

The theories of forgetfulness are following –

- (1) Theory of Trace Decay
- (2) Theory of Interference
- (3) Theory of Retrieval Failure
- (4) Motivational Theory
- (5) Theory of Consolidation

**1. Theory of Trace Decay** – Theory of trace decay depends on general experiences. Often it is seen, that due to period distance, we forget past experiences. Memory traces, in the memory screen get dirty or removed. Hence past experiences, done work and learning are completely or partially forgotten. Two facts are found primarily in this type of forgetting. Time factor and utility factor, if learnt material cannot be recalled in further times, in this type of forgetting time factor is active, means time factor removes the memory traces slowly. Hence from this point of view the process of forgetfulness, due to period distance, happens because of the decay in the memory traces. Forgetfulness is also affected by the utility factor. The things, those are used in the behavior. Due to practice their memory is strong, but the things that are not used in the behavior, due to lack of practice, their memory traces are decayed, and the process of forgetfulness happens. Thorndike has proved by the experiments that the learning which is not used in the practice is forgotten. Thorndike has described this opinion in his learning rules as a theory of disuse. It is called the ‘theory of disuse’ in field of forgetting related to study. From the above causes, in which decay is seen in the memory traces, when we describe forgetfulness, that is the theory of decay. In favor of this theory we can present many examples from the behavior of daily life that can confirm this theory. But this theory does not prove useful on the criterion of psychological study and does not have scientific outlook. This is an old theory. Other theories have been delivered due to the dissatisfaction of this theory.

**2. Theory of Interference** – Muller, Woodworth and Pilzecker etc psychologists have thrown light on this theory. According to this theory, whatever is learnt, retained and remembered at a time, is badly affected by previous and latter works in the form of interference in the recall. Whatever a man is doing, that is done in the present, whatever he has done in the past, that has gone in the past and the work that has to be done, will be done in the future. There is an effective relationship in the works that are done in the three periods of time. It can be presented in the following picture –



When the learnt work of present time generates interference in the work of past and the work of future generates interference in the work of present, by which there is decay in the recall and retention power, this type of forgetfulness will be called the theory of interference.



*Did u know?* The theory of interference of forgetfulness is the other name for interference that existed among the different periods of learning.

It is known by this fact that there are two conditions of interference, first, when the learning process of past time produces interference in the process of present time and second, when process of present time produces interference in the process of future time. In the psychological language, both types of interference are known by the following name –

1. Pro-active Interference
2. Retro-active Interference

**1. Pro-active Interference** – When the factors of forgetting interfere with learning moving forward, that is called Pro-active interference, as it is clear by its name. It is evident from this thought the learning that is being done in the present time is affected by the interference of previously learnt material. The first learning becomes a hindrance in the second learning. For example, a child has to retain and recall the learning material given in the two tables; first he learns the first table and then tries to learn another table. In this process if the learning material of the first table generates interference in the recalling and retaining of the second table, it is proved that, in the forgetting, pro-active interference is activated. This process in the vocabulary of psychologist is called pro-active interference. Often it is seen that proactive interference is important among the most reasons of the forgetfulness of a child. It is appropriate for **M.S. Chauhan** to give following example in this connection –

“Forgetting, we experience in daily life, is more due to proactive inhibition.”

**2. Retro-active Interference** – When the learning process done in the past produces interference or obstacles in recalling and retaining of its previous work, this thought of forgetfulness is called retro-active interference. For example, if a child, after learning first table, tries to learn second table and by the learning of second table, the bad effect of the interference is seen in retaining and recalling of the first table, this process will be called retro-active interference. There is forgetfulness from this type of interference. It is also evident from this factor; interpolated activities are activated between the retaining and recalling of the two learning processes. Consequently forgetting begins to happen. More the similarity between the learning material of past and last, more will be the effect of retro active interference, if there is similarity between the content of both tables, forgetting will be more. There can be more of forgetting due to the excess of interpolated activities, the excess of interpolated learning, excess of time in presenting the interpolated learning and in the period of retaining -rest the excess of activation, because these factors interfere in retaining power and recalling.

We can conclude from the above description that there is pro-active interference in the remembrance of the activation of interpolated activities. In this relation the thoughts of M.S.Chauhan will be appropriate example –

“Interference between the item of the original and interpolated list at the time of the recall is an important variable influencing the amount of retro-active inhibition.”

The theory of interference, in the explanation of forgetfulness, has been considered by many psychologists. Although some psychologists as, Asgood etc, do not agree with this theory, because according to their consideration, the quantity of interference cannot be measured, only it can be observed and felt, yet the extensiveness of the theory of interference is capable in explaining the concept of forgetting, because many experiments have been done in the perspective of this theory in the laboratory and are also being done in the present.

**Notes**

**3. Theory of Retrieval Failure** – The opinion delivered in this theory is that there is no stable prospect of forgetting, but unstable. After learning some content, during the time of its recall student searches it in his memory treasure. He tries to recall it. After getting success in this effort his memory is activated, but after failing his forgetfulness is activated. Hence the condition of failure in recalling is forgetfulness. Student takes time recalling of memory, puts stress on mind and blows his forehead, all these activities are done for succeeding in the efforts of recalling. We can say that forgetfulness is not losing the memory rather it is failing to bring it on the mental screen. Sometimes it is felt that the content is on the mental screen but it is in some foggy stage, but it does not adopt the nature of retrieval. After doing effort success can be gained in recalling. Sometimes any content can be recalled in a flow without any effort, as that it is put on the tip on the tongue. An unconscious power works in the recalling and retaining in the form of forgetting and memory, which is not known, so the reason of forgetting is unconscious and unknown. Consequently externally the condition of failure in recalling is forgetting, either it is stable or unstable.

**Self Assessment**

Fill in the blanks:

1. The success in the process is obtained after the solution of the reason of .....
2. Ebbinghaus has said the forgetting .....
3. According to Freud tragic experiences are forgotten in ..... after being repressed.
4. Most of the psychologists have considered that in forgetting, there is a type of ..... activation.

**4. Motivational Theory** – This theory is also called the theory of repression. Freud has mentioned the effect of motivation in the relation of forgetting. This motivation is repression. Repressive activities produce such activities in a person, by which, man is inspired for forgetting the event and any subject. A man is learnt to neglect the especial-memory with it, so with the effort of negligence there is decay in the retention power and there is forgetting after being unable to come over obstacles in recalling. Unconscious mind is activated in it, which is related to the memory of suffering, pain and unsuspecting. Man is filled with the fear of that memory, so memory does not want its recall. The effect of the motivation falls upon the both forgetting and memory.

The absence of motivation is also another cause of forgetting. In the educational situation it is seen that students forget the lesson of last classes and make more efforts in the remembering of the lesson of present class. They get more success in the recalling of the content of present class in comparison of the recalling of the content of the last class. Mr. **Zeigarnik** did an experiment in this relation, in which he found students are more motivated towards the incomplete work than complete work. "The explanation of recalling incomplete task, their motivation was satisfied and in the case of incomplete tasks, the attraction of those tasks they were unable to finish main."

**5. Theory of Consolidation** – This theory is related for doing interaction, or keeping incomplete in the arrangement of well organized and mutual memory. In such condition we do not get success in recalling. There is the interference of one memory trace by others and the domination of retention on other is the cause of forgetting. As there is a limited period for making cement strong, if it is interacted within this period, it cannot be consolidated. So some time is given for it, similarly there is a retention period for retaining the content, in which memory get strength, in this period the effect of interference by creating efforts of other retention is seen which can not be recalled retention. This is forgetting. This theory of forgetting is considered incomplete and unsatisfied, because it represents the partial form of forgetting.

It can be known by the looking at the above theories that there are many reasons of forgetting. Many theories of forgetting were delivered due to giving importance to different reasons. But in the absence of completeness, incompleteness is seen in each of the theories. We can say in

the comparative way that the theory of interference is logical and appropriate, because it has a psychological basis, and experiments are doing in the laboratory on the basis of this theory after explaining the forgetting.

Notes

### 18.4 Methods of Minimizing Forgetfulness

Psychologist **Munn** has presented opinion for minimizing forgetfulness. Here they have been presenting in short—

- (1) There should be a desire of remembering for learning anything.
- (2) It is necessary to pay attention for remembering.
- (3) Memory – talent should be used for remembering.
- (4) Association should be established between the experienced and learnt things with other things.

Besides the above things, forgetting can be resolved by the memory- training.

### 18.5 Educational Importance of Memory and Forgetting

**The Importance of Memory**—In the process of education, for learning along with memory process forgetting also has an important place. The different methods of remembering have already been described. The utility and importance of these methods is that easier methods are known to students for remembering and time and work are saved in remembering any subject. Teacher should pay attention on the following things for memory –training, as, providing inspiration, thought association and pay attention to the learning rule, using the methods of remembering etc.

**The Importance of Forgetting** – Psychologists have done many experiments on the process of forgetting. **Collins and Drever** have expressed their opinions on the importance of forgetting—“It is true that forgetting is the opposite of remembering, but from a practical point of view forgetting is almost as useful as remembering.”

Following concepts are presented related to importance and utility of forgetting in education.

- (1) Students see, hear and learn many things in the school, but many things are not important, so it proper to forget them. The memory-field of student is limited, so it is necessary to forget old and useless things for learning new things. It is the statement from **Woodworth**—“Learning new things interferes in the remembering of old thing and the memory of old thing interferes in the learning of new things’. Hence the work of learning is completed properly with the ability of maintaining balance between memory and forgetfulness.
- (2) New experiences are collected in place of old experiences by forgetting. If the memory traces of all things are imprinted in the memory of child, his opinion and received experiences are scattered. So it is necessary to forget some things for providing organized aspect to thoughts. The concept of **Stuart and Oakden** in this relation is—“If we want arrangement and force in our opinion, forgetting is compulsive for us.”
- (3) Child sometime gets tragic after bad experience in the society and school, so forgetting is compulsory for the bad experiences, because child’s education and development can be affected by it.
- (4) Forgetting is useful for improvement.

It is explained from the above things that along with the memory , forgetting is also important and useful in the education of child.

Notes

### 18.6 Summary

- Memory specially depends on the process of learning and retention. Forgetting means failure in recalling and retaining of the learnt things.
- It is also necessary to study forgetfulness, because forgetting is because of memory. Forgetting makes mind free from the unnecessary and useless things and helps in acquiring new, necessary and worthy things.
- The concept of Psychologist Munn – “Forgetting, like memory, is a necessary aspect of learning process, forget incorrect responses while we acquire correct ones.”
- In order to get success in the learning process, it is necessary to resolve the causes of forgetfulness. Forgetfulness is such a mental process, by which we are unable in bringing learnt things, experience and thought on our conscious level, means retained experiences cannot be recalled. In forgetfulness, past acquired experiences, which are marked as the memory traces on the mental screen, man finds himself unable in recalling or recognizing them.
- The causes of forgetfulness can be classified between two classes – (a) Theoretical (b) General.
- In fact Psychologists have presented the theories of forgetfulness for presenting the extended basis of the causes of forgetfulness. So the theory of forgetfulness was delivered, that it may be protected from the bad effect of forgetfulness and for making learning effective.
- The theories of forgetfulness are following – (1) Theory of Trace Decay (2) Theory of Interference (3) Theory of Retrieval failure (4) Motivational Theory (5) Theory of Consolidation
- In the process of education, for learning along with memory process forgetting also has an important place.
- Teacher should pay attention on the following things for memory – training, as, providing inspiration, thought association and pay attention to the learning rule, using the methods of remembering etc.
- Collins and Drever have expressed their opinions on the importance of forgetting – “It is true that forgetting is the opposite of remembering, but from a practical point of view forgetting is almost as useful as remembering.”

### 18.7 Keywords

1. **Interference** – Interaction
2. **Proactive** – Represented,

### 18.8 Review Questions

1. Explain in detail the nature of forgetfulness.
2. Throw light on the causes of forgetfulness.
3. Explain the theories of forgetfulness.
4. Explain the educational importance of ‘memory’ and ‘forgetfulness’.

### **Answers: Self-Assessment**

1. Forget Fulness
2. Passive Mental Process
3. Unconscious Mind
4. Interference

## 18.9 Further Readings

Notes



Books

1. Educational Psychology – *S.H. Sinha and Rachna Sharma, Atlantic publication, New Delhi.*
2. Development of Learner and Educational Learning Process – *A.K. Verma, Hindi Book Centre, New Delhi.*
3. Education Psychology – *S.K. Mangal, PHI Learning Pvt. Ltd., New Delhi.*
4. The Information and Importance of Education in the Children – *Seema Chopra, Hindi Book Center, New Delhi.*

## Notes

## Unit-19: Nature, Types and Development of Personality

### CONTENTS

Objectives

Introduction

19.1 Meaning and Nature of Personality

19.2 Types of Personality

19.3 Summary

19.4 Keywords

19.5 Review Questions

19.6 Further Readings

### Objectives

After the study of this unit, the students will be able to –

- Understand the meaning and nature of personality.
- Know the types of personality.

### Introduction

Generally personality means the external aspects, color and physical built. Often, we hear in the daily life that the personality of that man is very good, effective or bad. The meaning of good personality is that the physical appearance of that person is beautiful, he is healthy and soft spoken, he is good natured and his conduct is good and he easily attracts others. Undoubtedly these virtues are the characteristics of good personality, but this is only one aspect of personality. From the psychological point of view, the meaning of personality is something else. Personality is the mirror of whole behavior. Personality is expressed by thinking, behavioral activities and one's movements. The conduct and behavior of a man is the mixture of physical, mental, emotional and social virtues, in which oneness and consolidation is found. Thus personality is the entire virtue of the behavior of a man. All behavior of a man is for the adjusting with the society. In the social circle of each man, due to his special personality, some differences are found in his behaving pattern. Whatever type of behavior he does for adjusting himself with the social surroundings that makes his personality. The behavior of a man is affected by his internal feelings and external environment. According to some people, there is no special difference between conduct and personality. According to Woodworth – "the indication

of character is towards that character, which can be called good or bad, which is success or failure in adopting the accepted ideals by the society. The indication of the personality is towards that behavior, which is neither good nor bad, but other persons feels it interesting or uninteresting and which makes the conditions favorable or unfavorable among his companions. The difference between character and personality is not explained by this statement. So according to scientists this difference can be neglected. What is conduct? What are the characteristics of conduct? These things have been mentioned in the previous chapter. Higher characteristic have important place in the personality development, so in the daily life it will not be practical to consider conduct different from personality. It is necessary to study the opinions of different psychologists for understanding the nature of personality clearly. In the present chapter the meaning and definition of personality, the characteristics of personality, factors influencing the personality along with organized personality, the light will be thrown on the personality tests as well.

## Notes



**Notes** From the psychological point of view the meaning of personality is different. Personality is the entire form of the whole behavior of man.

### 19.1 Meaning and Nature of Personality

Many opinions are famous related to word 'personality'. In the common language the meaning of personality is understood by external aspects, but psychologists have given its meaning under a new light—

**(1) Verbal meaning**—'Vyaktitva' is the Hindi translation of the word 'personality'. This word has been taken from the Latin word 'Persona' which means outfits, wearing which, the character of the drama, during the time of play, used to change into indifferent roles. In the beginning, the meaning of this word was used as a cover, thus word personality indicates towards the external virtues.

**(2) Meaning from general point of view**—The meaning of common people's personality is, the external aspects and those virtues by which he attracts others toward himself and after influencing others, wins over them.

**(3) Meaning from the practical point of view**—"A man's personality is the total picture of his organized behavior."  
—Deshiell

**(4) Meaning from the philosophical point of view**—personality is the other name of spiritual knowledge; it is the ideal of completeness.

**(5) Meaning from the social point of view**—On the basis of sociology, the definition of personality has been given in this way-

"Personality is the organization of those all factors by which a man gains some place in the society; so we can call personality a social flow."

**(6) Meaning from the psychological point of view**—from this point of view, in the explanation of personality, importance has been given to the environment and heredity. It seem after explaining personality in the psychological way, whatever internal and external qualities, abilities and characteristics are in a man, personality is the integrated form of all of them. Whichever virtues, capabilities and strengths are conceived by a man from birth, they continue to develop by and by. A man, in his developing period, on the basis of his innate strength, does activity and reaction for the adjustment with the society, consequently he gains some special abilities, habits, interests, and attitudes. In the effort of establishing adjustment with the environment, his innate gained virtues are purified and increased, so personality is also called '**Dynamic Organization**'.

**Notes**

The aim of education is the all round development of personality. Psychological and educational intimate relationship. Therefore, it is necessary to know the definitions of personality provided by psychologists –

(a) **Biesanj & Biesanj** – “Personality is the organization of person’s habits, attitudes and traits and arises from the inter-play of Biological, social and cultural factors.”

(b) **Munn** – “Personality maybe defined as the most of the behavior, interests, attitudes, capacities, abilities and aptitudes.”

(c) **Allport** – “Personality is the dynamic organization within the individual of those psychophysical systems that determine his unique adjustment to his environment.”

(d) **Drever** – “The word personality is used for the dynamic organization of well organized form of those physical, mental, moral and social virtues of individual, by which he deals with others in his social life.”

## 19.2 Types of Personality

It is important to know the types of personalities for knowing the diversities related to personality. Different Psychologists have classified the personality on the basis of different attitudes. Generally from the following points of view the kinds of personality have been divided-

1. Constitution Viewpoint
2. Sociological Viewpoint
3. Psychological Viewpoint

(1) **Constitution Viewpoint** – German psychologist Kreshmer has made the following types on the basis of constitution.

(a) **Asthenic** – This type of man is thin and lean. His head is long, arms are slim, chest is small and limbs are long and slim. This type of man does not like to hear his criticism, but likes to criticize others.

(b) **Athletic** – This type’s individual is strong and healthy. His chest is wide, swelling and strong arms and strong muscles. They can adjust with other according to wish.

(c) **Pyknic** – This type man is short height, circular, and fatty. He is fond of comfort and is practical.

(d) **Dysplastic** – The mixture of above three types is found in it. The body of this type’s man is simple.

The famous psychologist of America ‘**Sheldon**’ has divided the personality on the basis of physical shape –

(a) **Endomorphic** – This type of man is more fat, spherical, soft and has concrete body. His digestive parts are more developed. He is fond of food. He is fond of comfort, fast in sleeping, fond of love, fond of entertainment, gentle, wise, tolerant and soon gets worried.

(b) **Mesomorphic** – These type of men have healthy and well organized body. They have more strength and energy. They are adventurous, active and hard working.

(c) **Ectomorphic** – Such men have lean, soft and weak body. They are hesitant, less talkative, isolated, patient and full of emotions.

Psychologist **Warner** have told many types of men from the physical health and development point of view – (a) Health (b) Incomplete (c) Undeveloped (d) Handicapped (e) nerve patient (f) backward and dull minded (g) lazy (h) epilepsy (i) powerful.

Psychologist **Canon** has said the types of personality on the basis of inner excretion gland. The development of man is affected much by glands, by which personality differences are found –

(a) **Thyroid Gland** – The excretion through this gland is called Thyroxin. Physical and mental development is effected by it. If this gland is not developed properly among the men, they are dull

minded, tiny and lean. They are lazy, worried, depressed and disappointed. When this gland works properly, man is always cheerful and his health is proper.

**(b) Pituitary Gland** – Because of the more excretion of this gland, body becomes long, if there is less excretion, the body becomes tiny or body is not developed properly. If this gland works properly, man is cheerful, peaceful, patient and physically and mentally tolerant.

**(c) Adrenal Gland** – When this gland developed more, the nature of man is quarrelsome and industrious. They are developed before time.

Thus the more and less excretion of gland makes the personality of man uncommon. Human nature depends upon the activities of these glands. So we can say that these glands also decide the personality.

According to Indian Ayurvedic there are three kinds of men –

**(a) Phlegmatic** – These people are fatty, peaceful and hardworking.

**(b) Painstaking** – These are lean, working and fickle minded people.

**(c) Rheumatics** – These people are neither fatty nor lean, they have medium body but they are irritated.

It is the belief of Athenians that there are four kinds of men on the basis of four gland found in the body of the men –

**(a) Phlegmatic** – these people are peaceful, lean and peaceful.

**(b) Melancholic** – These people are pessimistic.

**(c) Choleric** – these people are soon aggressive.

**(d) Sanguine** – These people are optimistic, highly ambitious, happy and of hard working nature.

**(2) From the Sociological point of view – Psychologist Spranger** has given the following kinds of personality on the basis of social feelings and work –

**(a) Theoretical** – This kinds of man forces more on the theory of man. Philosophical, scientific, social reformers come in this category.

**(b) Economic** – This kinds of man evaluates everything from the economical point of view. Traders are come in this category.

**(c) Religious** – These people have faith in god and spirituality, as, saint, sage, yogi, kind-hearted and religious men.

**(d) Political** – These people have faith in the politics and power, this type of men have a desire of dominating others. They take interest in political works, as, leaders

**(e) Social** – These types people have more social virtues. They are interested in social-welfare.

**(f) Aesthetic** – These types of people are devotees of art and beauty and watch every thing from the aesthetic point of view, as-artists, painters, etc.

**(3) Psychological point view** – Psychologists have told the two basis of personality on the basis of human nature –

**Psychological Age:** on the basis of human nature are described by two major personality –

**(i) Introvert Personality** – Those people have this types of personality, whose nature, habits and virtues are not expressed externally. These people are self centered and lost in themselves, they have no worry of outer world. Their other qualities are following –

(a) These people are less talkative.

(b) They are soon confused.

(c) They feel complication in expressing their thought because of hesitant nature.

(d) They are worried, keep themselves limited in their thought.

(e) They are full of anxiety, doubt and carefulness.

**Notes**

- (f) They have true sense of duty.
  - (g) They do every work carefully.
  - (h) They are good author, but not good orator.
  - (i) They are studious and thoughtful, often such men are the book licker and they become scientist, philosopher and researcher after some time.
  - (j) They do not like useless laughing, criticism and useless talking.
- (ii) Extrovert Personality**—This type of people take interest in the outer world, their qualities are followings:
- (a) These people take interest in social life, always aware for adjustment in the society. They are optimistic and according to situation they manage themselves.
  - (b) They are expert in the practical life, they have opportunistic nature, and soon they become popular. This type of man becomes mostly social, political or trader, leader, actor and player etc.
  - (c) They influence others to do their work.
  - (d) They are free from worries; their purpose is to pass a joyful life. They remain cheerful in the present and do not worry about future.
  - (e) They have more sense of self exposure. They always try to influence others by their movement, outfits and abilities.



*Did u know?* According to psychologists, a very few men have the type of personality, which is completely introvert or extrovert. A lot of people have the mixture of both the virtues. These people are called Ambivert.

**Ambivert Personality**—This type man can bring introvert virtues in his thinking and he can give place to extrovert virtues as a work. For example- a man can be a good writer and speaker, a man exposes social behavior, but he does not want to do any work alone. The man of Ambivert personality sees the benefit of self and society.

**(B) Freud**, who was a famous psychoanalysis, has said the following three types of personality—

**(1) Oral Erotic**—According to Freud, an infant wants to get sexual pleasure in his mouth means sex dwells in the mouth in the infancy, he sucks, bites, licks for getting the pleasure of sex. And he brings things towards his mouth. Moving ahead in the activities of getting this pleasure, personality is seen dividing between two parts.

**(a) Oral Passive**—The children, in which oral passive types of personality is developed. They are optimist, immature, depended, always involved in their thoughts.

**(b) Oral Sadistic**—The children in which Oral sadistic types of personality is developed, they are pessimistic, aggressive, doing uncouth behavior toward others and have doubtful nature.

**(2) Anal related**—Child's anal is the second basis or stage of getting sexual pleasure. Children are engrossed with the anal related activities at this level; in this stage he gets sexual pleasure by doing stool. Obsessions, misery, lover of rules and management, etc virtues are developed by this type of activity.

**(3) Phallic**—This is the third level of the personality development, which is called the level of phallic development. Children touch their phallic at this level, these types of activities work in the adolescent. The especial characteristics of personality are developed inspiring by the tendency of these activities, by which adolescent behave to attract others and by exposing self love.



**Task** What do you understand by Ambivert personality?

Notes

(c) **Allport** has classified the personality on the basis of the virtues of man. According to him virtues have realistic and strong existence. Allport has defined the virtues in the following way –

“A trait is a generalized and focalized neurophysic system with the capacity to render many stimuli functionally equivalent and to innitiet guide consistent forms of adaptive and expressive behavior.”

According to Allport, the nature of virtues is general and stable. He has divided all the human virtues into three parts –

(i) **Cordinal trait** – the traits which are in men in more quantity, those are cordinal traits, as, devout virtues towards the achievement. If this trait is presented in the man as a cordinal trait, it will be presented in him throughout life.

(ii) **Central trait** – central traits are less cordinal in comparison of cordinal traits. Yet they are generalized sufficiently, means their central tendency is often stable.

(iii) **Secondary dispositions** – the secondary dispositions of men are especially limited traits and are presented as attitudes. Attitudes quantitatively are inclined towards the positive and negative pole and it can be related to the learning.

### Self Assessment

Put the sign of right (✓) and wrong (×) in front of the given statements:

1. German psychologist Kreshmer has said the four types of body structure. As, Asthenic, Athletic, Pyknic, Dysplastic.
2. Freud has described the five types of personality.
3. Allport has classified the personality on the basis of the external composure.
4. Psychologist Yung has said the two types of personality on the basis of nature.
5. Extrovert man takes interest in the society.

(d) **Thorndike** has divided the men on the basis of rumination and imagination –

(i) **Minute thinker** – These types of men before doing work, ruminate about the cause and effect of the work properly. They take interest in the math, science, philosophy, and logic.

(ii) **Concept thinker** – This type of a man has to take help of the words, digits, symbols and signs for thinking, as mathematician, Geologist.

(iii) **Subtle thinker** – They are mostly dependent on the active activities and according to them, success can be obtained by the medium of subtle things.

(iv) **Terman** has tried to know the information on the personality difference on the basis of knowledge quotient. Classification of men, on the basis of knowledge quotient, is following –

(a) Genius (b) Highly intelligent (c) Good intelligence (d) Common intelligence (e) dull minded (f) fool (g) Idiot.

(e) **Catell** has given the two types of personality –

(i) **Surgent** – these type of men are extrovert, pleasing natured, friendly, entertainer, opportunist. They have more sense of exposure and more sense of becoming leader of the society.

(ii) **Desurgent** – these types of men are introvert. The qualities of the introverts are found in them.

**Notes**

(f) **Stephenson**, on the basis of division of Yung, divided the personality of man in to two parts.

(i) **Preserverator** – After accomplishing any work if it still moves in the mind, or it influences the mind for a long time, this process is called preservation. Whoever are affected by this process, they are called preserverator. This type of man is introvert.

(ii) **Non-preserverator** – The men whose minds are not affected by the work for a long time, they are called non- preserverator. These types of men are extrovert .

(g) In this way Indian teachers and psychologists have also mentioned the three types of men-

(i) **Royal** – Royal virtues operate in them. Fickleness, excitement, and activeness are found in them.

(ii) **Genuineness** – They are mild, peaceful and religious natured.

(iii) **Ignorant person** – The coordination of ignorant qualities is found in them. They are full of anger, quarrel, laziness and atheist.

### 19.3 Summary

- Generally personality means the external aspects, color and physical built. Often, we hear in the daily life that the personality of that man is very good, effective or bad. The meaning of good personality is that the physical appearance of that person is beautiful, he is healthy and soft spoken, he is good natured and his conduct is good and he easily attracts others. Undoubtedly these virtues are the characteristics of good personality, but this is only one aspect of personality. From the psychological point of view, the meaning of personality is something else. Personality is the mirror of whole behavior. Personality is expressed by thinking, behavioral activities and one's movements. The conduct and behavior of a man is the mixture of physical, mental, emotional and social virtues, in which oneness and consolidation is found. Thus personality is the entire virtue of the behavior of a man.
- From the philosophical point of view- personality is the other name of spiritual knowledge; it is the ideal of completeness.
- **From the psychological point of view** – from this point of view, in the explanation of personality, importance has been given to the environment and heredity. It seem after explaining personality in the psychological way, whatever internal and external qualities, abilities and characteristics are in a man, personality is the integrated form of all of them. Whichever virtues, capabilities and strengths are conceived by a man from birth, they continue to develop by and by. A man, in his developing period, on the basis of his innate strength, does activity and reaction for the adjustment with the society, consequently he gains some special abilities, habits, interests, and attitudes. In the effort of establishing adjustment with the environment, his innate gained virtues are purified and increased, so personality is also called '**Dynamic Organization**'.
- It is important to know the types of personalities for knowing the diversities related to personality. Different Psychologists have classified the personality on the basis of different attitudes. Generally from the following points of view the kinds of personality have been divided. 1. Constitution Viewpoint, 2. Sociological Viewpoint, 3. Psychological Viewpoint.

### 19.4 Keywords

1. **Asthenic** – lean, weak.
2. **Ambivert** – both of the sides

### 19.5 Review Questions

Notes

1. In the context of Education-Psychology, explain the meaning and nature of personality.
2. Explain the different types of personality.

### Answers: Self-Assessment

(1) (✓)

(2) (×)

(3) (×)

(4) (✓)

(5) (✓)

### 19.6 Further Readings



Books

1. Psychology – *Dr. Saryu Prasad, Agra Book Store, Agra.*
2. Development of Learner and Educational Learning Process – *A.K. Verma, Hindi Book Centre, New Delhi.*
3. Psychology – the study of human behavior – *Brij Kumar Mishra, PHI Learning Pvt. Ltd., New Delhi.*
4. Education Psychology – *S.K. Mangal, PHI Learning Pvt. Ltd., New Delhi.*

## Notes

## Unit-20: Measurement of Personality

### CONTENTS

Objectives

Introduction

20.1 Methods of Assessment of Personality

20.2 Importance of Personality Tests

20.3 Summary

20.4 Keywords

20.5 Review Questions

20.6 Further Readings

### Objectives

After the study of this unit, the students will be able to –

- Understand the methods of the assessment of personality.
- Understand the importance of personality test.

### Introduction

According to the opinion of psychologists, personality has been called the collection of those virtues and traits, by which diversity is seen in different people. In the modern education, special importance has been given to personality differences. It is necessary for students to know the characteristics of personality for giving educational, occupational and personal direction, hence in the process of education; the importance of the evaluation of the personality is extended. Many methods and tests are used for the measurement of personality. We will think over some of the important methods and tests here.

### 20.1 Methods of Assessment of Personality

The methods and tests, that are used for assessment of personality, are following –

**1. Subjective Method** – In this method, the investigation of personality is done either by self examination or with the help of a familiar. Some following methods are used in it –

- (a) Case History Method
- (b) Questionnaire Method
- (c) Interview Method
- (d) Autobiography or Self History Method

**2. Objective Method** – The external conduct of man is studied under this kind of methods. These are following –

- (a) Controlled Observation Method
- (b) Rating Scale Method
- (c) Sociometric Method
- (d) Physiological Test

**3. Projective Method** – Projective Method means the method, in which a stimulating situation is presented before student, in which he sees his concepts, feelings, tendency and emotions in others and expresses his thoughts which are collected in his unconscious mind.



*Did u know?* Psychoanalysis calls this method a defence mechanism, in which a man expresses his repressed desires which are collected in the unconscious mind for some reason, by converting them into new ones.

As the irritation of the unconscious mind, is expressed by the scolding of others. In the projective method, student is asked to project his inner arising thoughts by the medium of external things. By the projective method, the personality related aspects are known, which are unknown to man. The popular projective methods are following –

- (a) Thematic Apperception Test or T.A.T
- (b) Children Apperception Test or C.A.T
- (c) Rorchach Ink Blot Test
- (d) Sentence and Story completion Test

**4. Psycho-Analytic Method** – Two methods come under this –

- (a) Free word Association Test
- (b) Dream Analysis

Above subjective and objective methods are introduced in short –

**1. Case History Method** – In this method, information related to man's physical health, physical characteristics, personality differences, social relations and family history etc are collected. This information is related to man's past, present and further coming possibilities. In this method, learner gets the information with the help of the different sources such as, parents, relatives, friends, neighbors and doctor. This method is used often for the prevention of psychological disease.

**2. Questionnaire Method** – A list of questions is prepared related to the different virtues of personality in this method, in which man has to reply in writing 'yes' or 'no'. This method is also called 'Paper Pencil Test'. With the help of this questionnaire, the characteristics and virtues of men as- interest, disinterest, confidence, social awareness, introvert tendency, tendency of dependence etc are tested.

The four main types of these questionnaires are following –

**Notes**

(i) **Closed Questionnaire** – ‘Yes’ or ‘No’ is written against of each question in it. Student has to reply the questions by ticking one of them, as –

- (a) Do you get puzzled on a trivial matter? Yes/No
- (b) Do you like to meet others? Yes/No
- (c) Do you want to remain behind on the social occasions? Yes/No

(ii) **Open Questionnaire** – The complete answer of the question has to be written in this questionnaire. as, What should be the motives of Indian democracy?

(iii) **Pictorial Questionnaire** – Some questions are presented in this questionnaire. Student has to reply the questions by putting a tick on different pictures.

(iv) **Mixed Questionnaire** – There is a mixture of above questionnaires in this questionnaire.

**3. Interview Method** – In this method, interviewer gets some important information from the student, which is helpful in understanding the characteristics related to his personality. This method is mostly used for the selection of government jobs.

**4. Autobiography or Self History Method** – In this method, examiner gives a topic to the student related to personality and tells him to write his personal history, reading it examiner expresses his thoughts that correspond to that man.

**5. Controlled Observation Method** – This method is used in the controlled situation of the psychological laboratory. Examiner studies the different activities and conduct and behavior of the students in it. On the basis of this, the characteristics of a student are known.

**6. Rating Scale Method** – In this method, the evaluation of the virtues related to personality is done by the man himself or the persons connected to him, that they express their opinion to him. Whichever virtue has to be tested, for the group division of that virtue, a line is equally divided among, 3, 5, 7 parts, whichever group gets the highest marks, student is considered to be like that, as –

Is he an honest child?

Quite honest	Honest	Average	Dishonest	Quite dishonest
--------------	--------	---------	-----------	-----------------

Do you get trouble on trivial matter?

Always	Many times	Sometimes	Few times	Never
--------	------------	-----------	-----------	-------

Whatever answer student wants to give, he can put sign on that.

**7. Sociological Method** – the social virtues of student are tested by this method, this type of questions are asked in it –

- (a) Do you want to make your social circle limited to some special people? Yes/No
- (b) Do you like to become leader or beginner in the community work? Yes/No

**8. Physical Test** – In this method with the help of different instrument, the physical traits of special student are studied.

1. **Plenthisomograph** – Blood pressure can be known through this instrument.
2. **Electro Cardiograph** – Heartbeats can be measured with the help of this instrument.
3. **Sphygmograph** – The movement of nerves system can be found with the help of this instrument.
4. **Pneumograph** – The movement of breathing can be measured with the help of this. The process of breathing is studied by it.
5. **Psycho-Galvanometer** – The changes that happens in the variation of skin are tested with the help of this instrument. In the emotional state, the electronic factors which found on the skin are increased or decreased, as, due to fear, feeling the thrill, feeling the trouble etc. in this way with the help of this instrument, the emotional changes that happen in man are understood. With the help of above instruments, the psychical traits of man his courage, bravery, devotion, timidity and Culprit tendency can be found out.

**9. Thematic Apperception Test – (T.A.T)** –Psychologist Murrey and Morgan had created this test. This is also called T.A.T. The traits of man are tested by this. 30 pictures are used in this test. In it 10 pictures are for women, 10 pictures for men, 10 pictures are for children. Generally last 10 pictures are used. In the first few pictures, which things are seen, are following –

1. A child playing on violin.
2. A girl who has some books in her hand, another woman staring toward her and a farmer doing work in the field at a distance.
3. On the right elbow, holding the forehead, a boy lying on the floor who has a gun.
4. Bowing down the head, putting the right hand on the head and holding the door with left hand.

In this way, in the other picture some events are sketched, in the beginning of the exam, examiner gives the following indications to the student –

1. Who are these people?
2. What happened in the beginning, on the basis of which his event is shown in the picture?
3. What is happening now?
4. What are these people thinking? What kind of feelings is arising in their mind? What will be its end?

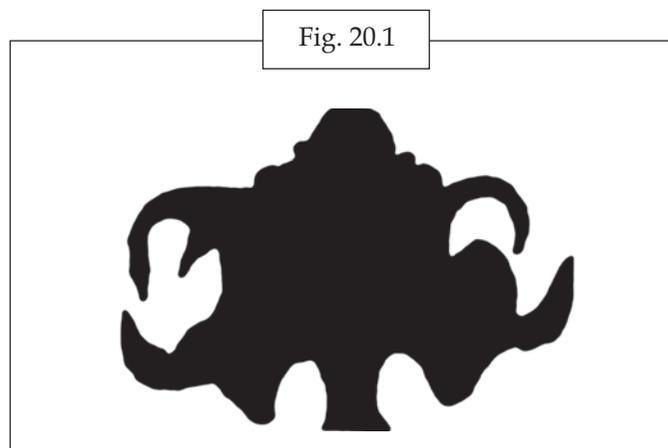
Five minutes are given to complete the story. A man expresses his natural desires, emotions, thoughts, feelings and thoughts in these stories. This can be his real story. Examiner analyzes these stories and finds out the traits of man on the basis of it.

**10. Children Apperception Test** –This test is used for testing personality arrangement of the children. 10 pictures are used in it. These pictures are related to some animals, which are seen behaving like man. The information on different interests, activities, problems of children can be obtained by this test.

**11. Rorschach Ink blot test –Herman Rorschach**, The famous Psychologist of Switzerland invented this test. In this test 10 proofed ink blotted cards are used, five are quite black among them. Two are black and red; more colors are mixed in three cards.

**Test Method** – Examiner needs special training for using this test, before using the test; student is given some indications –

Different things are seen to different people in it, these blots are shown to you one by one. Watch carefully to each of the cards and tell me, what you see in it? You may see it as long as you want to see it, but say everything whatever you see in it, when you see it properly, return to me, showing one blot “What it can be?”



**Notes**

After giving indication these cards are shown to students one by one. After seeing these blots, which type reaction student does, examiner notices his reaction.



**Task** After seeing this picture (20.1) say what are you seeing in it?

**Analysis** – the analysis of the answer of student is done on the basis of the four things –

1. **Location** – it is seen in it that student reacts to any special part of it or the whole.
2. **Quality** – It is seen in it that his reaction is according to the curvature in it or according to the movement or different colors.
3. **Content** – it is seen that student sees in it the figure of man or animal or other things or any landscape.

**Self Assessment**

Fill in the blanks:

1. In ..... method, personality is tested by examiner or his relatives.
2. In the objective method of personality test, the ..... of man are studied.
3. By the Sociometric method, the ..... of man is tested.
4. Rorchach test is also called ..... test.

4. **Time** – it is seen how much time student took in looking at each blot.

It is the opinion of the psychologists that the conscious and unconscious mind of man can be tested on the basis of above analysis. By this test the social awareness, emotional reaction, creativeness, the development of imagination power, adjusting capacity and personality related characteristics of man can be found out.

**12. Sentence Completion or Story Completion Test** – In this test, some incomplete story and sentences are presented in front of the student. He expresses his desires and emotions in these sentences and stories by the words and thoughts which have arisen in his mind and his personality can be studied on the basis of it.

**13. Free Words Association Test** – The internal condition of man can be known by this test. In this test 50 to 100 selected words are stimulating words. Examiner says one word in front of each student, as, house, water and sweet etc. He is encouraged for expressing all the words and thoughts whatever comes in his mind related to that word. Examiner continues to write the spoken words, each word, and the 'reaction period' on each word of student. And at last, on the basis of given responses, personality assessment is done.

**14. Dream-Analysis** – This method is used for doing psychiatry. In this method, a man is asked to write or express his dream after remembering it. In these dreams the knowledge of desires and feelings of unconscious mind of a man can be obtained. There are some complications in this method because a man cannot remember his dream properly. On the basis of the responses given by the man, it is tried to resolve his problem.

**20.2 Importance of Personality Tests**

Whatever works psychologists have done in the direction of personality tests, according to it many important methods have been used for the measurement of personality. Personality assessment is needed in the different working fields. The use of Personality- tests are done in the selection of the

students, army, and employees of different services and for the prevention of mental patient and for the solution and prevention of personal problem. With the help of these tests, after getting the information of interest, disinterest, natural virtues, internal condition, social and personal relations, and personality, guidance can be easily given.

Notes



Notes

In the field of education, the importance of personality test is more from both, of teacher's and student's point of view. School life lays deep effect on the personality development of student. Hence after testing his personality, according to his personality differences, his syllabus, teaching method, etc can be managed. After studying personality of student, a teacher can provide help in his personality development.

On the basis of these tests, the causes of different problems of student, as, mental unhealthiness, backwardness, indiscipline can be found out. Thus, from the personality tests, personality related problems can be resolved and prevented.

At last it will be appropriate to say that human personality is so much complicated that it is not easy to do proper measurement of it and to find out the virtues of personality. Thus the methods of personality measurement and tests cannot be called completely valid and reliable. As psychologist Barnan has said, "The testing and assessment of personality is fraught with so many difficulties that even the application of the highest psychological skill cannot be expected to bring about rapid success."

### 20.3 Summary

- It is necessary for students to know the characteristics of personality for giving educational, occupational and personal direction, hence in the process of education; the importance of the evaluation of the personality is extended.
- Many methods and tests are used for the measurement of personality.
  1. Aatmnisht law – it is used under the following methods –
 

(a) Case History Method	(b) Questionnaire Method
(c) Interview Method	(d) Autobiography or Self History Method
  2. Objective Method –
 

(a) Controlled Observation Method	(b) Rating Scale Method
(c) Sociometric Method	(d) Physiological Method
  3. Projective Method –
 

(a) Thematic Apperception Test or T.A.T	(b) Children Apperception Test or C.A.T
(c) Rorchach Ink Blot Test	(d) Sentence and Story completion Test
  4. Psycho-Analytic Method
 

(a) Free word Association Test	(b) Dream Analysis
--------------------------------	--------------------

### 20.4 Keywords

1. **Internal knowledge** – Knowledge of Mind

Notes

### **20.5 Review Questions**

1. Write the subjective methods of personality assessment.
2. Throw light on the objective method of personality assessment.
3. Throw light on the importance of personality tests.

### **Answers: Self-Assessment**

1. Subjective
2. External conduct
3. Social virtues
4. Ink blot

### **20.6 Further Readings**



Books

1. Education Psychology – S.K. Mangal, PHI Learning Pvt. Ltd., New Delhi.
2. Psychology – The study of human behavior-Brij Kumar Mishra, PHI Learning Pvt. Ltd., New Delhi.
3. Psychology – Dr. Saryu Prasad, Agra Book Store, Agra.
4. Development of Learner and Educational Learning Process – A.K. Verma, Hindi Book Centre, New Delhi.

## Unit-21: Creativity

### CONTENTS

Objectives

Introduction

- 21.1 Meaning of Creativity
- 21.2 Elements of Creativity
- 21.3 The Criteria of Creative Personality
- 21.4 Measurement of Creativity
- 21.5 The Construction of a Creativity Test
- 21.6 Some Tests of Creativity
- 21.7 Summary
- 21.8 Keywords
- 21.9 Review Questions
- 21.10 Further Readings

### Objectives

After the study of this unit, the students will be able to–

- Understand the meaning and the elements of Creativity
- Understand the criteria of creative Personality
- Understand the measurement and the test construction process of creativity
- Obtain information about various creative tests.

### Introduction

Everyday there are new inventions in this age of scientific, technological and industrial development. Where there is tireless effort of the scientists behind the majority of these inventions, their creativity has not contributed any less. Earlier it was believed that only writers, poets, painters, musician etc. were only the creative people, however it is now believed that creativity can be expressed in all spheres of human life.

**Notes**

In fact creativity is found in all living beings in the world, some have less of it and some have more. In order to make the human life convenient, to do new inventions and to find solutions of problems, creativity plays an important role.

Creative people are required in today's complex and troublesome world. It has become a need of the nation to look out for creative people in order to have the scientific and technological achievements. Present chapter describes the meaning, and the methods of measuring creativity.



*Notes* After the World War II, psychologists and educationists paid special attention to the credentials of creativity. Rapid scientific, technological, and industrial development and modernization has made human life so complicated and troublesome that, for the solutions of these problems, the need of creativity has begun to be felt in all spheres of life.

## 21.1 Meaning of Creativity

Various psychologists have defined creativity in various ways. Some main definitions of creativity are as follows:

According to **DeHann** and **Havinghurst**, "Creativity is the quality, that provokes a person towards the production of a new and desirable thing. This new thing can be new to the whole society or may be just for the person who produced."

In words of **Dravehel**, "Creativity is that human ability by which he can express any thought or creation."

According to psychologists **Crow & Crow**, "Creativity is a mental process of expressing original outcomes."

In the words of **Cole & Bruce**, "Creativity the ability and the process to understand, express and appreciate the human mind in form of original product."

It is evident from the analysis of above definitions that creativity is primarily related to originality and newness. Creativity aims at the effort of looking at the problems in a new way and finding solution. In other words, creativity is the ability which enables a person to think and reflect in a new way to find a smart solution for any problem. Aside from the popular ways, the ability of working and reflecting in a new way is the creativity.

## 21.2 Elements of Creativity

By looking and analyzing the definitions of creativity, we come to know that creativity could be understood in context of sensibility, curiosity, imagination, originality, searching, flexibility, fluency and elaboration etc. All these synonymous traits of creativity appear in scientific researches, artworks, music, creation, writing and poetry, painting etc creative works. There are four main elements of creativity –

(i) **Fluency** – By fluency we mean the multiple solutions on a problem. Fluency can further be divided into four divisions, Ideational Fluency, Expressional Fluency, Associative Fluency and Word Fluency. In the ideational fluency the free outpouring of ideas is encouraged, like telling the possible titles of a story, the uses of some item, or telling the ways to improve something. In the expressional fluency, the free outpouring of human expressions is encouraged, like making a sentence out of the given four words, or complete the given incomplete sentence. Associative fluency means to establish the association among the given words and things, like write synonyms and antonyms of the given word.

Word fluency is associated with words, like make words of the given suffixes and prefixes. The fluency of any creative test on any item by someone is often expressed by the number of responses over that item. In order to know the fluency score on a test, all fluency marks are added.

(ii) **Flexibility** – Flexibility means the variation in the responses or alternatives on given problem. This tells how much mutually different are the answers or the alternatives from one another that are presented by the person. The three dimensions of flexibility could be – Figural Spontaneous Flexibility, Figural Adaptive Flexibility, and Semantic Spontaneous Flexibility. Figural Spontaneous Flexibility means the flexibility in the solutions of improving any figure or an object. Figural Adaptive Flexibility means the flexibility in the methods of changing the form of an object or a figure into another. Semantic Spontaneous Flexibility means the flexibility in the uses of words or objects. Flexibility can be expressed by a person's different types of responses at any item on the test of creativity. In order to know the flexibility score of any person on a test, his flexibility marks on different items are added.

(iii) **Originality** – Originality means the uncommonness of the responses or alternatives presented by the person. It is observed how much different are the given responses or alternatives from popular responses and alternatives. In other words the originality is primarily related to newness. The person who presents the different alternatives from others is said to be original. Telling the new uses of a thing, writing titles of a story, poetry or an article, forecasting remote outcomes of changes, to discover some new symbols are all examples of originality.

(iv) **Elaboration** – By elaboration we mean the elaborate explanations of given thoughts or emotions, completion or presentation. There are two kinds of elaboration, Semantic Elaboration or Figural Elaboration. In the semantic elaboration, some brief event, process, or work situation could be asked, to be expanded, where as in the Figural Elaboration, a complete and meaningful figure is to be rendered out of incomplete figure or line by adding something.

### 21.3 The Criteria of Creative Personality

Torrance created a list of 84 personality traits of a creative personality after extensively studying the behaviors of many creative people. In the measurement of creativity, these 84 traits of creative personality can play an important role. These eighty four traits are below:

1. Accepts Disorder
2. Adventurous
3. Strong Affection
4. Awareness to Others
5. Attraction to Disorder
6. Attempts Difficult Jobs
7. Constructive Criticism
8. Deep and Conscientious Conventions
9. Altruistic
10. Always Baffled by Something
11. Attracted to Mysterious Discoveries
12. Bashful Outwardly
13. Courageous
14. Defines Conventions of Courtesy
15. Defines Conventions of Health

**Notes**

16. Desire to Excel
17. Determination
18. Differentiated Value-hierarchy
19. Discontented
20. Disturbs Organization
21. Dominant
22. Emotional
23. Emotionally Sensitive
24. Energetic
25. A Fault Finder
26. Does not fear being thought differently
27. Full of Curiosity
28. Appears self-satisfied at times
29. Likes Solitude
30. Feels whole parade is out of step
31. Independence in Judgment
32. Independence in Thinking
33. Individualistic
34. Intuitive
35. Industrious
36. Introversive
37. Lacks business ability
38. Makes Mistakes
39. Never Bored
40. Not hostile or Negativistic
41. Not Popular
42. Oddities of habits
43. Persistent
44. Becomes Preoccupied
45. Preference for Complex Ideas
46. Non-conformity
47. Keeps unusual Hours
48. A questioning ability
49. Radical
50. Receptive to External Stimuli
51. Receptive to Ideas of Others
52. Regresses Occasionally
53. Rejection of Suppression as a mechanism of Impulse control
54. Rejection of Repression

55. Resolute
56. Reserved
57. Self Aware
58. Self Confident
59. Self Sufficient
60. Sense of Humor
61. Sensitive to Beauty
62. Sincere
63. Shuns Power
64. Self Assertive
65. Self Starter
66. Sense of Destiny
67. Not Interested in Small Details
68. Speculative
69. Spirited in Disagreement
70. Strives for distant Goals
71. Stubborn
72. Temperamental
73. Tenacious
74. Tender Emotions
75. Timid
76. Thorough
77. Unconcerned about Power
78. Somewhat Uncultured and Primitive
79. Unsophisticated naïve
80. Unwilling to accept anything on mere say to
81. Visionary
82. Versatile
83. Willing to take risks
84. Somewhat withdrawn and Quiescent

Notes

### 21.4 Measurement of Creativity

Although creativity is a mental ability, yet the measurement of creativity is a complex work in comparison of the measurement of other mental abilities. The creativity comprises of many abilities of doing unique, explicit, wide and complex works. Therefore it is a difficult task to measure the creativity. In fact with help of just one test, the whole creativity of a person cannot be measured at all. That's why **Mc Neil** (1960) suggested that all factors of creativity should be measured with the help of separate tests. This is prerequisite before preparing any test to measure any factor or constituent of creativity, that, this factor or constituent of creativity shall be implicitly and objectively defined. All traits of creativity and the criteria of creative personality have been already described. Hargreaves,



## Notes

score for any person. These scores obtained on any question or total tests are obtained by analyzing the same reaction/reactions in different manners. For instance if a student has given total four reactions over any question of creativity test, then for fluency he may get 4 marks for fluency, 3 for flexibility and 2 for originality. It is evident that the number of responses have been taken into consideration first time while awarding the score, secondly the types of nature of the responses has been observed, and thirdly the uniqueness of the responses has been taken into consideration. The total score of these three score will be the score of the creativity on that question. Surely the creativity score will indicate the Global Creativity of any person over that question. But on the basis of this, we do not get the Fluency, Flexibility or Originality of that person over that question, however various responses are measured in this fashion. Hence selecting the question by analyzing the items with the help of creativity score does seem desirable.

It could be said that even in Acquisition and Intellectual Test only dimensional scores are obtained, which after addition provide the total Acquisition or Intellectual Score. But the nature of these scores so obtained and the score obtained in creativity test is significantly different. In Acquisition or Intellectual tests, the dimensions are created by dividing the content, and any question can come under one dimension only. Student gets only one mark over one question, which only contributes to the score of that dimension. It has no contribution in any other dimension. Obviously, in such a situation, dimensions are mutually independent. On the contrary, under the creativity test, the dimensions, instead of depending on the division of the content, depend on the analysis of the reaction on the basis of various parameters. The responses given over any question provide the scores of all the dimensions. As result by calculating the creativity score by adding the dimensional scores becomes more practically appropriate, however it is unappropriate to accept it for item analysis from the viewpoint of statistics. The item analysis for creativity test shall be to select such questions which are capable of provoking the more and more manifestation of a person's fluency, flexibility and originality. For this, some other distinct specific method shall be followed of item analysis. In other words either a total score shall be obtained for creativity instead of obtaining the distinct scores for fluency, flexibility or originality or item analysis should be done with respect to different dimensional scores. If only the creativity scores are to be obtained, then, item validity and item discrimination could be known from the simple methods, the questions with more item validity and item discrimination could be included in the final blue print of the test.

In order to do the item analysis of the test that cause the fluency, flexibility and originality score of the creativity test, some specific methods shall be used. There could be two options for it. According to the conventional thinking of test creation, under the first option, such questions could be selected by analyzing the items validity and item discrimination for every question which are valid or discriminate with respect to all dimensions. Definitely then we shall find the various item validity or discrimination coefficients (one of each dimension of creativity) for the same question. And item will selected on the basis of these coefficients. This method of computing the item validity or item discrimination by doing the item analysis separately for all dimensions seems unfeasible with respect to time and effort.

By looking at the nature of the dimensions of the creativity test, it could be said the objective of creativity test is to bring out the hidden creativity of a person, so that fluency, flexibility and originality could be measured in his personality. Because the responses given over a question by a person is not true or false, therefore if two people give the same number of responses over the same question, then the score with respect to different dimensions could be different as well as the creativity score. In the same fashion two people can given distinct number of reaction over the same questions and yet there score could be same. In this scenario, as per the writer, the only basis for selecting question while doing the item analysis by establishing item validity and item discrimination, shall be the ability of the questions to invoke the reflection in the applicant with respect to fluency, flexibility or originality. In other words, the question which are more capable of invoking manifestation of creativity with respect to fluency, flexibility and originality, shall be included in the test being developed for the measurement of creativity. Definitely the mean of scores on any question of some large groups of the people over the different dimension of creativity on any question will indicate the ability of that question to invoke manifestation of creativity. The higher mean on any question with respect to fluency, flexibility and originality indicates that this question has been able to invoke the greater manifestation of these dimensions.

Notes



*Did u know?* The measurement of any ability is to measure the individual diversity. Therefore the creativity included such question which may invoke difference in these people.

On any question, the elaboration of the dimensional scores or the standard deviation by people will be the indicators of the ability of discrimination over the different dimension of that item among people. If the standard deviation of dimensional scores is higher, this indicates that the heterogeneity is more in the group over the scores obtained on that dimension. It is evident that more is the standard deviation on the scores of fluency, flexibility and originality over any question means the ability to discriminate people on the basis of these qualities. Hence only the questions that should be included in the creativity test for which the mean various dimensional scores and the standard deviation are higher. These questions shall be able to provoke the creativity of the people in larger extent as well as shall be able to discriminate them over various creative abilities. Hence it could be said as a result that while doing the item analysis for the creativity test, different scores over different dimensions of these questions shall be obtained beforehand. Then the standard deviations shall be calculated for the different dimensions. Thereafter such questions shall be selected for which the standard deviation and the mean deviation over all dimensions are higher.

## 21.6 Some Tests of Creativity

As it is already discussed that many tests have been developed and tested for the measurement of creativity, a brief description has been presented for the knowledge of the readers.

### 1. Guilford and Merrifield Test for College Students

According to Guilford and Merrifield in creative thinking, the abilities of Divergent Production, Transformation, Re-Definition are present. He prepared a test to measure the creativity of the college students, in which he included six main factors:

- (i) Sensitivity towards any problem
- (ii) Flexibility
- (iii) Fluency
- (iv) Originality
- (v) Elaboration
- (vi) Re-definition

### 2. Torrance's Tests of Creative Thinking-TTCT

This series of test prepared by Torrance has two main tests—First, Verbal test which is called thinking creatively with the words, and the other one is, Figural test, which is called thinking creatively with the figures. In this series of test there are four main functions—

- (i) To ask as many questions as possible regarding any question
- (ii) To suggest changes for the improvement of any toy
- (iii) To tell many uses of a simple item
- (iv) To draw a picture around some given curve line and suggest its title

This test awards four different scores, fluency, flexibility, originality and elaboration.

### 3. Passi's Tests of Creativity

This creativity test, developed by Prof. B.K. Passi from Indore 1972, has six sub tests—

- (i) Seeing Problem Test

- (ii) Unusual Uses Test
- (iii) Consequences Test
- (iv) Test of Inquisitiveness
- (v) Square Puzzle Test
- (vi) Blocks Test

Notes

It is evident that this test includes both, verbal and non-verbal tasks. On this test, along with the creativity score we get fourteen dimensional scores as well. However the manual for this test is in English only however test booklets are available in Hindi & English both.



Task

Which test do you think is the most effective covered in this unit, and why?

#### 4. Baqer Mehdi Test of Creative Thinking

This creativity test series, by Baqer Mehdi of Aligarh., has two tests (i) Verbal test of creative thinking (ii) Thinking Creatively with Figures. The first test is a verbal test, there are four main functions that are carried on:

- (i) Consequences Test
- (ii) Unusual uses Test
- (iii) New Relationship Test
- (iv) Product Improvement Test

With the help of this test, the three factors of creativity, namely Fluency, Flexibility, and Originality are measured.

The other test created by Baqer Mehdi which is a non-verbal test, has three main steps –

- (i) Draw a picture
- (ii) Complete picture and suggest title
- (iii) Triangular and Elliptical shapes

This test helps in measuring the two main factors of creativity, Elaboration and Originality.

### 21.7 Summary

- Everyday there are new inventions in this age of scientific, technological and industrial development. Where there is tireless effort of the scientists behind the majority of these inventions, their creativity has not contributed any less. Earlier it was believed that only writers, poets, painters, musician etc. were only the creative people, however it is now believed that creativity can be expressed in all spheres of human life. In fact creativity is found in all living beings in the world, some have less of it and some have more. In order to make the human life convenient, to do new inventions and to find solutions of problems, creativity plays an important role.
- In words of Dravehel, “Creativity is that human ability by which he can express any thought or creation.”
- It is evident from the analysis of above definitions that creativity is primarily related to originality and newness. Creativity aims at the effort of looking at the problems in a new way and finding solution. In other words, creativity is the ability which enables a person to think and reflect in a new

**Notes**

way to find a smart solution for any problem. Aside from the popular ways, the ability of working and reflecting in a new way is the creativity.

- Although creativity is a mental ability, yet the measurement of creativity is a complex work in comparison of the measurement of other mental abilities. The creativity comprises of many abilities of doing unique, explicit, wide and complex works. Therefore it is a difficult task to measure the creativity.
- This is prerequisite before preparing any test to measure any factor or constituent of creativity, that, this factor or constituent of creativity shall be implicitly and objectively defined.
- Although many tests have been prepared to measure the creativity, yet these creative tests have failed to prove any practical usefulness. Credibility of most of the tests is doubtful.
- By looking at the nature of the dimensions of the creativity test, it could be said the objective of creativity test is to bring out the hidden creativity of a person, so that fluency, flexibility and originality could be measured in his personality. Because the responses given over a question by a person is not true or false.
- Many Tests have been developed and tested for the measurement of creativity. Some tests are as follow –
- Guilford and Merrifield’s Test of Creativity for the College Students, Torrance Test of Creative Thinking, Baqer Mehdi’s Test of Creative Thinking.

**21.8 Keywords**

1. **Altruistic** – Inclined towards good of others
2. **Dimensions** – Measureable Extent

**21.9 Review Questions**

1. Explain Creativity and through some light on its element.
2. Through some light on the qualities of a creative person.
3. Explain the process of creative test development process.
4. Explain the Creative tests of Passi’s and Baqer.

**Answers: Self-Assessment**

1. (c)
2. (b)
3. (a)
4. (b)

**21.10 Further Readings**



**Books**

1. Education Psychology – S.H. Sinha and Rachna Sharma, Atlantic Ocean, New Delhi
2. Importance of Education Among children and Information – Seema Chopra, Hindi Book Center, New Delhi
3. Development of Learner and Teaching Learning Process – By A.K. Verma, Hindi Book Center, New Delhi
4. Education Psychology – S.K. Mangal, P.H. I. Learning Pvt. Ltd, New Delhi.

## Unit-22: Attitude

### CONTENTS

Objectives

Introduction

22.1 Meaning of Attitudes

22.2 Measurement of Attitudes

22.3 Construction of Attitude Scale

22.4 Method of Summated Ratings

22.5 Other Methods

22.6 Summary

22.7 Keywords

22.8 Review Questions

22.9 Further Readings

### Objectives

After studying this unit, the students will be able to –

- Understand the meaning and process of measurement.
- Understanding the Construction process of attitude.
- Understanding the summated ratings and other methods.

### Introduction

Attitude is a special type of mental readiness to respond against any person, thing or event. In attitude, a readiness to respond against a thing or event is found in a person on the dimensions of favorableness–un-favorableness. For example, if the attitude of a student is favorable towards art, then his attitude will also be favorable for artists, colors, paintings, museums, etc. In the same way if a student’s attitude is unfavorable towards art, then all the different aspects of arts will be insignificant for him and he may express his disliking against it. There are three components in attitude- cognitive component, affective component and behavioral component. The cognitive component comprises of a person’s knowledge about attitude object and faith. In affective component, a pleasant and unpleasant emotion is found in the soul of a person against attitude object and in behavioral component a readiness for a favorable or unfavorable response against his attitude object

**Notes**

is organized in a soul of a person. The primary characteristic of attitude is that it is acquired and it affects the different types of learning in the class.

**How to change attitudes in learning situation?**

Once the attitude is formed, then it becomes little difficult to bring change in it; because attitude is related to person's necessity, emotion and self-concept. A change in an attitude means a change in person's emotions, necessity and self- concept. Perhaps due to these reasons normally the change in attitude is a difficult task. Still, teachers have to face these situations during teaching process. In these conditions teachers have to make a change in the attitude of the students compulsorily and to replace it with a healthier and education oriented attitude for their development. Especially, sometimes it has been seen that sometimes student's attitude towards education or a particular subject becomes unfavorable due to some reasons. In this condition the student loses interest in education gradually and becomes a problematic student. In these conditions it is necessary and essential for a teacher to have the knowledge of the methods through which he can bring changes in the unfavorable attitude of the students. Some of the methods that will be explained later.

1. The first step for a teacher before starting attitude changing program is to identify the existing attitudes of a student on different issues.
2. As attitude is more related with self-concept and personal identification, so comparatively more change can be brought in the attitude through group processes. Wieder (1954) has confirmed this concept in his study. He has found in his study that when students worked in a group and played a role on different issues then on those issues their attitudes at situations has changed more in comparison when a student gets traditional lecture discussion on those issues. Therefore, in schools the program of change in attitude should include more group processes.
3. Self seen or self experienced events are more effective than book reading or through some unconfirmed listening in the process of change in attitude. A study which was done by Blair, Jones and Simpson in 1962, revealed that when the criminal students were made referees and instructor by the police in a sports competition, then their attitude of hatred and unfaith towards police got changed.
4. During the process of change in attitude program the teachers should present any fact, event, story etc., in such a way which can directly affect the affective component of the student's attitude. Until a new feeling is grown to replace the earlier emotions the change of attitude program cannot become successful.
5. In the change of attitude process, being a specialist, the teacher himself can play an important role. They can make them aware of the lectures by which a change in attitude in an unfavorable direction can be possible. Therefore by advising the students, the teachers can check the attitude of the students towards unfavorable direction and inspire them to change their attitude towards favorable direction.
6. Students easily accept those attitudes which they feel are the results of their own original thinking. Therefore, teachers should organize the attitude changing program in such a clever way that suggestions presented by them should look like the original thinking of students.
7. In schools, in the change of attitude program the teachers should invite the guardians and parents of students because if at home the parents does not get satisfied with the suggestions on the attitude changing program or they protest against it or considered it a null statement, then the objective of change of attitude program will not be completed. It parents and guardians take part in attitude changing program and teachers give suggestions in their presence then the attitude changing program will be more successful.

If the teachers include these above facts in attitude changing program, then they will get more success in the desired direction.

## A Comparative Study of Attention, Interest and Attitude

Notes

Attention, interest and attitude are very much related to each other. From the educational angle there have similarities on two points among them. The first point is that all three are mental process and the second point is that all the three have motivational force.

Attention and interest have a deep relation. Our attention goes to those things, person or event in which we are interested and we do not pay attention to the thing, person or event in which we are not interested. This is the reason why Evans has said, "The act of maintaining attention on a particular problem or situation, is called interest." Therefore, it will not be an exaggeration if we say that attention is a similar form of interest and interest is similar form of attention. Therefore, they are two sides of a same coin. However, there are two differences which are given below –

(i) Attention is related with external things but interest can be related with external things as well as with the person itself.

(ii) It is not compulsory that a person must be interested in the thing to which he pays attention. Sometimes, due to several reasons, he has to pay attention to the thing or an event in which he is not interested. For instance, some students pay attention to their studies because they are afraid of their guardian or parents not due to their interested. It is clear that in each process of attention, it is not necessary that the process of interest should also be included.

Interest and attitude are also closely related, they both are acquired processes. Similarly, it has been seen that the student have a favorable attitude towards a subject or work in which he is interested and similarly develops a unfavorable attitude towards a subject or work in which he is not interested. Yet there is a difference between the two. Attitude may be favorable or unfavorable but this is not the case in terms of interest. Interest is different in degrees. Student may have less or more interest in some work or event and interest is always positive and cannot be negative. The second difference is that a change in attitude is little difficult, but a change in interest is not so difficult. If appropriate substitute is available, then suddenly the interest of a person can be changed sometimes. The third difference is that attitude has more motivational force as compare to interest and this force is comparatively more stable.

### 22.1 Meaning of Attitudes

The important part of a complete personality of a person is his attitude. In reality attitude is a psycho social concept which tells nature of the behavior of a person in different social situations. The thoughts and preconceptions of a person towards different people, things, organizations, situations, and ideas, decide the attitude of a person. With the help of attitude of a person it is possible to calculate and estimate about his personality. A special place is given to the attitude in the study of social sciences like psychology, sociology, education. This is the reason why knowledge, comparison and relation of attitude with different science have always been an important and interesting subject for psychologists, sociologists and educationists. For the study of attitude on the one hand there is a need of theoretical analysis while on the other hand a question of its measurement also arises. No doubt there is an importance of the measurement of attitude. In the following chapter various factors on the measurement of attitude are discussed in this chapter.

What is attitude? To answer this question is as difficult as to answer about the personality of a person. It presents the feelings and beliefs of attitudes. It tells about what a person feels or what are his pre-facts on which he believes? The attitude of a person means his perspective due to which he behaves in a specific manner towards things, persons, institutions, situations, and planning sets. In other words, attitude is that tendency of a person's personality which inspire him to take decision about his behaviors

1. The act of maintaining attention on a particular problem or situation, is called interest.

– Evans: Psychology, 1978, p. 178

**Notes**

towards things, persons, institutions, situation; special kind of planning etc. The attitude is developed through experiences from past and by generalizing them. In the development of attitude of a person the manifest, emotional, inspirational and active parts of his personality are also included. Psychologists have defined attitude in different way.

According to **Thurston and Chave**, "Attitude is a sum of person's tendencies, preconceptions, pre-build derivations and pressures towards any specific incident."

According to **Ramers, Gaze and Rumel**, "Attitude is the emotional tendency to respond positively or negatively with the help of experiences against any psychological thing."

In the words of **Good**, "Attitude is the readiness to respond in a special manner against any situation, person or object."

According to **Thurston**, "Attitude is quantum of positive or negative effect related to a psychological thing."

In the words of **Freeman**, "Attitude is the natural readiness to respond in a special manner against any situation, person or things, which are learnt and has become a specific manner of response."

From the above mentioned definitions, it is clear that there are many differences in the various definitions of attitude but almost all the definitions are seem to be agreed with each other.

1. Attitudes have relation with thing, person, situation, planning etc.
2. Attitude can be positive or it can be negative.
3. Attitude develops through experience. In other words attitude is a natural concept.
4. Mostly, attitude is of a permanent nature, but a change is possible from time to time.
5. In the development of personality, perception or emotional factors have an important role.
6. Attitude is personal it means a change in attitude may be possible about some psychological thing.
7. A difference may occur in an attitude of particulars person for various things or persons.
8. Attitude may be (for some group) general or particulars (for a person or thing)
9. Attitude attracts positively the behavior of a person.
10. Attitude has relation with different type of behavior of a person.

### **Difference between Attitude and Other similar Concepts**

Some words like motivation, aptitude, interest, values, belief are used unknowingly by some persons these are used synonymously but in actual attitude have totally different meaning. Therefore it will be better to differentiate between these words.

### **Attitude and Motivation**

Although both attitude and motivation are the factors which affect behavior of a person, yet there is a lot of difference in both words. Attitude is more stable in nature than motivation. Origin of motivation depends up on time while attitude remains constant for a long time only in some special circumstances. When there is some deficiency motivation takes place and when the deficiency ends or the necessity is fulfilled the motivation ends. On the other hand attitude is based on self-experiences and in the absence or presence of deficiency it is not affected. Relation of motivation is more with active part attitude relates more with knowledge and emotional part. There is priority to achieve the goal in motivation, while in attitude a priority of thoughts is there to collect the experiences and work according to them. The area of attitude is wide than compare to motivation. There may be many motivations behind building attitudes.

## Attitude and Value

Notes

Both the words attitude and value represents mental factors of a person with other persons, things or situations, but is a difference between both the words. Attitude is intimate, while value is objective. In other words we can say that in determination of attitude an importance of self ambition is there, while in fixing value the importance is given more to related things or person. Attitude is a process of responding tendency about something or person. When attitude takes place as a goal, then it transforms in value. In this way attitude is the base of value.

## Attitude and Belief

Attitude and belief both the words denote about the mental status of some person, thing or situation, but both the words have prospered different meanings. Belief in actual is a stable and expressed form of attitude. To launch in real attitude is very difficult task. Generally, person expresses his attitudes in the form of his beliefs.

## Attitude and Interest

Attitude and interest both are aspects of the personality of human being, yet these both words have difference. Attitude may be in both senses positive or negative, while interest is only positive. In other words attitude indicates both the directions of reacting of a person- favorable- unfavorable, sadness- happiness, and acceptance- no acceptance, while interest indicates in only one direction. In interest person shows his interest only about that thing, which he likes, which gives him luxury, which is favorable for him, or which is beneficial for him. A person able to make his attitude positive by heaving an interest in a particulars thing, person or situations, so it is clear that attitude is vast than interest.

## Attitude and Aptitude

Attitude and aptitude both have adequate differences with each other. Attitude is a specific type of angle which indicates on the basis of experiences the thoughts of a person about a particular thing, person or situation. On the opposite side aptitude is that mental ability of a person which indicates the possibility of a success of a person in a particulars field. Attitude is always earned while aptitude indicates about the ability of a person from birth, environment, education and training and a result of interest process which indicates a heavy success in a particulars field of a person. It is clear that attitude is a part of the personality of a person while aptitude is a special kind of mental ability.



*Task* Differentiates between attitude and interest.

## Attitude and Trait

Attitude and Trait are also different. Trait is a explanatory word which represents the features of a personality, while attitude shows the tendency of behavior a person. Attitude may be positive or negative, but it will not be reasonable to classify the traits. Traits are more generalized than attitude, which normally is of a specific nature.

## 22.2 Measurement of Attitudes

No doubt, attitude has a very important and significant place in social science. This is the reason why psychologists, educationists, administrators, sociologists have been trying to measure attitudes. It has always been always very difficult to measure attitude due to its intimate nature, yet different efforts from time to time have been made by the psychologists. It is clear from the observation of history that efforts of evaluation of attitudes are comparatively novel. Approximately six decades back the techniques to evaluate attitude in a specific manner could be developed. Earlier unsophisticated techniques like observation and interviews were used to measure the attitude. In 1927 Thurston rendered the law of Comparative Judgment. This law paved the way to measure attitudes in a systematic way and many psychological scaling methods were developed on the basis of this law which are used to measure attitude even today. Using his law of Comparative judgment, Thurston also developed method of Paired Comparative judgment in 1927. After two years, In 1929 Mr. Thurston introduced the method of equal appearing interval with the help of Chave. In 1932, Likert developed the method of Summative Ratings. Today the methods presented by Thurston and Chave (Methods of Equal Appearing Interval) and Likert (Method of Summative Ratings) are mostly used and accepted as a precious contribution in the field of attitude measurement. In 1937, Safer introduced a method which was developed by Thurston but not published, in the form of method of Successive Interval. In 1945 Gutman developed a Scalogram method to measure attitude. In 1948 Edwards and Kilpatrick developed the method of Scale Discrimination to measure attitude. In 1957 Ausgud introduced the Semantic Differential method. In 1934, Ramors introduced a method of measuring attitude of different things of a same category which is known as Master or Generalized type scale. Besides this, other scientists also made many efforts to measure attitude. It is clear that for the last sixty years there has been ample development in the field of measurement of attitude and in the modern era there are many methods available to measure attitude of things, person, situations etc. There are following three main methods of measuring attitude –

- (i) Method of Direct Questioning
- (ii) Method of Direct Observation
- (iii) Scaling Method

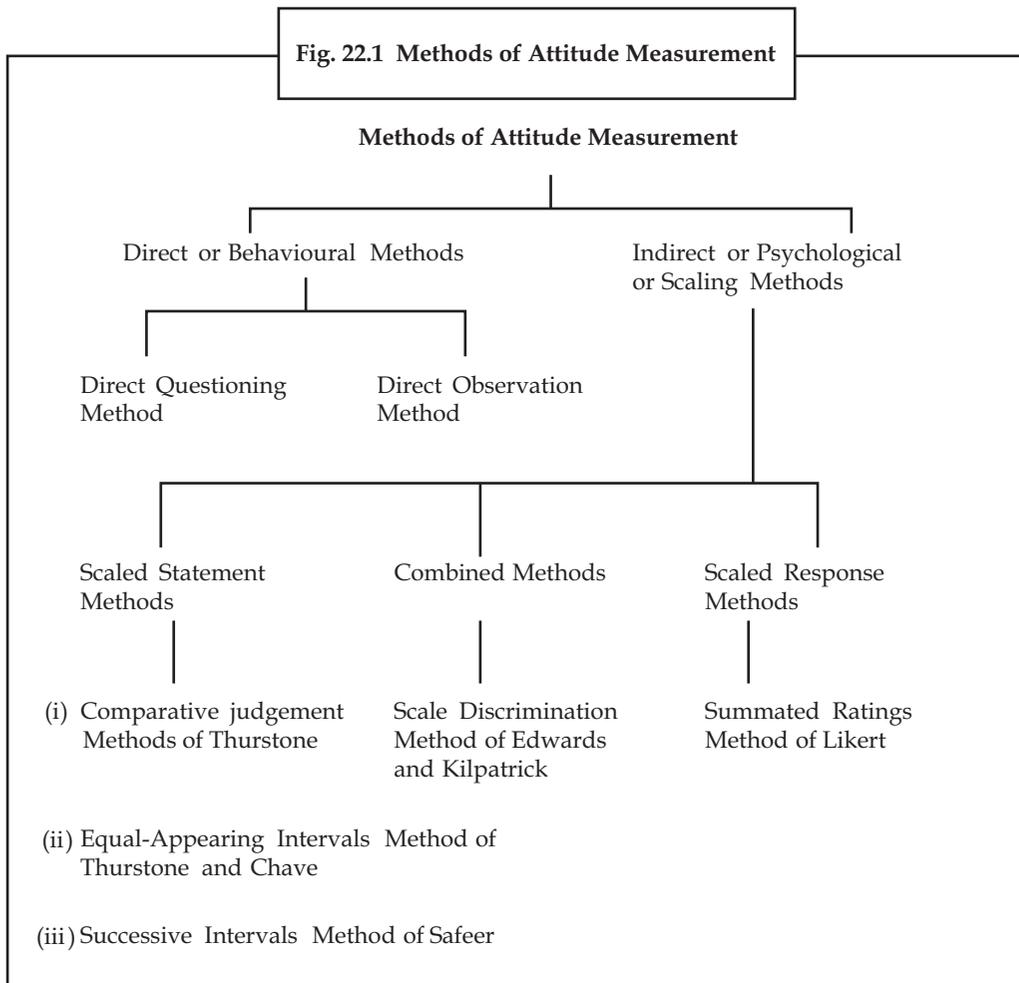
In the first two methods, the attitude is measured through the behavior of daily routine of a person therefore these two are called Behavioral Techniques or Direct Method. It is clear that in these techniques, the attitude is known by directly asking questions or by directly observing the behavior of a person. These methods are very easy, but have their own limitations. The third method of measuring attitude is called psychological technique or indirect method. In this method, the attitude of a person is measured through scaling on the psychological continuum. Scaling has different methods. In the following chapter the behavioral methods are explained in brief but psychological methods are explained in detail.

### Method of Direct Questioning

Direct Questions are asked in this method to a person to know his attitude about anything or person. On the basis of his answers, the information about his attitude is collected. The logical conception of this method is that if we want to know the opinions of others on any object or person, the best way is to ask questions. Direct questioning is actually very satisfying for the fulfillment of some objectives. By applying this method it is possible to categorize people in three categories on the basis of their attitude, (i) those who have favorable attitude, (ii) those who have unfavorable attitude and (iii) those who say that they are not able to form any clear opinion about attitudes. For example, if you are asked in a national survey about your attitude towards reservation for backward classes recommended by Mandal Commission? So it means that the interviewer is trying to categorize you in one of the three above mentioned categories with the help of Direct Questioning Method. If you show your acceptance

or liking for the reservation then you will be categorized in the category of favorable attitude, if you show your dissatisfaction or disliking for reservation then you will be in the category of unfavorable attitude and if you are hesitating in giving your opinions or if your opinions are vague then you will be included in the indefinite category of attitude about reservation.

## Notes



Direct Questioning Method is not a scientific method to know about attitude. Although attitude of maximum number of person can be known in a short period of time through this method, this method is very easy and even an untrained person can also use this method successfully, yet there are some limitations also. First, a number of people hesitate to express their opinions, feelings or attitudes publicly, and are not interested to express their feelings due to social discrimination and pressure. The correct measurement of attitude can only be possible with this method when social environment is free from several kind of pressures and a person is ready to share his opinions in a right manner, for example there are several such people, who have a positive attitude towards sati pratha, dowry system and untouchability, but due to social fear and desirability they protest against these practices, but in actual, they behave in favor of these practices. In relation to these practices if people are asked for their opinions through secret voting, then probably the traditional followers will vote in favor, while these types of people will either be indefinite or will vote against these practices. It is clear that in Direct Questioning method a person can hesitate in giving his actual opinion due to different social reasons and this is the reason why the results received from these methods are less reliable.

**Notes**

The second drawback of Direct Questioning method is its reliability. Sometime a person is confused about his opinions and they are unknown about reality of thing or people, and in a momentary excitement, they show their opinions which are different from their actual attitude. In many studies ample difference has been found between the shown attitude of a person and the actual attitude.

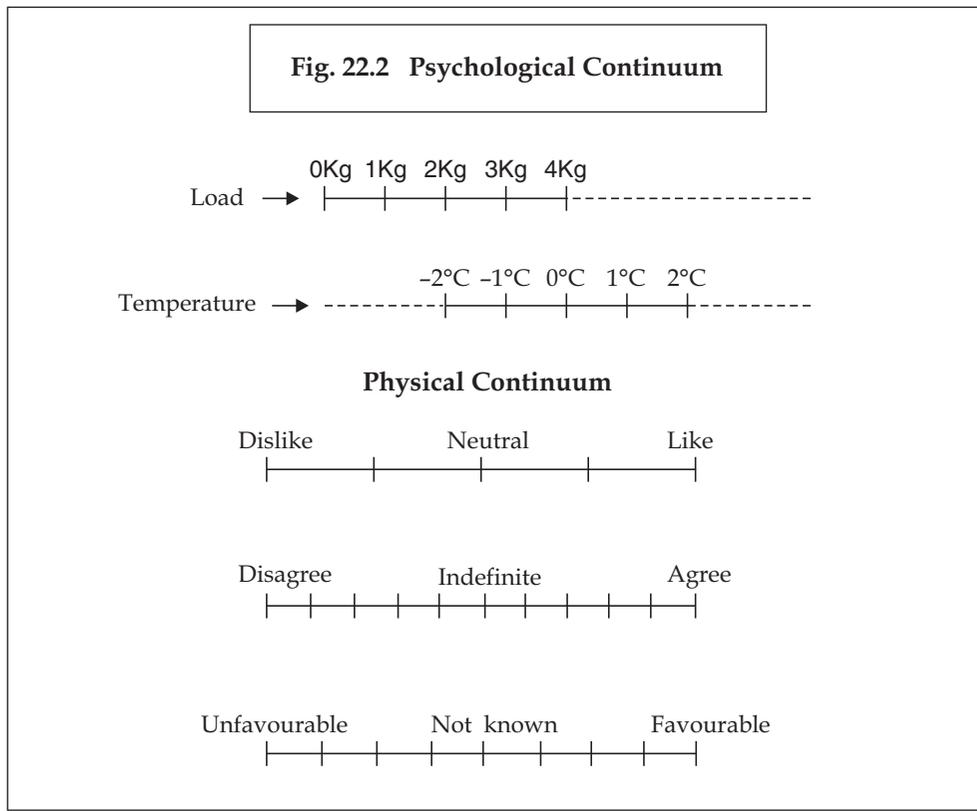
**Method of Direct Observation**

In the Direct Observation Method the attitude of a person is known through the observation of his behavior. According to this method the attitude of a person can be known through his daily behavior about anything, person or organization. According to this method also the attitude of a person can be categorized in three categories-favorable attitude, unfavorable attitude and indefinite attitude. As the person who is being observed does not know that he is being observed and he shows his actual behavior, Direct Observation Method is more appropriate than Direct Questioning Method. For example, if a person does not accept a meal prepared by scheduled caste person, does not take part in his social functions or does not respect him and does not allow him to enter his house, then it can be concluded that person has an unfavorable attitude for schedule caste.

Undoubtedly the Direct Observation Method is more appropriate than Direct Questioning Method, but it also has many limitations. First, observation of many people is difficult and also needs extra time. For example, if we want to know about the attitude of people of whole India towards presidential system then it will not only be difficult but next to impossible to measure their attitude through Direct Observation method. Second, a person generally hides his actual but undesirable behaviors due to some social reasons. For example, an alcoholic secretly drink daily, but always oppose alcoholism. On the other hand a person actually having a negative attitude for alcoholism becomes helpless to social demand to arrange drinks for a party in his house. On the same way a person having negative attitude about films can go to see a film in the pressure of his friends and a person having positive attitude for dowry talks against dowry system due to social pressures and legal restrictions. So it is clear that this is not compulsory that there should be a relation between direct behavior and real attitude. It is clear from above study that the results from Direct Questioning and Direct Observation Method are less reliable and legal, so the psychologists have discovered some more reliable attitude measurement methods. These methods also include measurement methods, which will be discussed in detail ahead.

**Scaling Methods**

Due to some deficiency in results in measuring attitude through Direct Questioning and Direct Observation Methods, the Scaling Method came into existence, and as a result, many methods of preparing attitude scale were developed and the practice of measuring attitude became more logical. For the measurement of physical factors, the physical continuum is used, which arranges the things in a systematic order according to their quantities of qualities. As in the case of measuring weight, things are categorized according to their weight on the continuum of 0 kg, 1 kg, 2 kg, 3 kg ... for measuring the Length things are categorized according to their length on the continuum of 0 cm, 1 cm, 2 cm ... and for the measurement of temperature things are categorized according to their temperature on the continuum of 0°C, 1°C, 2°C. In the same way things or person can be graded on the psychological continuum through their responses or judgments. For example, some Psychological Continuums are presented as follows:



It is clear that all the possible values and positions are available in an organized sequence for psychological trait in psychological continuum. Normally psychological continuum is expressed through a straight line of which both the ends indicate minimum and maximum values of related psychological trait or two opposites poles of a trait. Psychological trait which is convertible into continuum is definitely of a continuous nature, it means that in between two points or measures based on continuum, no matter how near they are to each other, a third point or measure is possible, theoretically. Sometimes, practically some limited points or measures are imagined on psychological continuum, but theoretically it is totally continuous. When a psychological continuum is divided in numerical units so that it can be used to scale psychological traits of some person or thing, then it is called psychological scale. In other words psychological scale is actually a division of psychological continuum in numerical units, which is used to measure a specific trait. The methods to prepare this type of scale are called psychological scaling procedures. Therefore scaling means arranging psychological stimuli on the numerical scale or continuum. In the scaling method, numerical values of different Stimuli which are also called scale values are known and they are organized in the form of scale of continuum on the basis of scale values. Only psychological continuums are used in preparing measuring scales for attitude. This is the reason why these measuring methods are also addressed by the name of psychological methods.

Scaling methods can be divided in two parts on the basis of their nature – (i) Scaled statement methods and (ii) scaled response methods. In both the methods for scaling attitude some statements are used. These statements express some things about anything, person or place, of which the attitude is to be scaled. The attitude is scaled on the basis of response given on these statements by the person. In scaled statement method the statements are scaled on the psychological continuum of attitude with the help of experts, and it is assumed that different statements denote attitude in different values. Some examples of scaled statements are given in Table 22.1. With the observation of these statements, the idea of scaled statements will be clear. On the opposite of scaled statement method, in the scaled response methods, the responses given on different statements are scaled on psychological continuum. It is assumed in this method that through all the statements included in attitude scale represent attitude of the same values,

**Notes**

but the intensity of different responses on different statements may differ. Some example of attitude statements about scaled responses is given in Table 22.2. We hope that the readers will understand the difference between scaled statement and scaled response by understanding the scaling response method.

**Table 22.1**

Some Statements with Scaled Responses						
Sl.No.	Statements	Response Option				
		Fully disagreed	Some disagreed	Indefinite	Some agreed	Fully agreed
1.	National integrity develops through inter-cast marriage.					
2.	Many problems occurs through inter-cast marriage.					
3.	Inter-cast marriages are the result of free sex.					
4.	All the progressive people should do inter-cast marriage.					
5.	Inter-cast marriage affects the social system.					

**Table 22.2**

Some Scaled Statements			
Responses from Attitude.		Statements	Response
Maximum Negative.	1.	Maximum Inter-Cast Marriages are unsuccessful.	Yes/No
More Negative.	2.	Person/Ladies of Lower Cast only are interested in Inter-Cast Marriage.	Yes/No
Less Negative.	3.	Getting Inter Cast-Marriage, respect gets shorten in the society.	Yes/No
Approximately Zero.	4.	There is no such redundant pomposity in Inter Cast- Marriage.	Yes/No
Less Positive.	5.	Inter Cast- Marriage is a progressive step.	Yes/No
More Positive	6.	Inter-Cast Marriages are helpful to remove Racial Narrows.	Yes/No
Maximum Positive.	7.	I do want my son/daughter to get Inter Cast- Marriage.	Yes/No
More Positive.	8.	There is more co-ordination in husband and wife in Inter Cast Marriage.	Yes/No
Less Positive.	9.	Selection of more able husband and wife is possible in Inter- Cast Marriage.	Yes/No
Maximum Negative.	10.	Inter -Cast Marriages are normally a result of Free Sex.	Yes/No
Less Positive.	11.	Eradication of dowry system is possible in Inter-Cast Marriage.	Yes/No
Less Positive.	12.	Inter-Cast Marriage gives growth to emotional integrity.	Yes/No
Maximum Negative.	13.	Inter -Cast Marriage creates disorder in the society.	Yes/No
Total Positive.	14.	Educated person should get Inter-Cast Marriage.	Yes/No

## Attitude Scales

## Notes

In the present, usually attitude scales are used to measure attitude. Attitude scale, is actually an measurement instrument which is prepared by following any one of scaled methods to scale attitude, by applying this the quantities of the attitudes can be measured. A formal collection of attitude statements is called attitude scale. The exercisable express their response on the statements of attitude scale, their response is converted in a numerical form by scoring them with points and this point indicates the quantity of Attitude. As discussed earlier, that scaled methods can be divided into two parts. In scaled statement method, the statements represent attitudes in different quantity, while in scaled response method the intensity of response statements differs. By using and discussing both these methods different, psychologists and psychometrics created attitude scales. Comparative judgment method of Thurston, equal appearing intervals methods of Thurston and Chave, and successive interval method of Safer are mainly most useable scaled statements methods. In these methods, different techniques are used for measuring the attitudes by the scale values of the statements. The summated rating method of Likert is the most popular in scaled response methods. In this method many options (commonly 5 or more) are presented about the response given by the people on the statements. These options indicate attitude in different quantities. Attitude scales can be prepared through above mentioned methods for scaling attitude for different things.

A majority of available attitude scales available at this time are prepared through equal-appearing interval method or summated rating method (Likert method).



*Did u know?* In present time for the easiness of preparing attitude scale normally summated rating method (Likert method) and to measure attitude with less statements equal appearing interval methods (Thurston and Chave) are used.

## 22.3 Construction of Attitude Scale

Attitudes and their Measuring Methods have already been discussed. No doubt knowledge about Attitude and their measurement have an important place in traditional sciences like Education Science, Psychology and Social Science. To measure attitude, usually attitude scales are used. Here we are describing some main and mostly usable methods in preparing of Attitude Scales. We hope the readers will be able to get the knowledge and skill of some different methods of preparing attitude scale and will be able to prepare attitude scale.

### Steps of Attitude Scale Construction

Because Attitude Scale is a collection of statements, therefore like any other scaled psychological experiment, in attitude scale also, very carefully prepared, edited and selected statements are included. Four main steps are followed in the preparation of any scalable attitude scale like other scalable instruments: (i) planning for Attitude Scale, (ii) prepare Attitude statements, (iii) selection of attitude statements, and (iv) evaluate attitude scale. According to the first step, planning for Scale Attitude, the suffix is defined very clearly, the nature of scale, time duration of administration, number of statements included and methods of selection of statements are decided. In the second step of preparing scale, attitude statements are prepared. Statements which can correctly express the Attitude which is to be scaled are prepared for measuring scales. The person, preparing scale, can prepare some statements himself, while for preparing the rest statements he can take help from the published editorials, articles in the newspapers, articles published in related magazines, subject matter of books, consult an expert and can also have a conversation with them and also talk to the common people. Hints can also be taken

**Notes**

for preparing attitude statements, from conscious and experts on the related subject, and also they can be asked for a speech or write about their opinions, views and feelings.



**Notes** The language used in preparing statements for scaling attitude should be easy and there should not be any ambiguity. The statement should differentiate between the person having positive and negative attitude.

Attitude at the time of the creation of the following statements must be noted –

- (i) Attitude statement must have a relation with present situations, not with past.
- (ii) In Attitude statements the factual statements should not be included.
- (iii) Those statements should not be made which have more than one meaning or have any confusion at all.
- (iv) Only those statements should be made which have a relation with psychological object.
- (v) When there is possibility of manifestation of same opinion from almost everyone, such statements should not be made.
- (vi) Those statements should be made in which the desired thing or person can take the entire range of Attitude within itself.
- (vii) The language of statements should be clear, easy and direct as possible and the also the meaning of such words should be definite.
- (viii) The statements should be as short as possible. The scale-maker should make effort to make sentences within 15 to 20 words.
- (ix) One complete idea should be used in every statement.
- (x) Words like every time, always, all, nobody, never creates ambiguity. So these words should not be used.
- (xi) While writing statements words like only, never, sometimes should be used with precautions.
- (xii) The expressions should be in simple sentence instead of compound or complex sentence.
- (xiii) The words should not be used in statements which are not known by the readers and students on which attitude scale is to be applied.
- (xiv) Avoid from double-negation statements.

After the involvement of probable statements in the attitude scale, pre-tryout is done to remove the ambiguity and confusion from the language of statements. In the process of pre-tryout the statements are read by some people, and after understanding the problems, confusion or unclearness faced by them, corrections are made. Now the third but the most important aspect of construction of Scaling starts. In this step, of all the probable statements, the most appropriate are included in the final draft. As the quality of scale depends on the quality of statements so this step is termed as the most important step. Many techniques are invented by the psychologists to select the statements. As it is discussed earlier, the process of scaling of attitude is divided into two categories – **Scaled Statement Methods** and **Scaled Response Methods**. Both of these methods are two different approaches have been measured statements or responses. Primarily in Scaled Statement Methods, the Thurston's Method of Paired Comparison, Thurston's and Chave's Method of Equal Appearing Intervals, Sufeer's Method of Successive Intervals are included. The Likert Method of Summated Ratings is highly prevailed in Scaled Response Methods. In addition, Guttman Method of Cumulative Scale which is also known as Scalogram Method and Edwards and Kilpatrick's Scale Discrimination Methods are also popular. After selecting the appropriate statements the selected expressions are organized in the form of measurement. Then the general

guidelines and the way to react is finalized by the ruler ruler and set the desired number of copies are made.

Notes

After the preparation of last draft of the Scale, the last grade of scaling means the evaluation of scale comes. In this step the reliability, validity, and measures are found for the scale. The reliability of attitude measuring scale can be known through test-retest methods, simultaneous method (if the second similar grade is prepared) from one of them or by using many methods. The coefficient of 80 or more than 80 is normally considered as a reliable Attitude Measuring. Legal subject matter, legal concurrent or legal construe method can be determined for Scale. For a measurement of Attitude normally centi norms, Z categorized norms, T categorized norms, stanines, one of them or more appropriate norms can be prepared. The last work of manufacturer of scale is to prepare manual of attitude measuring scale. All the information is included in manufacturing of scale given in manual. The people interested in using these scales can get the related inquiry about making of scale with the help of the manual.

### Method of Paired Comparisons

Paired Comparison Method in actual is to know the scale values of statements by reevaluating them on psychological continuum. That's why this is included in under the re-measuring sentence methods of attitude measurement. Paired comparisons methods are based upon the law of comparative judgment given by Thurston. In the decade of 1920, Thurston published many articles about attitude measuring scales. The law of comparative judgments provides a base to arrange the stimuli on psychological continuum. The law of comparative judgment helps to measure subjective experiences and any given Stimuli characteristics which may be different from everyone but in indefinite quantity. The main problem in psychological rescaling is if Stimuli can be arranged on the basis of their related qualities on psychological continuum. Here one thing is clear that a psychological continuum for some stimuli cannot be used for other stimuli. By these methods only different stimuli of a set of Stimuli given can be arranged on psychological continuum on the basis of their different qualities.

According to the law of Comparative judgment, a modal discriminial process is possible on the Psychological Continuum of given any Stimuli. The discriminial process means the response or decision given by a person regarding some quality on some Stimuli,, because different people react differently on some particular Stimuli. Therefore it is important to make some assumption about these discriminial processes. Thurston has said that the distribution of discriminial reactions given by many people on stimuli can be considered as Normal Probability Curve. The medians and deviation of norms given by different persons on Stimuli or a sentence can be subsequently described as Scale Value and Discriminal Dispersion. It is clear that the values of different Stimuli's or statements will be different in scale value and discriminial dispersion.

For example, we that there are two statements related to some psychological thing, i.e.,  $i$  and  $j$ . A big group of people was asked to compare, which one is more favorable:  $i$  or  $j$ . Members of the group were not permitted to describe them equally favorable. If half of the group ( $p = .50$ ) says  $i$  is more favorable than  $j$  and rest half says ( $Q = .50$ )  $j$  is more favorable, then we can say that  $i$  and  $j$  both represents that quality equally which was being measured because according to Model Discriminal Process the value of both are same.

Notes

Table 22.3

**Simplified Version of NPC to Convert p-Matrix into Z-Matrix**

<i>p</i>	.00	.01	.02	.03	.04	.05	.06	.07	.08	.09
.0	–	–2.33	–2.05	–1.88	–1.75	–1.65	–1.56	–1.48	–1.41	–1.34
.1	–1.28	–1.23	–1.18	–1.13	–1.08	–1.04	–.99	–.95	–.92	–.88
.2	–.84	–.81	–.77	–.74	–.71	–.67	–.66	–.61	–.58	–.55
.3	–.52	–.50	–.47	–.44	–.41	–.39	–.36	–.33	–.31	–.28
.4	–.25	–.23	–.20	–.18	–.15	–.13	–.10	–.08	–.05	–.03
.5	00	.03	.05	.08	.10	.13	.15	.18	.20	.23
.6	.25	.28	.31	.33	.36	.39	.41	.44	.47	.50
.7	.52	.55	.58	.61	.64	.67	.71	.74	.77	.81
.8	.84	.88	.92	.95	.99	1.04	1.08	1.13	1.18	1.23
.9	1.28	1.34	1.41	1.48	1.56	1.65	1.75	1.88	2.05	2.33

**Note:** The first column and row of the table are presented the values of *p*, while the body relative to the *z* values are given on *p*.

On the contrary, if more than half members of the group say that (*p* > .50) statement *i* is more favorable than statement *j*, then it can be said that the modal dicriminal process of *i* is greater than *j*. On the Psychological Continuum from minimum to maximum, in the same way if more than half people say that (*p* < .50) sentence *i* is less favorable than *j*, then it can be said Model Discriminal Process of *i* is less than *j*. So it is clear that the state of Model Discriminal Process of statements *i* and statement *j* on the Psychological Continuum is based on the ratio of comparative results. So it clear that frequency of people telling that statement *i* is more favorable than *j*, can be judged after receiving the comparative results from the group of people. If  $f_{ij}$  is the frequency of the (number) the people telling *i* is more favorable than *j*, then the ratio can be obtained by dividing it with the total number of persons, *N*.

$$f_{ij} = \text{statement } i > \text{statement } j$$

Then 
$$p_{ij} = \frac{f_{ij}}{N}$$

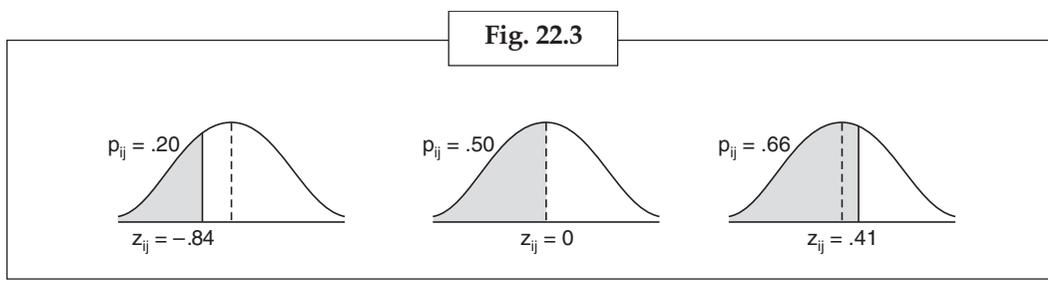
Where statement  $p_{ij}$  is the ratio of the people telling that *i* is more favorable than *j* because the total of the people liking *i* than *j*, ( $f_{ij}$ ) and persons liking *j*, ( $f_{ji}$ ) will be equal to *N*. therefore,

$$f_{ji} = N - f_{ij}$$

And 
$$p_{ji} = 1 - p_{ij}$$

With the help of Normal Curve Table, the value of  $p_{ij}$  can be converted into *Z*. A easy form of the Normal Curve Table is presented in the table to convert the different values of *p* into *Z*. It is clear by the observation of the simple Normal Curve Table that if the value of  $p_{ij}$  is subsequently .20, .50, and .66 then the values of *Z* will be –.84, 0 and +.41. The relation of the ratio of  $p_{ij}$  and the value of Normal Curve Distribution,  $Z_{ij}$ , is shown in following figure.

Notes



On the basis of some assumptions Thurston proved that any value of  $Z_{ij}$  can be determined similar to the differences between the scale values of statement  $i$  and statement  $j$ . This sub law of Thurston can be said the case V of The Law of Comparative Judgment. Therefore, if the scale values of statement  $i$  and statement  $j$  are represented by  $S_i$  and  $S_j$  then

$$Z_{ij} = S_i - S_j$$

If we do a comparative judgment of pair of many statements and above mentioned equation are made for every pair then by using the Least Square Method of the mathematics, the Scale Values can be known about different statements.

**Table 22.4 F-Matrix**

Statement	1	2	3	-	-	n
1	$f_{11}$	$f_{21}$	$f_{31}$	-	-	$f_{n1}$
2	$f_{12}$	$f_{22}$	$f_{32}$	-	-	$f_{n2}$
3	$f_{13}$	$f_{23}$	$f_{33}$	-	-	$f_{n3}$
-	-	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-	-	-
n	$f_{1n}$	$f_{2n}$	$f_{3n}$	-	-	$f_{nn}$

**Table 22.5: P-Matrix**

Statement	1	2	3	-	-	n
1	$p_{11}$	$p_{21}$	$p_{31}$	-	-	$p_{n1}$
2	$p_{12}$	$p_{22}$	$p_{32}$	-	-	$p_{n2}$
3	$p_{13}$	$p_{23}$	$p_{33}$	-	-	$p_{n3}$
-	-	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-	-	-
n	$p_{1n}$	$p_{2n}$	$p_{3n}$	-	-	$p_{nn}$

Notes

Table 22.6: Z-Matrix

	1	2	3	-	-	n
1	$Z_{11}$	$Z_{21}$	$Z_{31}$	-	-	$Z_{n1}$
2	$Z_{12}$	$Z_{22}$	$Z_{32}$	-	-	$Z_{n2}$
3	$Z_{13}$	$Z_{23}$	$Z_{33}$	-	-	$Z_{n3}$
-	-	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-	-	-
n	$Z_{1n}$	$Z_{2n}$	$Z_{3n}$	-	-	$Z_{nn}$
Total	$\sum Z_{1i}$	$\sum Z_{2i}$	$\sum Z_{3i}$	-	-	$\sum Z_{ni}$
Middle	$Z_1 = \frac{\sum Z_{1i}}{n}$	$Z_2 = \frac{\sum Z_{2i}}{n}$	$Z_3 = \frac{\sum Z_{3i}}{n}$	-	-	$Z_n = \frac{\sum Z_{ni}}{n}$

It is clear that to know the Scale Value of statements by the method of paired comparisons, statements are presented to the people in the form of pair and they are asked by which pair of statements they are more agreed. In other words, a person has to give a Comparative Judgment about given couple statement. If the number of statements is N then the total couples will be  $N(N-1)/2$ . On the basis of responses, first a Frequency Matrix is made which is also called F-Matrix. F Matrix presents the Frequency of the people who like different statements in comparison to the total statements. This frequency denotes that how many people like the statements which are given in columns more than statements given in row. Therefore entry  $f_{23}$  means the people who like statement 2 as compare to statement 3. Clearly  $f_{ij}$  statement indicates the number of persons who likes statement  $i$  more than statement  $j$ . If the total number of people is  $N$  then all the frequencies of a Matrix divided by  $N$  can be converted into Proportion Matrix of  $p$ -Matrix. After then with the help of normal curve table (NPC) the values of  $Z$  of proportional to  $P$  values, a  $Z$  Matrix is prepared. To change  $P$  Matrix into  $Z$  Matrix a very simple form of NPC is given in Table 22.3. For the convenience of readers, a draft of  $F$ ,  $P$  and  $Z$  matrix is given subsequently in Table 22.4, 22.5, and 22.6.

With the help of  $Z$ -Matrix the Scale Value of different statements is calculated. The different values of  $Z$  given in first column of  $Z$  matrix can be written according to the equation of Scale Values described earlier.

$$\begin{aligned}
 Z_{11} &= S_1 - S_1 \\
 Z_{12} &= S_1 - S_2 \\
 Z_{13} &= S_1 - S_3 \\
 &----- \\
 &----- \\
 Z_{1n} &= S_1 - S_n
 \end{aligned}$$

By adding both sides of equation given above

$$\sum Z_{1i} = n S_1 - \sum S_i$$

Dividing both sides by  $n$

$$\frac{\sum Z_{1i}}{n} = S_1 - \frac{\sum S_i}{n}$$

Where  $\sum Z_i/n$  is the median of all  $Z$  values given in first column of  $Z$  matrix, which can be written as  $Z_1$  and  $\sum S_i/n$ , is the Median of all statement measured, which can be written as  $S$ . In other words,

$$Z_1 = S_1 - S$$

Normally this equation can be written in this form

$$Z_i = S_i - S$$

Where  $Z_i$  = Medians of  $Z$  values of the  $i$  column of  $Z$  matrix.

$S_i$  = the scale value of statement  $i$

$S$  = the Median of the scale values of all statements.

It is clear from the given equation that the Medians of  $Z$  given in the columns of  $Z$  Matrix express the deviation taken from the medians for the scale values of statements. Clearly the total of all scale values will be equal to zero which can be used as a check for the precision in calculation. The statements of having negative values will be less favorable from normal statements and the statements having positive values will be more favorable than normal statements. As the center point of Scale Value which is taken as a Median for every statement on the psychological continuum, is arbitrary, therefore any constant can be added in it to make the scale values positive. Addition of the constant does not make any change in the scale value of different statements. Normally for the convenience all the Scale Values are converted in positive values by adding a constant equal to a maximum number of negative values. By doing this, the statement having a maximum negative value, changes to Zero and all the other scale values are converted in positive values.

While deriving the scale value of statements, sometimes, all people like only one statement from the two statements of a pair. Then the value of ratio  $P$  is denoted approximately one or zero, and as a result, we get the highest value of  $Z$  (positive or negative). In this situation the use of  $Z$  value is not appropriate for deriving the median  $Z$ , because the very high positive and negative values of  $Z$ , increase or decrease the values of median  $Z$  unnecessarily. Therefore the value(s) of  $Z$  in  $Z$  matrix are higher than  $\pm 2.00$ , then it is reasonable to calculate median  $Z$  by considering them equal to  $+ 2.00$  or  $-2.00$ .

After knowing the scale value of different statements, Attitude Scale is prepared by keeping all the statements in a random order. The scale prepared in this way is presented before the people whose attitude is to be scaled. They are asked to tell that from which of those statements they agree and from which they disagree. It is clear that their responses will reflect the Attitude of the person about those things, for which the statements are prepared, and scale values are derived. It is expected from the person having more positive attitude, that he will be agree with the statement having more scale value, while from the person heaving less Attitude, it is expected, that he will agree with the statement, having less scale value. Therefore to get the Attitude score of a person can be known on the basis of scale values of agreed statements. A median is normally used for this purpose. In other words, if a person agrees with three statements with scale values 2.5, 2.8 and 3.1, then his attitude score will be the median of the three, which comes as 2.8. In the same way if a person shows his acceptance about four statements like .78, .95, .97 and 1.02, then his attitude score will be the median of these four, say .96.

For the convenience of the readers, an example is presented here for preparing  $F$  Matrix,  $P$  Matrix and  $Z$  Matrix. For example Let us assume that, total eight statements are prepared for attitude scale and their scale value is to be known by arranging them on psychological continuum through method of paired comparisons. It is clear that total 28 couple or 28 pairs will be prepared. For example, we assumed that these pair of statements are given to 150 person ( $N = 150$ ) and they were asked to choose the statement from each pair, which they like most. It was found that the total of two attitudes, received from any pair will always be equal to  $N$  (means 150) these frequencies can be written in the form of  $F$ -Matrix according to Table-22.7.

## Notes

Notes

**Table 22.7: F-Matrix for the Attitude Scale (N = 150)**

Statement	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
1	75	123	65	140	100	115	138	83
2	27	75	53	133	88	110	119	55
3	85	97	75	118	78	122	100	115
4	10	17	32	75	108	105	145	75
5	50	62	72	42	75	99	87	66
6	35	40	28	45	51	75	128	90
7	12	31	50	5	63	22	75	48
8	67	95	35	75	84	60	102	75

The figures in Table 22.7 show that out of 150 people how many like column statements more than the row statements.  $N/2$  or 75 is placed at the hypotenuse; the ratio of frequencies can be obtained by dividing every frequency by N or 150 which are presented in table 22.8.

**Table 22.8: Table 22.7 p-Matrix for the F-Matrix given in Table 22.7**

Statement	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
1	.50	.82	.43	.93	.67	.77	.92	.55
2	.18	.50	.35	.89	.59	.73	.79	.37
3	.57	.65	.50	.79	.52	.81	.67	.77
4	.07	.11	.21	.50	.72	.70	.97	.50
5	.33	.41	.48	.28	.50	.66	.58	.44
6	.23	.27	.19	.30	.34	.50	.83	.60
7	.08	.21	.33	.03	.42	.17	.50	.32
8	.45	.63	.23	.50	.56	.40	.68	.50

Z Matrix can be prepared by converting the entire  $p$  values given in  $p$  matrix, in Z values, with the help of normal curve table. The medians of Z values in the different columns of Z matrix are obtained (by assuming the values more than +2.00 and less than -2.00 equal to +2.00 and -2.00) and are presented by adding them in a new row in the matrix. Now all the major median Z values are made positive by adding the maximum negative value, i.e., .62 in them. The values obtained are the scale values of different statements. Scale values are shown in the last row of Z Matrix by adding a new row. These scale values of different statements denote psychological continuum of attitude. In the above table (22.8) a Z matrix table, prepared through P matrix is shown. It is clear from the observation of Table (22.9) that the order of statements is 1, 3, 2, 8, 4, 5, 6, and 7 on the psychological continuum, where statement 1 denotes the minimum attitude and statement 7 denotes maximum attitude. The Scale Value of these statements on psychological continuum are shown in the following figure.(22.4)

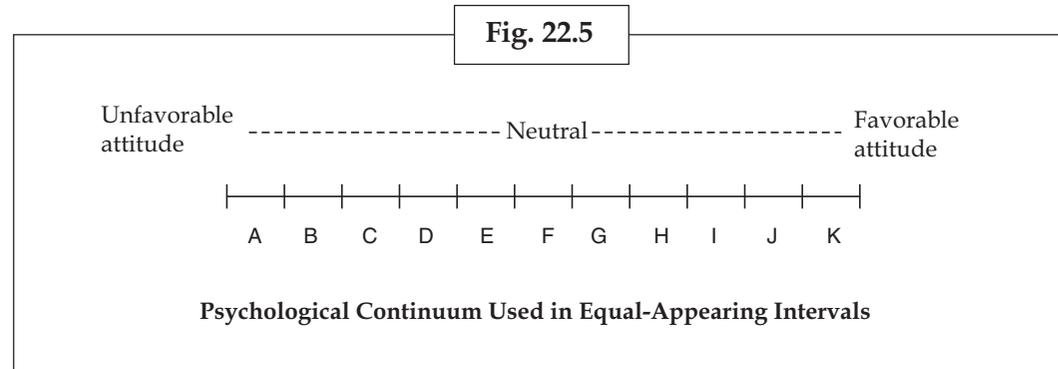


- Notes**
- (ix) Apply the attitude scales on those people, whose attitude is to be scaled and to obtain their agreements and disagreements on different statements.
  - (x) Know the median of scale values of all the agreed statements, which will be an attitude score for that person.
  - (xi) To know the reliability, legality and norms.

**Method of Equal-Appearing Intervals**

Similar to the method of paired comparisons, scale values are known in a same manner in the equal-appearing method by re-scaling the statements on psychological continuum. Therefore equal appearing method is also included in the group of scaled statements methods of Attitude scaling. To know the scale value by rescaling the statements through couple Comparative method is advantageous only when the number of rescaling statements is less. In the method of paired comparisons all the possible pairs are prepared, and people are asked for a comparative judgment on all the pairs. If the number of statements is  $n$  then every person has to give  $(n(n-1)/2)$  numbers of comparative judgments. For twenty statements, 190, for twenty five statements, 300, for thirty statements, 435, for forty statements 780, for fifty statements 1225 and for sixty statements 1770 comparative judgments are needed. It is clear that if the number of statements is more, then to present the statements in couples and to receive judgments, there is a lot of wastage of time, money and energy. Normally, the availability of people is not possible to give their judgments, on different pair of statements. Not only, it takes more time to give judgments on high number of statements, but it also takes more time to calculate and know the scale value in  $F$  matrix,  $P$  matrix and  $Z$  matrix, and also the chances for error increase. Keeping these problems of method of paired comparison, in 1929, Equal-Appearing Interval method was formulated by Thurston and Chave. Opposite to the method of paired comparison, in Equal-Appearing Interval Method, every person has to give only one decision for every statement. Due to the simplicity and easiness of Equal-Appearing Interval Method, it is broadly used to know the scale value, when the number of statements is high. Although Equal-Appearing Interval method was described by Thurston and Chave at very first time, yet, in the history of psychological research and scaling, it is popularly known as Thurston method for measuring attitude, and the scale prepared through this method is called Thurston scale.

In Equal Appearing Interval Method, for statements related to some person, thing or process, efforts are made with the help of experts to divide the statements on the basis of limit of attitude expression, in 11 categories. These 11 categories are located almost at the same intervals on psychological continuum. This psychological continuum is shown in Figure 22.5.



It is clear that the statements expressing maximum adverse attitude will be placed in category A, and the statements expressing maximum favorable attitude, will be placed in category K, neutral and unresponsive statements will be placed in category F. As the categories move forward from F, to K, the expressed quantity of favorable attitude in statements increase, and when the categories move backwards from F to A direction, the expressed quantity of unfavorable attitude in statements

increases. Thurston and Chave used Cards for dividing the statements in 11 categories. Every statement was written on a separate card, and the experts/judges were asked to arrange these cards from A to K, in 11 groups on the basis of quantity of attitude expressed by the statements. This is to be very clearly understood that experts/judges have not to express the quantity of their own Attitude, but they have to categorize the cards according to the limits of attitudes reflected through statement. The investigators, scale manufactures, and psychologists have used different methods from time to time in the past to know the judgments of experts/ judges. Some used printed statements and gave 11 columns in front of it, and the judges/experts have to give their opinion by ticking a right sign on one of them. Some have presented either eleven alphabets from A to K or number from 1-11 in front of the statements, and experts/judges have to give their judgment by marking a circle on one of them. Some have presented a eleven inches long straight line which represents psychological continuum from favorable to unfavorable, and experts/judges have to give their judgment by ticking a sign of right on an appropriate place. The judgment on the statements is known by Experts/Judges, through these different methods or any other method and the statements are categorized in eleven parts subsequently. Although Thurston and Chave tried three hundred judges for these types of judgments, but later on this was experienced that reliable scale value can also be achieved even with a less number of experts. These days scale values are known normally on the basis of judgment of thirty to fifty experts.

Thurston and Chave believed that a same interval is found in the quantity of attitude expressed by the attitude statements divided in eleven piles and the statements of these piles are given marks from one to eleven. It is clear that cards of A pile will be marked 1, cards of B pile will be marked 2, cards of C pile will be marked 3... and cards up to K piles will be marked up to eleven. In other words on the psychological continuum on which the experts have divided the statements in eleven piles, there are eleven Scale determination points. Thus both the ends of eleven point prescription scale express the favorable attitude and unfavorable attitude. The average value can be obtained for every statement, on the basis of marks given by the experts on the statements, which will be a scale value of a statement on the eleven point psychological continuum. Thurston and Chave used the median as an average value. Therefore, in this way the scale value of a statement will be the median of points given on eleven point scale, by experts/judges.

To method to know the scale value of a statement through Equal Appearing Interval Method, will be clarified with an example given ahead, but a very important question should be considered before it. Some judges/experts may be careless or negligent due to their disliking while dividing the statements in 11 categories on psychological continuum. Besides sometimes they also make mistake in understanding the instructions, and sometimes experts arrange the statements according to their own agreement or disagreements instead of the statement's limit of expressing the attitude. In this situation it will be compulsory to separate the incorrect judgments at the time of obtaining scale values. Thurston and Chave gave 130 statements to the experts, to categorize in eleven categories and they rejected the judgments of those who had selected 30 or more than 30 statements in a category, by saying their judgments were given unconsciously. In this way they did not included the judgments of 41 experts out of 341 experts for knowing scale values of the statements. Therefore, the judgments of those experts who put more than 25% statements in a category can be rejected on the basis that the experts have not done their work carefully and their judgments should not be included in the process of obtaining scale values of the statements.

In Equal-Appearing Interval Method Scale normally more statements are prepared, in the beginning and the appropriate statements which are selected on the basis of judgments given by experts are included and the final form of attitude scale is prepared by them. The medians and fourth deviation  $Q$  is calculated by these judgments given by the experts. Median indicates scale value of different statements while fourth Deviation  $Q$  tells about the difference between judgments of experts. It is clear that the statements should be considered more clear and appropriate in which the deviation is less or we can say experts are more agreed on them. When the uniformity is more on judgments then the deviation  $Q$  is less. The excess value of Deviation  $Q$  denotes more difference of opinion in the judgment of different experts which is certainly ambiguous. Thurston and Chave accepted that the fourth deviation  $Q$  denoted that statement is ambiguous. Due to the different explanations on a particular statement by judges, the experts give different judgments about the expressed attitude statement, and as a result the value of  $Q$  increases. Therefore, only those statements should be included in the last draft of the attitude on which the experts have uniformity on their scale values means the deviation  $Q$  is less.

**Notes**

Normally very less number of statements is included in the final form of attitude scale prepared by Equal-Appearing Interval Method. Normally a final form of Attitude Scale is prepared from 20 to 25 statements. While selecting the statements, the scale value *S* and fourth deviation *Q* is considered. The statements are selected in this way that the scale values *S* are distributed at relatively equally space on the psychological continuums, and the fourth deviation value, *Q*, is comparatively less. If we have to select only one statement among the statements with equal values then statement who has less fourth deviation is selected, because that is considered least ambiguous.

After selecting a few statements out of many statements on the basis of scale Value and deviation, the selected statements are arranged in a random order and are presented to those people whose attitude is to be scaled. People have to express their agreements and disagreements with those statements. The person who shows his agreement with the statements, the attitude score is known with the help of scale value of those statements, which presents the position of attitude of that person on the psychological continuum. To know the attitude score, the median is calculated. In other words the person who agrees with the statements, the median of scale value of the statements will be the attitude score. For instance, if a person shows his agreement with five statements, the scale value of those five is subsequently: 4.6, 7.5, 6.3, 5.2 and 3.7, then by using median method the attitude score will be 5.2. By using Median his attitude score will be the median of these five scales i.e., 5.46. After preparing the last draft of the scale, its reliability and legality is known. It has become like a tradition in Equal -Appearing Interval Method that two parallel drafts of attitude scale should be prepared and by representing them on a big scale, their parallel draft reliability should be calculated. Any other appropriate method can also be used to know the legality and norms.

For the convenience of the readers the method for calculating median, scale value and fourth deviation on the basis of judgments of experts about Attitude statements, is demonstrated with the help of an example. For example, six statements are prepared to know the attitude scale in the beginning, which were given to fifteen experts with an instruction that they arrange them in an order of favorableness and unfavorableness on the 11 points on Psychological Continuum to express the attitude. The judgments given by experts are presented in Table 22.10 and for the convenience to know the median and fourth deviation, the judgments of experts are denoted in 1, 2, 3.....9, 10, 11 instead of A, B, C...J, K and the value of median and deviation *Q* will automatically be clarified by the numerical study.

**Table 22.10 Experts Opinion and Scale Values for the Statements**

Expert	Statement					
	I	II	III	IV	V	VI
1	7	5	9	5	4	8
2	9	6	6	4	7	11
3	7	6	6	3	8	9
4	8	2	8	5	3	11
5	9	6	7	2	7	10
6	6	3	9	3	4	11
7	8	5	7	1	8	9
8	8	6	10	3	5	11
9	8	5	2	3	6	11
10	6	5	7	5	3	7
11	8	4	10	1	3	11
12	7	6	10	6	8	8
13	8	5	8	6	8	11
14	8	4	10	3	9	8
15	10	7	9	7	3	9
Md	8	5	9	3	6	10
Q	0.5	1.0	1.5	1.0	2.5	1.5

Normally, the number of experts /judges is high (50 or above) to know the scale value of the statement in Equal Appearing Interval Method. For this reason it is difficult and uneasy to know the value of median and fourth deviation by preparing the table. In this situation the judgments given by experts on a statement are arranged in different frequencies and with the help of frequency distribution, the medians and fourth deviations are known. An example for this type of frequency distribution is given in Table 22.11.

Notes

**Table 22.11**

Frequency distribution for determining the Scale Values by Equal Appearing Intervals Method ( $N = 20$ )

Statement	Categories on the psychological continuum											Scale Value $S$	Ctur-thank deviation $Q$	
	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K			
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11			
I	$f$	0	0	0	0	22	28	45	40	37	20	8	7.63	1.20
	$cf$	0	0	0	0	22	50	95	135	172	192	200		
II	$f$	4	17	19	35	47	23	25	12	9	9	0	5.03	1.46
	$cf$	4	21	40	75	122	145	170	182	191	200	200		
III	$f$	0	0	0	0	0	8	27	35	62	38	30	8.96	1.02
	$cf$	0	0	0	0	0	8	35	70	132	170	200		
IV	$f$	35	46	53	30	25	11	0	0	0	0	0	2.86	1.10
	$cf$	35	81	134	164	189	200	200	200	200	200	200		

According to the description of table, the frequencies ( $f$ ) and cumulative frequency ( $cf$ ) are obtained by arranging the judgments of the experts on every statement. After that scale value ( $S$ ) and fourth deviation  $Q$  are obtained by applying formulas. To know scale value  $S$ (median) following formula is used:

$$\text{Scale Value, } S = L + \left( \frac{\frac{N}{2} - cf_b}{f} \right)$$

Where  $L$  = is the lower limit of that category in which  $N/2$ th cumulative frequency is situated.  
Clearly, the value of  $L$  will be obtained by subtracting 5 from the prescribed numbers.

$N$  = is the total number of frequencies. Clearly this will be the total number of judges.

$cf$  = is the cumulative frequency of the series of  $N/2$  Cumulative Frequency.

$F$  = is the frequency of  $N/2$ th cumulative frequency series.

Scale value of Statement 1,  $S_1 = 7.5 + \frac{100 - 95}{40} = 7.63$

Scale value of statement 2,  $S_2 = 4.5 + \frac{100 - 75}{47} = 5.03$

**Notes**

Scale value of statement 3,  $S_3 = 8.5 + \frac{100 - 70}{62} = 8.98$

Scale value of statement 4,  $S_4 = 2.5 + \frac{100 - 81}{53} = 2.86$

To know the value of fourth Deviation  $Q$ ,  $Q_1$  and  $Q_2$  are calculated first for every statement. For calculating  $Q_1$  following method is applied:

$$Q_1 = L + \frac{\frac{N}{4} - cf_b}{f}$$

Where  $L$  = is the least limit of the series where  $N/4$ th Frequency is situated.

$cf_b$  = is the cumulative frequency of the series which is just below the  $N/4$ th cumulative frequency series.

$f$  =  $N/4$  is the cumulative frequency of  $N/4$ th cumulative Frequency.

For calculation of  $Q_3$  following method is applied

$$Q_3 = L + \frac{\frac{3N}{4} - cf_b}{f}$$

Where  $L$  = is the lowest limit of that series in which  $3N/4$  cumulative frequency is situated.

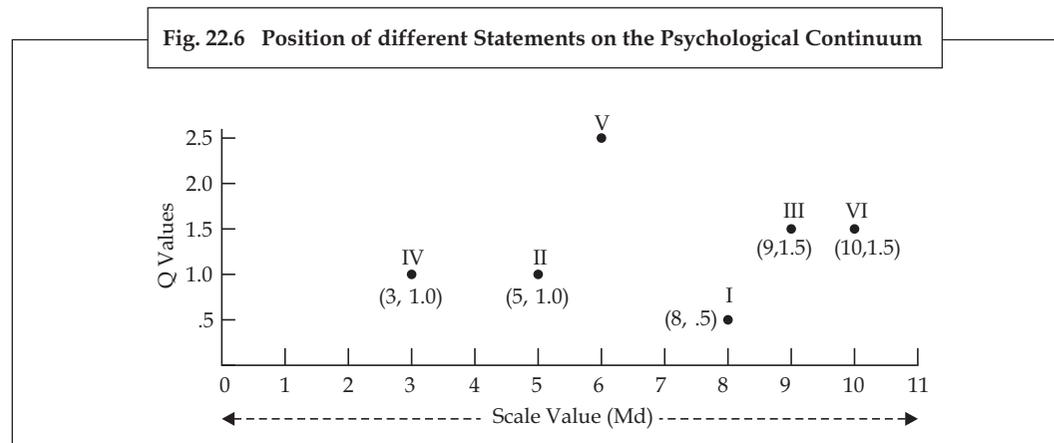
$cf_b$  = is the Cumulative Frequency of the series which is just below of the  $3N/4$ th cumulative frequency series.

$f$  = is the cumulative frequency of the  $3N/4$ th cumulative frequency series.

After knowing  $Q_1$  and  $Q_3$ ,  $Q$  is calculated through this formula.

$$Q = \frac{Q_3 - Q_1}{2}$$

For above mentioned four statements, the values of  $Q$ , subsequently 1.20, 1.46, 1.02 and 1.10 are obtained. In this way, scale values  $S$  and  $Q$  are known for all the statements. For statements, the values of  $S$  and  $Q$  can also be known with the help of graph and monographs. The scale value of different statements expresses psychological continuum. Scale values and fourth deviation of mentioned statements of Table 22.11 are shown in Figure 22.6.



After knowing the Scale Value and calculating the value of  $Q$ , a final form of scale is prepared by selecting some statements, considering both the values in mind. After that the reliability and legality of Scale is obtained.

It is clear from the above discussion that preparing attitude scale by Equal-Appearing Method, following steps are followed –

- (i) Normally, preparing and composing 50 or more than 50 attitude statements.
- (ii) Arranging the attitude statements in a sequence from unfavorable to favorable on the eleven-point psychological continuum by experts.
- (iii) Converting the judgments given by experts in numbers, and calculating the median and fourth deviation for every statement. The medians of received scores given by the experts will be called scale value of statement.
- (iv) By considering median and fourth deviation, scale values should be selected in such a way for attitude scale that the scale values of selected statements should be distributed on the entire Continuum in an equal interval and the fourth deviation should be less as possible.
- (v) Preparing the final draft of the attitude scale by arranging the selected statements in a random order.
- (vi) Applying the attitude scale on those people whose attitude is to be scaled, and to indicate favorable and unfavorable views on the statements from them.
- (vii) Obtaining the medians or mean values of scale values of the person who have agreed on the statements. That mean value or median will be the score value of the attitude of that person.
- (viii) To know the reliability and legality of the attitude scale and evaluate their norms.

Notes

## 22.4 Method of Summated Ratings

Unlike the Method of Paired comparisons and Equal Appearing **Interval Methods**, the scale values of the statements are not obtained on the basis of Psychological Continuum in Summated Rating Method, while it is assumed, that every statement indicates about attitude in a same manner, and the people have to give their scaled response on the statements. Therefore, Likert introduced Method of Summated Ratings in 1932 and it is also known as Likert's Method of preparing Scale Attitude and the scale is called Likert's Scale. For every statement to scale attitude in Likert's Method five responses, strongly agree, agree, undecided, disagree, strongly disagree, are presented. A person has to reflect his quantity of attitude about the statement by choosing any one of the five responses. In the beginning, Likert evaluated the Z value of (Frequencies), the number of person who selected all the five responses categories for a statement, by Normal Curve Transformation Method, and these Z values were accepted as a scale value for all the different response categories. The process of knowing Z value will be clarified in Table 22.12. Likert came to know that different scale Values will be received for all the five response categories of different statements. This process was very difficult, and to know Total Attitude Score of a person with the help of these scale values was a very difficult task.

But later Likert found that by giving the scale values of 4, 3, 2, 1 and 0 to all the five responses categories above mentioned, there was a full positive relation (more than .99) between the attitude scores obtained in this way and attitude scores obtained by the scale values obtained by the normal curve transformation. It is clear from the pre-described table that for the first, the scale values for different responses categories are 0, 1, 2, 2, and 3, and for the second statement, scale value are gradually 0, 1, 2, 3 and 4, which is near to category 0, 1, 2, 3 and 4. This is the reason why that Sigma Scoring Method was relinquished as a difficult method, and the simple method of 0, 1, 2, 3 and 4 came into existence. Now strongly agreed, agreed, undecided, disagreed and strongly disagreed responses are given the numbers 0, 1, 2, 3 and 4, respectively. The Total Attitude Score of a person, on the attitude scale prepared by Likert, is the total of the marks received on all the statements, because a person has to determine his responses on different statements, and the attitude score is expressed on the basis of total rating. Therefore **Bird** called this method of preparing attitude scale as Method of Summative Rating. This method of preparing attitude scale developed by Likert is more known as Method of Summative Rating in present. To prepare attitude scale by the Method of Summative Rating a big number of attitude statements are prepared first. Along with the pre-available statements on attitude scales, we can take a help from the articles published in newspapers, magazines, suggestions of experts and personal meetings.

Notes

**Self- Assessment**

Tick (✓) or (×) in front of given statement:

1. Once Attitude is formed, then it is difficult to change it.
2. Students are very much impressed by the attitude of a teacher.
3. Interest and Attitude are related with each other.
4. Attitude impresses the behavior of a person in a positive way.

<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>

**Table 22.12**

(Scale Values by NPC Transformation) ( $N = 200$ )

<i>State- ment</i>	<i>Response Category</i>	<i>Strongly Agree</i>	<i>Agree</i>	<i>Indefinite</i>	<i>Dis- agree</i>	<i>Strongly Disagree</i>
I	Frequency $f$	16	56	40	60	28
	Frequency ratio $p$	.08	.28	.20	.30	.14
	Cumulative frequency ratio $cp$	.08	.36	.56	.86	1.0
	Cumulative proportion of mid-point $mcp$	.04	.20	.46	.71	.93
	$Z$ (NPC) Table	-1.75	-.84	-.10	.55	-1.48
	$Z + 1.75$ To Create Positive	0	.91	1.65	2.30	3.23
	Closest Point Scale Value	0	1	2	2	3
II	Frequency $f$	24	68	40	60	8
	Frequency ratio $p$	.12	.34	.20	.30	.04
	Cumulative frequency ratio $cp$	.12	.46	.66	.96	1.0
	Cumulative proportion of mid-point $mcp$	.06	.28	.56	.81	.98
	$Z$ (NPC) Table	-1.56	-.58	-.15	.88	2.05
	$Z + 1.75$ To Create Positive		.98	1.71	2.44	3.61
	Closest point scale value	0	1	2	2	4

**Important**—To know mid-point cumulative ratio ( $p$ ), the half of the series frequency ratio is added in the cumulative frequency ratio ( $cp$ ) of the series below it.

Notes

Some statements are prepared negative and some positive. After the preparation of statements they are carefully published and the difficulties and vagueness of the language are removed. Pre-tryout method can also be used. From very well composed statements, some appropriate statements are selected. The method of selecting statement is different in Likert method from Thurston. According to Thurston Method, the statements were divided in different categories on the psychological continuum, and inappropriate statements were selected on the basis of scale value and fourth deviation. While in Summative Rating Method, by using the Post **Analysis Technique**, the discriminating power of statements is known, and on the basis of decimating power, the statements were selected. The statements having less discriminating power were rejected and the statements with more decimating power were accepted, considering them as appropriate statements for the survey. It is clear that scale values of the statements are pre-determined in Summative Rating Method, therefore, there is no question of obtaining their values. To know the discrimination power of the statements normally T test is used, and the statements having significant T values are considered as discriminating statements and which statements with significant T values are rejected. To select the statements prepared on the basis of discrimination power, first those statements are applied on a big sample of the people for whom the Attitude Scale is being prepared, and a total attitude score is obtained for the sample of every person. In the process of obtaining the score values, the responses are numbered as 0, 1, 2, 3, and 4. Positiveness and Negativeness is also considered while giving marks. When a statement is positive, 4 marks are given for a strongly agreed response, and for agreed response, 3 marks are given, for indefinite 2, for disagree 1, and for strongly disagree 0 is given. When the statement is negative, this order of giving marks/numbers is reversed, means for strongly agreed 0 is given, for agreed 1 is given, for indefinite 2 is given, for disagreed 3 is given and for strongly disagreed 4 is given. Here one more thing should also be understood that some scale manufactures also use numbers like 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 for grading different responses on statements in to Likert's Method. Actually both the processes 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, and 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 give the same information, only the place of mode or middle point is different, because Likert used 0, 1, 2, 3, 4 process therefore we have used this method in this book. For the last few years, some experts have also started using less than 5 or more than 5 responses categories for preparing attitude Scale in Likert method. For example, three point scale (0, 1, and 2) and seven point scale (0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, and 6) are also very popular methods. It is clear the number 1 and number 3 indicate the neutral and median stage on psychological continuum.

After calculating the responses given on different statements by the person and by adding them, attitude score mark is received, which is mentioned on the response sheet of that person. After receiving the **total** attitude marks from response sheet of the different people of a sample, they are ordered in an increasing order. In this sequence the response sheets having more than 27% marks are placed in high attitude group while less than 27% are placed in low attitude group. It can be assumed that these two groups are criterion groups for the evaluation of attitude statements, and the people getting more marks/numbers like 4 or 3 for a good statement should be placed in high attitude group, while the persons getting less marks/numbers like (0 or 1) should be placed in low attitude group. In other words any good statement should be discriminating. According to this assumption,  $t$  number of tests is done to evaluate the statements. For the test the Median ( $M_H$ ) and deviation value ( $\sigma_H$ ) of the marks scored by the high attitude group is obtained for every statement. Similarly  $M_L$  and  $\sigma_L$  received from the people of low attitude group is obtained. If there are  $n_H$  people in high group and  $n_L$  in lower group, then the ratio value can be calculated by the following formula:

Notes

$$t = \frac{M_H - M_L}{\sqrt{\frac{\sigma_H^2}{n_H} + \frac{\sigma_L^2}{n_L}}}$$

Where  $M_H$  = Median of marks received on statements of high group.

$M_L$  = Median of marks received on statements of low group.

$\sigma_H$  = Deviation of marks received on statements of high group.

$\sigma_L$  = Deviation of marks received on statements of low group.

$n_H$  = Number of people in high group.

$n_L$  = Number of people in low group.

If an equal percentage is used to separate high and low group, as is done above, then  $n_H = n_L$ , this can also be written as only  $n$ . This is clear that  $n$  denotes the number of people in high or low Group, then the above formula can be written as follows –

$$t = \frac{M_H - M_L}{\sqrt{\frac{\sigma_H^2 + \sigma_L^2}{n}}}$$

For the convenience of the readers, the process of calculating the  $t$  values for different statements in Likert Method will be clear from the following example. **For example**, suppose some statements were applied on 60 people and after knowing the attitude score, high and low groups were prepared on the basis of 27%, it is clear that both groups will have 16 people, then to know the median and deviation Value, following formula can be used –

$$M = \frac{\sum X}{n}$$

and

$$\sigma = \sqrt{\frac{\sum X^2}{n} - M^2}$$

A calculation of median value and deviation value for high and low attitude groups is presented in Table 22.13, while in Table 22.14 T value is obtained after comparing high and low groups for different statements. A decision can be made to include the statements in the final form of scale on the basis of significance of  $T$  values.

Notes

Table 22.13

Means and S.Ds for different Statements												
High Aptitude Group ( $n_H = 16$ )						Low Aptitude Group ( $n_L = 16$ )						
Person	Statement Number					Person	Statement Number					+
	I	II	III	IV	K		I	II	III	IV	K	
1	3	4	3	4	4	1	2	4	2	3	1	
2	4	3	4	3	2	2	1	2	2	2	3	
3	3	2	3	2	4	3	0	2	1	4	0	
4	4	4	4	2	3	4	1	1	3	3	0	
5	4	3	4	2	4	5	2	4	0	2	0	
6	2	4	4	2	4	6	0	2	2	2	2	
7	4	2	4	4	3	7	2	1	0	2	2	
8	2	0	4	0	4	8	0	2	2	3	0	
9	1	2	4	3	3	9	0	4	1	0	1	
10	4	2	2	4	4	10	0	1	1	2	1	
11	3	4	4	1	4	11	1	1	0	2	0	
12	0	3	3	4	3	12	4	1	2	1	1	
13	4	3	4	1	3	13	1	2	1	1	1	
14	4	2	4	3	3	14	1	1	0	1	0	
15	3	4	4	3	2	15	3	1	1	1	0	
16	2	1	3	3	3	16	2	0	1	1	0	
M	2.94	2.29	3.63	2.56	3.25	M	1.25	1.81	1.19	1.88	75	
S.D.	1.24	1.20	0.62	1.21	0.68	S.D.	1.81	1.22	1.91	1.02	0.93	

Notes

22.14

*t* Values for different Statements

Statement Number	High Group ( $n_H = 16$ )		Low Group ( $n_L = 16$ )		<i>t</i>	Sig-nificance level	Comment
	<i>M</i>	<i>S.D.</i>	<i>M</i>	<i>S.D.</i>			
I	2.95	1.24	.125	1.18	3.95	0.01	Selected
II	2.96	1.20	1.81	1.22	2.06	0.05	?
III	3.63	0.62	1.19	0.91	8.86	0.01	Selected
IV	2.56	1.21	1.88	1.02	1.72	NS	Cancelled
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
K	3.25	0.68	0.75	0.93	8.68	0.01	Selected

When the number of people is high in high and low categories groups, then it is easy to prepare frequency distribution for evaluating the values of median and deviations. For this, frequencies of the people who received 4, 3, 2, 1, and 0 marks on every statement are calculated separately for both groups. After that according to Table 22.15, calculation is done. The following formula is used for calculation:

Table 22.15

Comparison of Means for Different statements by Frequency Distribution

Statement	High Group ( $n = 108$ )						Low Group ( $n = 108$ )						<i>t</i>	Level	Decision
	<i>X</i>	<i>f</i>	<i>fx</i>	<i>fx</i> <sup>2</sup>	<i>M<sub>H</sub></i>	$\sigma_H$	<i>X</i>	<i>f</i>	<i>fx</i>	<i>fx</i> <sup>2</sup>	<i>M<sub>L</sub></i>	$\sigma_L$			
	4	25	100	400			4	19	76	304					
	3	40	120	360			3	20	60	180					Selected
I	2	27	54	108	2.68	1.00	2	30	60	120	2.09	1.23	3.87	.01	
	1	15	15	15			1	30	30	30					
	0	1	0	0			0	9	0	0					Selected
	4	45	180	720			4	4	16	64					
	3	31	93	279			3	8	24	72					

Notes

<b>II</b>	2	20	40	80	2.98	1.09	2	28	76	152	1.40	1.02	10.99	.01	
	1	9	9	9			1	35	35	35					
	0	3	0	0			0	23	0	0					
<b>III</b>	4	42	186	672			4	18	72	288					
	3	31	93	279			3	16	48	144					
	2	20	40	80	2.93	1.06	2	25	50	100	1.94	1.24	6.31	.01	Selected
	1	15	15	15			1	40	40	40					
	0	0	0	0			0	9	0	0					

$$M = \frac{\sum fX}{n}$$

and

$$\sigma = \sqrt{\frac{\sum fX^2}{n} - M^2}$$

The *T* values, received from above mentioned method show that how much a statement is successful in discriminating high and low group. If *t* is significant then the statement can be considered as discriminatory statement. For the significance of *T*, the significance level of .05 or .01 can be selected. One tailed test is being used here, so if the value of *n* is high, then value of *t* can be considered significant on the level of 0.5, if it is higher than 1.65 and on the level of 0.1 levels if it is more than 2.33. If the value of *n* is less, then to see the significance of *t*, the table of *t* values has to references. In Table 22.16, for different (*dfs*) on the levels of .05 and .01, *t* values are presented. In the comparison between two different groups the values of *df* in *t* test is ( $n_H + n_L - 2$ ). Normally the statements having significant difference on .01 levels are selected in scale, and insignificant statements are rejected. Statements on the significance level of .05 are considered less significant, and are included in scale only in the case of dire need.

Table 22.16

<i>df</i>	Significance level	
	.05	.01
10	1.81	2.76
20	1.72	2.53
30	1.70	2.46
40	1.68	2.42
50	1.68	2.40
60	1.67	2.39

Notes

70	1.67	2.38
80	1.66	2.38
90	1.66	2.37
100	1.66	2.36
200	1.65	2.35
300	1.65	2.34
400	1.65	2.34
500 Or more	1.65	2.33

In this way on the basis of received T values of different statements, the discrimination power is known, and the statements having significant discrimination power can be included in attitude scale, while statements having insignificant discriminating power were assumed inappropriate, thus rejected. While preparing attitude scale through summative rating method, normally 30 to 40 such statements are selected, which are capable to discriminate in high and low groups. Therefore statements having more T value are selected to be included in the scale. For this, statements having significant T value are arranged according to their T values, and 30 to 40 statements with high T value are separated. (The quantity of selecting statements depends upon the scale manufacturer's choice). It should also be kept in mind while selecting the statements that some should be positive and some negative. Normally, approximately half positive and half negative statements are selected. By separating both types of statements, the possibility of response set of the people while giving their responses on attitude scale get minimum. If only positive or negative statements are included in Scale, then there is a possibility of response tendency. To know the discriminatory values of statement, any other method of post analysis method can also be applied. At last by finalizing the statements in a random order, the final form of attitude scale is ready, and it can be applied on the people, whom attitude is to be scaled. The people have to give their response on statements of Scale, like strongly agreed, agreed, indefinite, disagreed and strongly disagree, by selecting any one of the five categories. The responses, on given statements by people, are given marks with the help of marking method like 4, 3, 2, 1 and 0, (if the statements are negative then 0, 1, 2, 3, and 4.) The total of all the marks received on statements, will indicate the total attitude of a person. After preparing the final draft of the scale, the reliability and legality is known through testing-retesting or semi-separation method. The legality of subject matter and concurrent legality can also be known. To explain the marks received on the scale they can be converted into standardized marks. For this, T-scores percentiles can be used. Scale manufacture can prepare a conversion table to convert the received marks into scored Marks on the scale.

It is clear from the above description that preparing attitude scale through Summative Rating methods, following steps are followed –

- (i) Prepare and compose at least 50 or more attitude statements.
- (ii) Present and apply the scale on a big sample of those people, for whom attitude scale is being prepared, in which every person have to express his response like strongly agreed, agreed, indefinite, disagree, strongly disagree by selecting any one, from five responses.
- (iii) Give marks through marking 4, 3, 2, 1, and 0 (if the statement is positive) or 0, 1, 2, 3, and 4 (if the statement is negative) and know the attitude score, on the given responses by people.
- (iv) Arrange the response sheets in a sequence on the basis of total score and separate them in high group or low group according to 27% discrimination method.
- (v) Calculate the medians and deviation value of marks secured from people of high groups on different statements.

- (vi) Calculate the medians and deviation value of marks secured from people of low group on different statements.
- (vii) Calculate value of T- ratio, for comparing the medians of high and low groups for every statement.
- (viii) Arrange significant T value statements, in a sequence on the basis of T values and select 30-40 statement with more T value.
- (ix) Prepare a final form of attitude scale by arranging the selected statements in a random order.
- (x) Apply the attitude scale on people and to know their total attitude score by evaluating statements through above described method.
- (xi) Apply attitude scale of people and know the reliability and legal coefficient.
- (xii) Prepare a conversion table to convert attitude scores in T scores or percentiles.

Notes

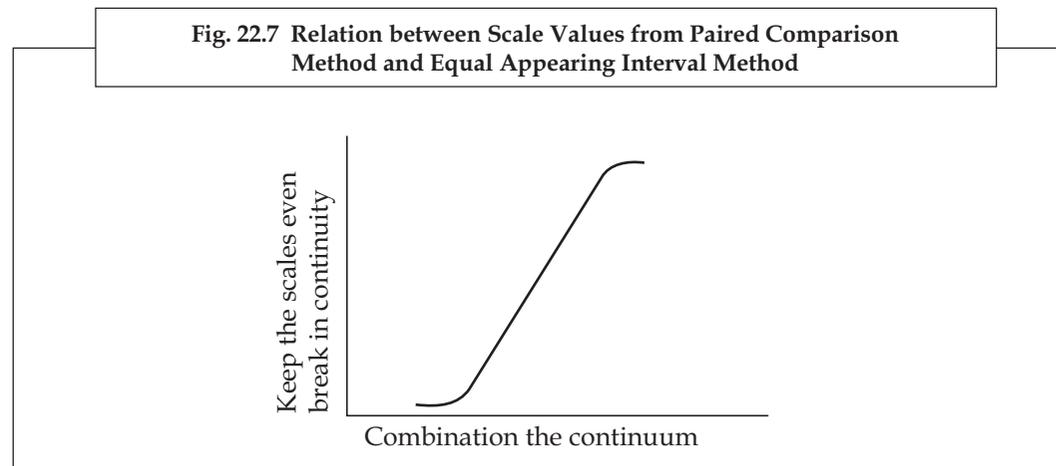
### Merits of Likert Method in Comparison of Thurston Method

Although Thurston method of preparing attitude scale was the first successful effort in the field of attitude scaling, but the method introduced by Likert is considered more useful for its easiness. It takes a very less time and effort to prepare attitude scale by Likert Method, along with this, there is no need to know the scale value of the statements by rescaling them from experts, but by getting the responses only from the people, the statements are selected. The evaluation of received scores is also very easy in Likert method, and the results received are also legal and reliable. A comparison of Likert and Thurston Method is given in the following Table 22.17.

Table 22.17

<b>Comparison of Likert and Thurston Method</b>	
<b>Likert Method (Method of Summated Ratings)</b>	<b>Thurston Method (Equal Appearing Intervals)</b>
1. Preparing attitude scale is an easy work.	1. Preparing attitude scale is a difficult Task.
2. This method saves time and labor.	2. This requires more time and labor.
3. Experts are not needed for the selection of statements.	3. Experts are needed for the selection of statements.
4. Statements are selected by calculating T-values by comparing the median values of the statements of the high and low groups.	4. Statements are selected by the experts by arranging them on psychological continuum and after obtaining median and fourth deviation.
5. All statements are given equal weightage.	5. Statements are prioritized on the basis of their scale values.
6. It can be used by untrained or undertrained people.	6. Proper training is needed for preparing attitude scale.
7. Results are more reliable.	7. Results are less reliable.
8. This is measured response method, in which response of the people on different statements are measured on attitude scale.	8. This is a measured statement method, in which various statements are measured on attitude scale.

Notes



## 22.5 Other Methods

Except the above explained, Couple Comparison Method, Equal Appearing Intervals Method and Summative Rating Method, some other methods are also developed for preparing attitude scale. These are described in brief in the following lessons, and for a deep study of it, interested students can get a vast knowledge from the literature available on preparing attitude scale.

### 1. Method of Successive Intervals

It was accepted in Equal-Appearing Intervals method of preparing attitude scale, that there is an equal interval between the points on psychological continuum, but this never happens actually. It was found during obtaining the theoretical relation between scale values received on the statements, through Couple Comparative Method and Equal Interval Method, on both the ends on psychological continuum specially, that the statement situated on both the ends on psychological continuum, the scale values received through Equal Interval Method had less influence as compare to Couple Comparative Method, while the scale values received from other statements from both the methods had linear relation.

It was also desirable in this type of situation to invent a new Scaling Method, which should be as easy as Equal-Appearing Interval Method, and can give the scale values as same as received from Couple Comparative Method, having linear relations on total continuum. Therefore many methods were developed which can remove the disparities of intervals on the psychological continuum. The method of successive intervals developed by Thurston, but not published, was published in 1937 by Safer. Method of Absolute Scaling by **Guilford** in 1938, Method of Graded Dichotomies Attneave in 1949, and **Method of Equal Discriminability** by **Garner and Hake** in 1951 presented these methods, with slight differences. Nowadays, all these methods are known as Method of Successive Intervals.

Actually, Method of Successive Interval is a converted form of Equal-Appearing Interval Method, in this method every Judge has to give one separate judgment on each statement. Therefore, this method is easy to use only in that condition, when the number of statements is more. Any psychological continuum like Eleven Points, Nine Points, and Seven Points can be adopted in this method. After arranging the statements in a sequence on different psychological continuum categories by experts, the scale values are known with the help of cumulative ratios. After that, the attitude scale is prepared through Equal Appearing Method, by selecting appropriate statements, and also the implementation and scaling is same as in Equal-Appearing Method.

## 2. Cumulative Method or Scalogram Method

Notes

Actually, Scalogram Method is not a method to prepare attitude scale, but it is a method to evaluate attitude scale, in which this is known if the given attitudes scale, is according to a special type of attitude scale studied by Gutman. Gutman said that if an attitude scale or a set of statements is scaling an attitude, means if it is a unidimensional scale, then on this attitude scale, a person getting maximum scores, will get either more scores or equal scores, as compared to any other person getting less scores, on all the statements of the scale. If this scale fulfills all the conditions, then it can be known as Cumulative Scale or Gutman Scale. The responses on the statements are analyzed on a scale in Scalogram Analysis, and it is observed that up to which limit, responses are being analyzed and up to which limit the attitude scale fulfills the conditions of Gutman Scale. For this IOR (Index of Reproducibility) is calculated. IOR, actually, expresses that particular limit up to which, only through the total marks secured on scale, the scores can be reproduced for different people on different statements. Gutman not described any kind of specific method for preparing his cumulative scale, and said that on the basis of experience and insight, statements can be selected. He also mentioned to take care about homogeneity, while selecting statements.

## 3. Scale Discrimination Method

Edward and Kilpatrick developed a method of preparing attitude scale in 1948 named Scaled Discrimination Technique. In this method they tried to select those statements through the Equal Appearing Intervals Method of Thurston, and Distributive Method of Likert, which can fulfill all the condition of Gutman Scale. The steps of preparing attitude scale by Scales Discrimination Method are same as in Equal-Appearing Interval Methods, first of all many psychological statements are collected and composed very carefully, after that with the help of Equal Appearing Method, the value of  $Q$  is known, and the statement having more  $Q$  values, near about 50%, are rejected, and the rest 50% statements are applied on a very large group of people in the form of Likert Scale, and for every statement discrimination value is known. Edward and Kilpatrick used Phi-Coefficient to know discrimination value. To know Phi-Coefficient, on the basis of response frequencies by people of High or Low Group are categorized in two categories - Lower and Higher Group. Phi-Coefficient can be calculated by arranging the frequencies according to Table 22.18.

**Table 22.18 Determining Phi Coefficient**

Response class	Group		Total
	fuEu	mPp	
High class	$a$	$b$	$a + b$
Low class	$c$	$d$	$c + d$
Total	$a + c$	$b + d$	
$\phi = \frac{bc - ad}{\sqrt{(a + b)(b + d)(a + c)(b + d)}}$			

**Notes**

To divide the responses in high and low Groups for different statements, the values of  $(a + d)$  are tried to minimize. In other words the responses are combined in such a way that the minimum value of  $(a + d)$  should be received, Nomograph can be used to know Phi-Coefficient.

After calculating phi-coefficients for all the statements, considering the scale values by Thurston and phi-coefficients, the statements is selected finally. The selected statements are given the form of arranged attitude scale arranged according to their Thurston scale values. This attitude scale can be applied on exercisable, in which people have to express their agreement and disagreements limits according to Likert Method. For calculating the responses on any statement, according to the process prepared for knowing phi-coefficient, for minimum response category, mark 0, is used and for high response category mark 1 is used.

## **22.6 Summary**

- Attitudes are very important part of the personality of a person. The appropriate valuation of Attitude could have been started 60 years before, approximately. In the earlier time attitude was scaled through Direct Questioning and Direct Observation Methods. By keeping in mind the limitations of these methods psychologist formulated scaled methods. These scaled methods can be divided in two main parts, Scaled Statement Method and Scaled Response Method. In the present time, Likert's Summative Rating Method, which is a Scaled Response Method, and Equal-Appearing Interval Method of Thurston and Chave, which is a Scaled Statement Method, are very much in use, and the maximum available attitude scales at present are prepared by both of these methods.
- Like any other scaled process, for preparing attitude scale, four main steps are followed (1) Planning about Scale (2) to prepare Attitude Statements (3) to select Attitude Statements (4) to ensure the reliability and legality of attitude and to know the medians.
- In the first step of preparing scale, nature of scale, number of statements, language of attitude, are considered. In the second step, attitude statements are collected and composed through different sources. In the third step appropriate statements are selected, and to select statements, Couple Comparative Method, Equal-Appearing Interval Method, Summative Method and any other method can be used. Mostly for selecting statements Equal-Appearing Interval Method of Thurston and Chave and Summative Rating Method of Likert are used. Likert's Summative Rating Method is mostly used in both of these methods, due to its easiness. In the fourth step of preparing scale, reliability and legality is known with the help of selected statements, and the list of values is prepared.

## **22.7 Keywords**

1. **Attitude**-Humor
2. **Random**-Disorderly

## **22.8 Review Questions**

1. What do you mean by Attitude? Describe the difference between Attitude and other similar concepts.
2. Describe the Methods of Attitude Scale in detail.
3. What is Attitude Scale? Describe the steps of Attitude Scale.
4. Describe Summative Rating Method.

**Answers: Self-Assessment**

Notes

1. (✓)                      2. (×)                      3. (✓)                      4. (✓)

**22.9 Further Readings**



*Books*

1. Development of Learner and Process of Learning Education – A. K. Verma, Hindi Book Centre, New Delhi.
2. Psychology – Dr. Saryu Prasad, Agra Book Store, Agra.
3. Education Psychology – S.K. Mangal, P. H. I. Learning Pvt. Ltd., New Delhi.
4. Psychology- Study of Human Behavior – Braj Kumar Mishra, P.H.I Learning, New Delhi.

## Notes

**Unit-23: Aptitude****CONTENTS**

Objectives

Introduction

- 23.1 Meaning of Aptitude
- 23.2 Measurement of Aptitude
- 23.3 General Aptitude Tests
- 23.4 Differential Aptitude Tests
- 23.5 Special Aptitude Tests
- 23.6 Summary
- 23.7 Keywords
- 23.8 Review Questions
- 23.9 Further Readings

**Objectives**

After studying this unit, students will be able to –

- Understand the meaning and measurement of aptitude.
- Obtain information concerning the general, cathartic and specific aptitude tests.

**Introduction**

In everyday life, it can often be heard from several people like teachers, parents, administrators, Officers, reviewers etc. that particular student's is interested in mechanical works therefore he would be an engineer, or a student may become a better musician in the future, a girl, will be more successful as a housewife in future or so and so will be a talented and able administrator. These types of statements of these individuals means that the concerned student, girl or person has such type of talent, ability or capacity which may play an important role in getting success in a specific sector. Such talent, aptitude or ability is usually congenital and it is called aptitude in the language of psychology. Knowledge of aptitude is an important factor in the field of educational, professional and psychological consultation. By identification of the aptitude of children, they must be educated and trained in those specific areas where they can excel. Forcing the children to join an aptitude-less field, is actually a sheer wastage of time, money, and power. At the time of selecting the candidates

for education and employment, the aptitude of the individual should be kept in mind. Measurements of aptitude are discussed in this chapter.

Notes

### 23.1 Meaning of Aptitude

Aptitude indicates the specific ability and capacity of an individual in a particular area.

According to Bingham, “An aptitude is a characteristic or set of conditions, that are symptomatic to the individual’s ability to acquire with some specified training some knowledge or skill or a set of responses in a given field.”

In the words of Freeman, “An aptitude is a city combination of characteristics indicative of an individual’s capacity to acquire (with training) some specific knowledge, skill or set of organized responses, such as the ability to speak a language, to become a musician, to do mechanical work.”



*Notes* Proficiency not only includes efficiency in motor and manual activities but it also includes other work efficiencies in language, history, economics, mathematics, science etc.

It is clear from the above interpretation that aptitude is the trend, interest and ability of an individual which is important for achieving success in a particular work, syllabus or business. Readers also have to understand the difference between an aptitude, and skills and proficiency. Skills imply the ability to do a given task with ease and precision. Meaning of proficiency is much the same but it is more comprehensive than skills. Proficiency not only includes efficiency in motor and manual activities but it also includes other work efficiencies in language, history, economics, mathematics, science etc. Aptitude means to acquire the proficiency in a particular area in appropriate circumstances. In other words, aptitude indicates the potential ability of prediction to achieve success in a particular area. The real intent of Aptitude will be apparent from Figure 23.1

Bingham has mentioned the five key features of aptitude; these five characteristics are as follows:

- (i) Existing aptitude of a person is a set of his qualities that indicate its future capabilities.
- (ii) Aptitude of a person expresses his fitness to perform a task.
- (iii) Aptitude is not the name of a tangible object or ability but an abstract noun which expresses special attribute of the personality of a person.
- (iv) Aptitude is the symbol of the future capabilities while staying in future.
- (v) Ability, interest and satisfaction closely relate to aptitude.

In addition to the above mentioned five characteristics of aptitude, Bingham also described the following three assumptions of aptitude:

- (1) All the aptitudes of a person are not same. Differences in different aptitudes of a person are natural. A person may have less aptitude for a work but he may have more aptitude for any other task.
- (2) The nature of the aptitude is individual. In other words, individual differences are found in aptitudes. Differences in aptitudes of any two individuals are obvious.
- (3) Though aptitudes of person remain stable but there may change, however these changes are gradual and very meager.

Notes

### 23.2 Measurement of Aptitude

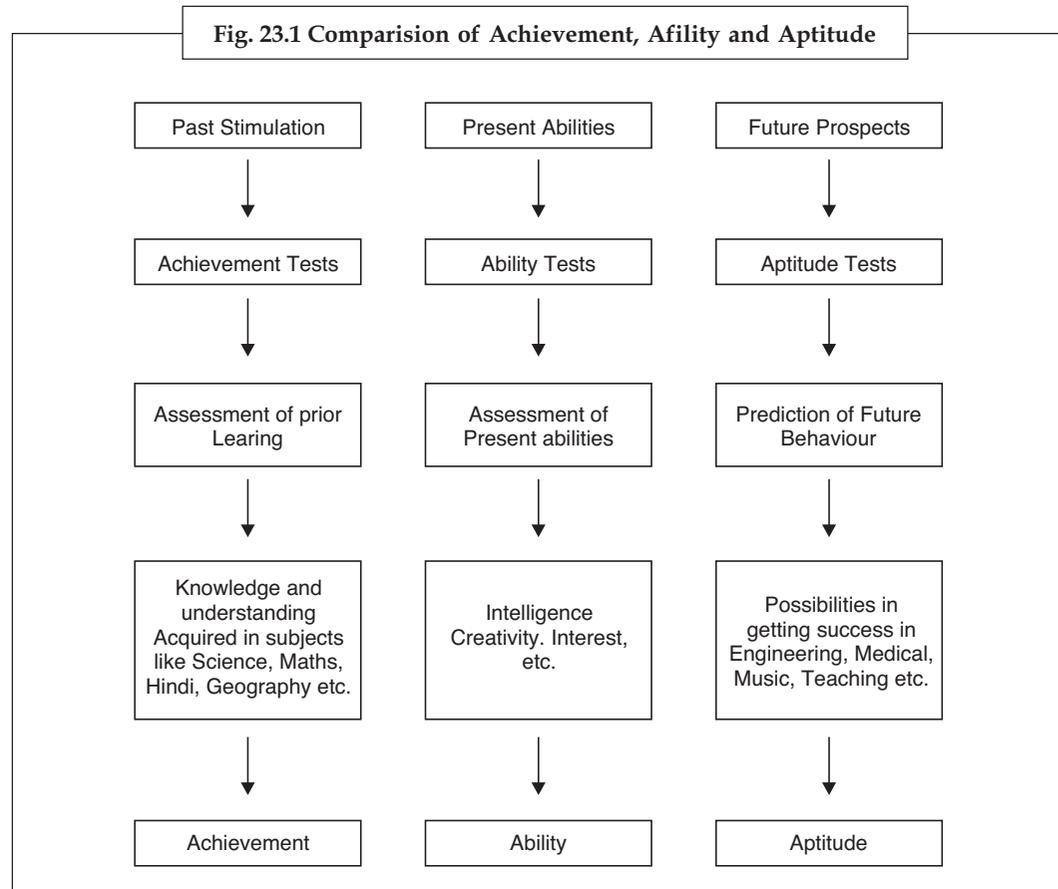
Aptitude tests are used to measure the aptitude. According to Freeman, “An aptitude test is one designed to measure a person’s potential ability in an activity of a specialized kind and within a restricted range.”



*Did u know?* The process of aptitude test is more or less same as IQ tests. The basic difference is basically of the content of the works and activities which are used in the test.

Aptitude tests can be classified in three parts on the basis of their nature –

- (i) **General Aptitude Test**
- (ii) **Differential Aptitude Test**
- (iii) **Specified Aptitude Tests**



### 23.3 General Aptitude Tests

General aptitude test can measure any normal action potential. These tests often measure the person’s general intelligence, learning ability or mental ability. These types of the test indicate the success in future

of a person because by the general intelligence tests educational success of a student can be predicted successfully. So some scholars also like to call them scholastic aptitude test. It is clear that in the aptitude test category, the instruments like general mental ability tests or general intelligence test are used.

Notes

### 23.4 Differential Aptitude Tests

These types of aptitude tests are generally battery type tests. In other words we can say that these tests are either a series or chain of tests or they have different sub-tests. These different tests or sub-tests indicate a person's efficiency in different fields and on the basis of the comparative study of the scored points in these tests, the areas with maximum aptitude are recognized. As these tests also indicate the differences in the aptitude, they are also called differential aptitude tests. These tests include tests related to verbal, numerical, place, mechanical knowledge, clerical capability, and behavioral tendencies. Discriminative aptitude tests (DAT), general aptitude test battery (GATB), aptitude observation (AS), and aptitude classification tests are some of the foreign aptitude tests. Some of these tests have already been pursued in Indian conditions and are used in India. No fundamental and successful test of differential aptitude has been done in India till now. To give the knowledge of the differential aptitude test, following description of DAT by the psychological corporation of America is presented here.



Task

Give your views on the reasons why no fundamental and successful test of differential aptitude has been done in India till now?

The Differential aptitude test (DAT) by Bennett, Seashore and Wesman, published by psychological corporation of America is one of the most famous and popular aptitude tests. This test is for Class VIII to XII and its forms, S and T, are available. Every form has eight sub-tests which are arranged in two test booklets. One booklet includes four tests: verbal reasoning (VR) numerical ability (NA), abstract reasoning (AR) and clerical speed and accuracy (CSA) and a time limit of 30, 30, 25 and 6 minutes total 91 minutes, respectively, is determined for each test. Other booklet is comprised of other four tests: mechanical reasoning (MR), space relations (SR), spelling (SP) and language usage (LU) and they are assigned a time limit of 30, 25, 10, and 25 minutes (total 90 minutes). Though the time is fixed for all the eight tests, but only the test of clerical speed and accuracy is a speed test, while all others are power tests. The whole test can be administered in four or six sessions as per the situation. Scores are given for each test. The test makers also indicated a ninth scoring point, i.e., VR + NA which is expressed as general scholastic aptitude. These nine marks are changed into percentile ranks and Stanines. By using equivalent method for clerical test and semi severance method for other tests, the reliability coefficients of sub-tests are found from 79-97 for boys and 80-97 for girls. The predictive validity and concurrent validity of this test chain is obtained here.

The results of the research work related to the prediction of the scored grades by the students in different subjects with the help of DAT are following –

- (i) Marks in VR + NA, LU and VR can very well predict the grades in English.
- (ii) Marks in VR + NA, or from NA only, the grades in mathematics can be very well predicted.
- (iii) Marks in VR + NA, VR, NA or LU can very well predict the grades in science.
- (iv) Marks in VR + NA, VR, NA or LU can also very well predict the grades in social studies.
- (v) The value of the correlation coefficient between the best marks in DAT in the sub-tests and the grades in different subject was from 40 to 60.
- (vi) The value of the correlation coefficient between the marks in VR+NA and the marks in general knowledge tests was from 70 to 85.

Notes

### **23.5 Special Aptitude Tests**

Specific aptitude tests are used to measure the aptitude of a person in any specific field. For example Mechanical aptitude test, Music aptitude test, teaching aptitude test, and medical aptitude test are prepared to measure the aptitude of a person in the fields of mechanics, music, teaching and medical. To measure the specific aptitudes, following are the some foreign tests:

- (i) Seashore Measures of Musical Talent
- (ii) Wing standardized Tests of Musical Intelligence
- (iii) Musical Aptitude Profile
- (iv) Horn Art Aptitude Inventory
- (v) Meier Art Tests
- (vi) Graves Design Judgment Tests
- (vii) Minnesota Clerical Test
- (viii) Test of Mechanical Comprehension
- (ix) Medical College Admission Test
- (x) Law School Admission test
- (xi) Pre-Engineering Ability test

In India also, some aptitude measurement tests are prepared by the researchers, psychology schools and commercial consulting firms. Some of them are following –

- (i) Mechanical Aptitude Test - Atmanand Sharma
- (ii) Clerical Aptitude Test - Kiran Gupta
- (iii) Scientific Aptitude Test Series - K.K. Agrawal
- (iv) Teaching Aptitude Test - Singh and Sharma
- (v) Test of L form of DAT - J.M. Ojha

### **Self Assessment**

Fill in the Blanks:

- (1) Marks in VR + NA, or from NA only, the grades in ..... can be very well predicted.
- (2) The value of the correlation coefficient between the best marks in DAT in the sub-tests and the grades in different subject was from .....
- (3) The Seashore Measure of Musical Talent comes under ..... test.
- (4) In Indian, the credit for Mechanical Aptitude Test goes to .....

The pre-medical tests for the admission in medical colleges, the admission test for engineering education and the B.Ed. Admission test for B.Ed. Classes are some of the non-standardized aptitude tests.

### **23.6 Summary**

- The efficiency or capability of a person which predicts a person's success in a specific field is called aptitude. With the help of aptitude, the success or failure of a person can be predicted. Aptitudes indicate the possible potentials of a person. Aptitude tests are used for measuring aptitudes.

- Aptitude tests are divided in three categories: (i) General Aptitude tests, (ii) Differential Aptitude tests, and (iii) Specific aptitude tests. The General aptitude tests measure the general efficiencies and capabilities of a person. These are very much like mental ability tests or IQ tests, which are capable of predicting the normal success and failure of a person. The Differential Aptitude tests indicate the aptitudes in different fields. They are general series type of tests. Specific aptitude tests are used to measure the aptitude of a person in any specific field. In India, there has been very minimal work in the field of aptitude tests.

Notes

### 23.7 Keywords

1. **Aptitude:** Interest, Ability

### 23.8 Review Questions

1. What is Aptitude? Describe with definition.
2. Describe the various Aptitude Tests used for measuring aptitude.
3. Describe the characteristics of Differential and Specific aptitude test.

### Answers: Self-Assessment

1. Mathematics
2. 40 to 60
3. Specific Aptitude
4. Atmanand Sharma

### 23.9 Further Readings



Books

1. Importance of Education in Children and Information— *Seema Chopra, Hindi Book Centre, New Delhi*
2. Educational Psychology— *S.K. Mangal, PHI Learning Pvt. Ltd., New Delhi*
3. Development of Learner and Teaching Learning Process— *A.K. Verma, Hindi Book Centre, New Delhi.*
4. Psychology— *Study of Human Behavior, Brajkumar Mishra, PHI Learning Pvt. Ltd., New Delhi.*

## Notes

## Unit-24: Individual Differences

**CONTENTS**

Objectives

Introduction

- 24.1 Meaning and Nature of Individual Differences
- 24.2 Causes of Individual Differences
- 24.3 Varieties of Individual Differences
- 24.4 Importance of the Knowledge of Individual Differences
- 24.5 Summary
- 24.6 Keywords
- 24.7 Review Questions
- 24.8 Further Readings

### Objectives

After the study of this unit, student will be able to –

- Understand the meaning and nature individual Differences.
- Understand the causes of individual differences.
- Understand the varieties of individual differences.
- Understand the importance of the knowledge of individual differences.
- Understand the factor influencing individual differences.

### Introduction

Individual differences are the traits and blessing of nature. Generally all persons look same, but it is seen after doing close study that there is some difference among them. No one can look like the other in physique, mental ability and the virtues. Nature and environment both play important role in this type of differences. The children of same parents look very different in physical shape, mental power, behavior and educational achievements. Heredity and environment are the basis for individual differences obtained by virtues. Every body has his unique characteristics, which present him as a different person. The scientific study of individual difference has started some time ago.

As soon as the study related to development of psychology and behavior developed, the attention of educationalist was also attracted towards it. In the beginning, Sir Frances Galton paid attention towards it during the study of heredity in 19 century. Then in the 20<sup>th</sup> century, **Pearson, Catell** and **Terman** etc psychologists studied it. Consequently on the basis of this study, after knowing the causes of individual differences, educationalists developed the plan for education, the proper and important theories and education methods in the field of education. These educational psychologists encouraged the child centered education, by which the proper education could be arranged for the children, after studying their age, intelligence, interest and ability. Physical, moral, mental, and social progress of each child can be done according to individual differences. Mr. **Skinner** said, “there is a special period for the development of each possibility of a child, this period is different for different people, if it is not tried to develop this within proper time, it is destroyed.” Hence it is important for the development of personality that education should be arranged according to individual differences.

Notes

## 24.1 Meaning and Nature of Individual Differences

Individual differences or personality differences means the differences of one man from other in color, physique, special ability, interest, nature, achievement and other virtues of man. There is no person in the world, which is completely like the other. Even the similarity is not found between two sons of one parent.



Notes

Under the individual differences, attention is paid on the physical, mental, emotional and social characteristics of man, and on the basis of these characteristics, a unique man is made.

In the field of education, even from the ancient times, individual differences are seen on the basis of mental ability, by which, they have more or less differences. According to **Skinner**, “ Today we think that in the individual differences, only such aspects of whole personality should be included, which can be measured.” It is identified from the definition of **Skinner** that all the aspects of personality come under the individual differences, which can be measured. Whichever aspects of men are included under the individual differences, after identifying them, the nature of individual differences is identified. According to Mr. Taylor – “ Measurable differences have been shown to exist in physical size and shape, physiological functions, motor capabilities, intelligence, achievement and knowledge, interests, attitude and personality traits.”

Educational psychology is related to students. It is important to study it from the educational point of view. Children of different abilities and intelligence are found in the class. Differences are found in their personalities, which affect their education, and personal differences are found among them as well, today attention is not only paid on the differences related to acquiring knowledge or subject ability, but their whole personalities are studied after considering their individual differences of their physical, moral, emotional and social characteristics. It is identified from the above opinion that from the educational point of view, individual difference is related to all those capabilities and traits by which personality is developed and constructed.

It is identified from the above opinion that whatever differences are found in the physical, mental capability and personality related traits, are the basis of individual differences.

**The Bases of Individual Differences** – The important bases of individual differences are following –

(1) Heredity (2) Environment.

**Notes**

**(1) Heredity** – Heredity is a trait that comes to children by their parents and other ancestors, which includes physical, mental and practical virtues. Affinity and differences are seen on the basis of it. Heredity is the important basis of individual differences. Due to heredity, physical and mental differences are found.

**(2) Environment** – Environment has an important place in the human-development. From the Social and psychological point of view, all those things come under environment, which affect human development and its relations. In this way environment has its extended meaning. In whichever environment, a man lives, he is affected by it. Individual differences are developed by the effect of environment. Its description has been presented further.

## **24.2 Causes of Individual Differences**

Psychologists have told many causes of individual differences. Important causes are following –

**(1) Heredity** – The important basis of individual difference is heredity. Psychologists **Galton, Pearson, Turman, Mangugal and Binet** etc. have proved it. Heredity is the important cause of the physical, mental and conducts characteristics of man. The transition of ancestral virtues are found from one generation to another and that's why differences are seen in the man. For instance- the children of intelligent parent are intelligent and the children of dull parent are dull. Sometimes differences are found between the children of one parent. They are a little bit different in the mental power, nature and other virtues from one another. They are so because of heredity.

**(2) Environment** – Environment is the second cause of individual difference. Under the environment, man is affected by the environment of family, social, geographical and cultural environment. According to that he has physique, mental development, living, behavior, conduct and thinking. For example the child of educated and well mannered family is different from the child of uneducated family. Differences are seen between the children of village and city, cold country and hot country. The country which has cold environment, the people, who belong there, are healthy and hard working, and the people who belong to the country of hot environment are lazy and weak.

**(3) Age and Intelligence** – The physical, mental, and emotional development of child is done according to his age. So the difference is seen in the child of different age. Intelligence is accepted as the innate capability. Yet the development of capability is related to age and environment. Differences are found in men due to intelligence. Hence in case of differences, found in men, they are put in such sequence, which can vary from foolish to talented. The difference in intelligence creates much difference among men.

**(4) Health** – Individual difference is found due to physical health. Some are healthy and powerful, some people are weak, thus differences are found in the physical health and working capability of them. Physical health is related to mental health. There is much difference between the completely healthy and unhealthy men. Physical health is the basis of individual difference.

**(5) Caste, Race and Nation** – Caste, Race and Nation has an important place in the causes of individual differences. For example- the children of Brahmin caste are studious, the children of kshtriya are lover of battle and courageous and the children of Vaishyas are expert in trading. American children are more intelligent and skillful than the children of Negros. In the same way the physical, mental and emotional characteristics of one nation are different from other. We can recognize the person of different countries due to the causes of individual differences.

**(6) Education and Economical Condition** – Man is properly developed by the education and he becomes courteous, serious and thoughtful. Education makes him different from the illiterate and uncivil man. The economical condition of family affects the physical, educational, emotional and social development.

**(7) Sex Difference** – There is difference in the physical, mental and emotional development of boy and girl. From the physical point of view, girl develops faster than boy. Due to this development, difference is

found in the mental development. There is affinity between the nature and other virtues of personality. For example-boys are strict and brave and hard working by nature while the girls are soft, kindhearted and shy and peace lover.

**(8) Maturity** – Maturity is generally related to the age of man. Physical and mental Maturity comes after the birth of child gradually. Some children are soon physically and mentally developed, maturity comes in them early. The education of child is closely related to maturity. This maturity comes in any child soon or in other later. Thus this is also an important cause of individual difference.

**(9) Motor Ability** – Due to motor related ability, some people do work soon and skillfully. In the motor skill, there is intelligence along with age. According to this, differences are found between different men.

**(10) Background** – The children, who join the school, belong to whichever families and community, differences are found in their backgrounds. For example- the children of highly educated rich family are quite different from the children of uneducated and lower class families. Children' emotional, social, moral and appearance development is affected by their family and society. Individual Differences are seen in case of different family and social back-ground.

**(11) Effect Over Mental Development** – Mental abilities are not developed equally in all children. Intelligence, imagination, observation, logical power, memory and the capability of learning come under mental abilities. Intelligence is most important among them. Individual differences are found due to the mental age and physical age of children.

**(12) Effects of Emotions** – Differences are seen among the men due to emotions. Men are seen angry, quarrelsome and strict, while other is laughing, lover of peace and kind hearted. Thus individual differences are also affected by the emotional factor.

**(13) Special Abilities** – Every one has some abilities besides common abilities. These mental abilities are related to mental, artistic, personality related and motor skills. Everyone cannot do same work. When they select the occupation according to their interest and special ability, they succeed. Individual differences are seen in scientists, doctors, engineers, teachers, politicians, artists and musicians due to special abilities.

**(14) Acquiring Power** – Psychologists have proved that acquiring power is found more in some or less in some. One child understands the subject easily, because of having acquired power, and other understands it later. In the same class any student has the fast ability of learning while other has slow. Someone gets best marks in the examination, then someone common, we call them intelligent or dull on the basis of it. Individual differences are seen because of this type of receiving power.

**(15) Personality** – Personality is the sum of all traits of the man. Everyone has physical, mental and emotional and intellectual traits different from other. From the physical point of view beautiful- ugly, fatty- thin, from the emotional point of view strict- soft, quarrelsome -humble, lover of peace, courteous from the intellectual point of view, intelligent and dull men are found. Individual differences are found because of this type of personality traits.

The above causes of individual differences are generally related to all men. Garrison and others have described some causes of individual differences, found in the students who read in the school. "The difference among children may best be accounted for by variation in the motivation, intelligence, maturation and environmental stimulation."

### 24.3 Varieties of Individual Differences

Whatever differences are found among two men, the basis of that personality differences or types of differences is certain. The types of personality differences are seen in the following areas –

**(1) Physical Difference** – Under the physical difference, physical health, weight, high, sex differences and physical maturity come. Some men are fatty, some are thin, some are tall some are short; some are

**Notes**

fair, some are beautiful, some are ugly, it is the consideration of psychologist that ability, intelligence, tendency and interest are affected by all these things.

**(2) Mental Differences** – The following things are included under mental difference-

- (A) Intellectual development Related to Differences.
- (B) Main Tendency Related to Difference.
- (C) Difference in learning.
- (D) Interest related differences.
- (E) Nature related differences.

**(A) The Cause of Intellectual Differences** – Some one is intelligent, some one is wise, someone is less wise and some one is common or dull minded or foolish. The observation of this ability is done by intelligence-test.

**(B) Main Tendency Related Differences** – Some men are kind Hearted, some are strict, some are laughing and cheerful and some are always sad and disappointed. In this way, some have collective nature and some have curious nature. A man having curious nature always tries to know and learn new things.

**(C) Differences in Learning and Obtaining Knowledge** – In the field of education the meaning of individual differences is that the difference that is found in different syllabus and reading and writing of student, by which difference is found in its achievement. It is known by the quotient examination that difference is found in the capability of learning of student. Teacher should adopt personal and class-method according to need because of having difference in the capability of learning of student.

**(D) Interest Related Difference** – Some students are expert in reading, some are in playing. There is different in the interest of child and adult, boys-girls, men and women.

**(E) Nature Related Difference** – Some men are wicked while others are polite. In the same way difference is found in the nature of boy and girl.

**(3) Personality Related Differences** – Psychologists have called some men introvert, or some extrovert due to personality related virtues. There are many types of personality differences. It is necessary to know about the personality related differences for obtaining the knowledge of personality differences. It has been described further chapter.

**Variability in Individual Traits** – It has been described the nature, causes, basis and scope of individual difference in the previous pages. It has been identified from this detail that one man is different from other from different causes. Sometimes some virtues are found in man different from the other , inequality or difference is seen in them. Whatever difference is found in the skill, ability and virtues of the man, that is called the trait variability. For example if the different abilities of one student is tested, sometimes he seems above average and other seem below average, in the same way one student may be intelligent in one subject and dull in other subjects. As an artist is intelligent in arts but he is dull in maths. From the educational point of view, variability has great importance.



*Did u know?* What ever differences are found in the virtues, abilities and skills of men, that is called trait variability.

### **24.4 Importance of the Knowledge of Individual Differences**

Modern psychologists give importance to individual differences in the education of children. A teacher can do more welfare of his students after the knowledge of individual differences. Often there

are intelligent and dull minded students except common student in every class. Class education is good for the children of common intelligence. Dull minded and intelligent students do not take the advantage of it, because every one is educated by the same method generally. There is no advantage of giving education to all students by one method. Hence it is important keeping in mind the individual differences, the following things should be added in the education of children.

Notes

### Self Assessment

Put right and wrong sign in front of given statements:

1. Heredity is the important basis of physical, mental and conducts characteristics of men.
2. Acquiring power is equal in all men.
3. It will be justified to give education to students by one method.
4. Generally maturity is related to the age of men.

**(1) Limited Size of Class**—Keeping in mind the individual differences of children, the numbers of students should not be more in the class. It is the opinion of psychologist that there should not be more students than 20 or 25 in a class, in case of having more students in the class, teacher cannot establish connection with the students. Ross has said in this relation- “The number of students should be less under every teacher so that he could know them very well, without knowing it he could call some student to do some work impossible which is impossible for them to perform.”

**(2) Division of Students**—Student should be divided in homogeneous groups on the basis of their individual differences in each class. The physical age, social and emotional tendency of children should be kept in mind in this type of division. On the basis of general quotient intelligent, general and dull minded children should be kept in separate sections. Each student gets the opportunity of progressing in this type of class division.

**(3) Syllabus Construction**—Keeping in mind the interest, intellectual level, aptitude, tendency and needs of students and according to the individual differences, syllabus should be constructed. Various kinds of subjects should be included in the syllabus. Syllabus should be flexible. Mr. **Skinner** thinks in this way that whatever is the reason for the individual differences of the children, we should face these differences.

**(4) Selection of Teaching Method**—Teaching methods should be used on the basis of individual differences. It is un psychological to teach all student by one method.

**(5) Arrangement of Individual Education**—In the modern educational world, various types of educational method are invented for giving personal education, which are following—

(a) Dalton Plan, (b) Project Plan, (c) Montessori, (d) Kinder Garten, (e) Winnetia Plan

This method is invented by Carlton Washburns. In this method , learner is given an opportunity to learn according to his speed, paying attention on personality training, Mr. Ross has said, “ division according to kinds is not the real solution of difficulties but personal training, as in the Montessori method and Dalton method, in which success is sure, there is no place for doubt.”



Task

Explain in the context of current government educational method that the effort of giving education on the basis of individual differences can succeed? Give logic in favor or against.

**(6) Educational Direction**—A teacher can give direction to students after getting the information of individual differences. Teacher can tell them that which subjects they can select in the high school and intermediate classes.

**Notes**

**(7) Occupational Direction**—Students can be supported in the selection of favorable occupation, after studying their virtues related to physical, mental and personal aspects. The main purpose of education is to earn money, so it is necessary to select any occupation for living. Hence on the basis of individual differences, it is important to give them occupational directions.

**(8) Education According to Sex Differences**—There is difference in the interests, capabilities, abilities and needs of boys and girls. Hence their education should be arranged according to their differences. In the beginning, their syllabus can be same but there should be some difference in the middle classes. As in the present time Home science is necessary for girls and math for the boys.

**(9) Home Work**—It is necessary to keep in mind, the individual differences of students during the time of giving homework to them. It will be proper to give difficult homework to intelligent students, and easy to dull.

**(10) Support in the College, Family and Society**—College, family and society is one of the most important factors, influencing the individual differences. Hence according to education- psychology, there should be Personal Corporation among these organizations for getting to the purpose of proper development of child.

**(11) Establishment of Multi-Purpose Colleges**—Multi purpose colleges should be established according to the children of special abilities, in which the work of craft, wood and leather and the education of other techniques should be arranged.

The educational importance of individual difference is identified from the above description.

## **24.5 Summary**

- Every body has his unique characteristics, which present him as a different person. The scientific study of individual difference has started some time ago. As soon as the study related to development of psychology and behavior developed, the attention of educationalist was also attracted towards it. In the beginning, Sir Frances Galton paid attention towards it during the study of heredity in 19 century. Then in the 20<sup>th</sup> century, Pearson and Catell and Terman etc psychologists studied it. Consequently on the basis of this study, after knowing the causes of individual differences, educationalists developed the plan for education, the proper and important theories and education methods in the field of education.
- Individual differences or personality differences means the differences of one man from other in color, physique, special ability, interest, nature, achievement and other virtues of man.
- According to **Skinner**, “Today we think that in the individual differences, only such aspects of whole personality should be included, which can be measured.” It is indentified from the definition of **Skinner** that all the aspects of personality come under the individual differences, which can be measured.
- The important bases of individual differences are following— (1) Heredity (2) Environment.
- Psychologists have told many causes of individual differences. Important causes are following— Heredity, Environment, Age and Intelligence, Health, Caste, Race and Nation, Education and Economical Condition, Sex Difference, Maturity, Motor ability, Background, Effect over mental development, Effects of Emotions–Special Abilities, Acquiring Power, Personality.

## **24.6 Keywords**

1. **Variability**—Move here and there, changes.

**24.7 Review Questions**

Notes

1. Throw light on the meaning and nature of individual difference.
2. Explain the causes of individual differences.
3. How many types does individual difference have?
4. Show the importance of the knowledge of individual difference in the education.
5. Explain the factors influencing the individual difference.

**Answers: Self-Assessment**

1. (✓)            2. (×)            3. (×)            4. (✓)

**24.8 Further Readings**

Books

1. The Importance and Information of Education in the Children— *Seema Chopra, Hindi Book Center, New Delhi.*
2. The Development of Learner and Teaching Learning Process— *A.K. Verma, Hindi Book Center, New Delhi.*
3. Education Psychology— *S.K. Mangal, P.H.I Learning PTV, New Delhi.*
4. Education Psychology— *S.H. Sinha and Rachna Sharma, Atlantic Publications, New Delhi.*

## Notes

## Unit-25: Factors Affecting Individual Differences

**CONTENTS**

Objectives

Introduction

25.1 Factors Affecting Individual Differences

24.2 Summary

24.3 Keywords

24.4 Review Questions

24.5 Further Readings

### Objectives

After the study of this unit, student will be able to:

- Understand the various factors influencing individual differences.

### Introduction

No two individuals are alike. They differ from each other in many ways. They differ in age, sex, hereditary potential, intelligence, achievement, interests, and aptitudes, needs physical, social, emotional and developmental.

By individual differences we mean physical and behavioural variations, seen in all species including human beings. These differences are caused by heredity and environment. Heredity is determined by genes, chromosomes and cytoplasm. Environment is determined by family, school neighborhood and place of work.

Individual differences are generally measured through psychological tests such as intelligence or personality. The differences are generally presumed to be normally distributed in population. Knowledge of individual differences is helpful in clinical work as well as in educational set up.

We have seen different causes of individual differences as:

- Difference in Growth Rate
- Difference in Socio-Economic Backgrounds
- Interaction of Heredity and Environment
- Physiological Differences

Let us see several factors affecting individual differences.



**Notes** According to Skinner, "Today we think of individual differences as including any measurable aspect of the total personality." From this definition of individual differences it is evident that it comprehends every aspect of the human personality, albeit all aspects that is in some manner measurable.

Notes

## 25.1 Factors Affecting Individual Differences

A well-planned lesson does not teach all students with equal effectiveness. Usually, however, you soon see that this is natural. One manifestation of the difference among students is that they seldom learn at the same rate. Differences in rates of learning are based on differences in intelligence, background, experience, interest, desire to learn, and countless psychological, emotional, and physical factors. You must recognize that students are different. You must recognize that this fact dictates how much you can teach, at what rate, and when.

The major factors that influence individual differences in behavioural patterns are personality, demographic factors, abilities and skills, perception, attitudes and perception. Let us discuss them and they are as follows:

1. **Personality:** Personality can be defined as the study of the characteristics and distinctive traits of an individual, the inter-relations between them and the way in which a person responds and adjusts to other people and situations. The several factors that influence the personality of an individual are heredity, family, society, culture and situation. It implies to the fact that individuals differ in their manner while responding to the environment. Personality can be regarded as the most complex aspect of human beings that influences their behaviour in big way. It can be concluded that the study of personality traits offers an opportunity to understand the individuals. It helps them properly in directing their effort and motivating them for the accomplishment of the goal. It refers to the fact that different environmental factors may generate different responses. The study of these responses is very important.
2. **Demographic Factors:** The demographic factors are socio economic background, education, nationality, race, age, sex, etc. The study of demographic factors is significant as it is one of the factors influencing Individual differences.
3. **Abilities and Skills:** The physical capacity of an individual to do something can be termed as ability. Skill can be defined as the ability to act in a way that allows a person to perform well. The individual behaviour and performance is highly influenced by ability and skills. A person can perform well if his abilities and skills are matched with the work requirement.
4. **Attitude:** According to psychologists, attitude can be defined as a tendency to respond favourably or unfavourably to certain objects, persons or situations. The factors such as family, society, culture, peers and organisational factors influence the formation of attitude. Individuals can perform better if they form a positive attitude.
5. **Perception:** The cognitive process meant for interpreting the environmental stimuli in a meaningful way is referred to as perception. Every individual on the basis of his/her reference can organize and interpret environmental stimuli. There are many factors that influence the perception of an individual. The study of perception plays important role. Individuals can likely to perform better if they are going to perceive it in a positive way.

### Self Assessment

1. By individual differences we mean ..... variations

**Notes**

2. Individual differences are generally measured through psychological test such as .....
3. Attitude can be defined as a tendency to respond favourably or unfavourably to certain .....
4. The cognitive process meant for interpreting the environmental stimuli in a meaningful way is referred to as .....

## **25.2 Summary**

- No two individuals are exactly same. Individual differences are characteristics of all individual organisms. There are several factors affecting the individual differences such as personality, demographic factors, abilities and skills, perception, attitudes and perception.

## **25.3 Keywords**

1. **Heredity**—Heredity is the passing of traits to offspring from its parents or ancestor.

## **25.4 Review Questions**

1. Describe the various factors influencing the Individual differences.
2. Discuss how demographic factors influence the Individual differences?
3. Define personality and how it affects the Individual differences?

## **Answer Self-Assessment**

- |                                    |                                |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Physical and behavioural        | 2. Intelligence or personality |
| 3. Objects, persons or situations. | 4. Perception.                 |

## **25.5 Further Readings**



**Books**

1. The Importance and Information of Education in the Children—*Seema Chopra, Hindi Book Center, New Delhi.*
2. The Development of Learner and Teaching Learning Process—*A.K. Verma, Hindi Book Center, New Delhi.*
3. Education Psychology—*S.K. Mangal, P.H.I Learning PTV, New Delhi.*
4. Education Psychology—*S.H. Sinha and Rachna Sharma, Atlantic Publications, New Delhi.*

## Unit-26: Mental Health

### CONTENTS

Objectives

Introduction

- 26.1 Meaning of Mental Health
- 26.2 Meaning of Mental Hygiene
- 26.3 Factors which Adversely Affect Child's Mental Health
- 26.4 Summary
- 26.5 Keywords
- 26.6 Review Questions
- 26.7 Further Readings

### Objectives

After the study of this unit, the students will be able to–

- Understand the meaning of mental health and mental hygiene.
- In getting the information about the factors which adversely affect child's mental health.

### Introduction

Mind has an important place in the human body, because whatever works a man does, he does it according to the indication of his mind or following his mind. Until our mind is healthy, we cannot do any work properly. The people whose mind is not healthy, they do not face the different situation in life easily. They always live in mental trouble or problem. Mental weakness and specific changes are the cause of it. Today the life of man is so much complicated. He has to face difficulties and disappointment at every step. He does not adjust himself in the society because of mental troubles. It is important for a man to be mentally healthy in such condition. The man, whose mental health is good, adjusts himself in the material and social situation. It is important in the human life to pay attention towards the mental health like physical health.

Physical health and mental health affect one another. So under education psychology, the study of mental health keeps important place, because for making the education process success, the mental health of both, teacher and student, after thinking the nature of science, the factor influencing the mental health and throwing light on the efforts of progressing in the mental health, we will discuss the importance of mental health.

Notes



*Notes* Under the education psychology, the remedy of personality development is pondered upon. The development of man is possible, when the mind and body is completely healthy, because body and mind are closely related.

## 26.1 Meaning of Mental Health

It is identified from the above thoughts that a man can adjust himself in the different situation of life by mental health. For clarifying the meaning of mental health psychologist has given following definitions –

1. **Headfield** – “In the general terms we may say that mental health is the full harmonious functioning of the whole personality.”
2. **Ledell** – “Mental Health means the ability to make adequate adjustment to the environment on the plane of reality.”
3. **Kuppuswamy** – “Mental health means, the ability to balance feelings, desires, ambitions and ideals in one’s daily. It means the ability to face and accept the reality of life.”

## 26.2 Meaning of Mental Hygiene

Mental health has been given the name of ‘Mental Remedy’. Mental hygiene means the science of keeping mind healthy. As the physical hygiene is related to the health of body, so the mental hygiene is related to mental health.

So that the personality may be developed balanced, by which man could be able in the adjustment of both types of easy and difficult situation of life. Psychologists have given definitions for explaining the meaning of this science –

1. **Drever** – “Mental hygiene means investigation of the laws of mental health and taking of measures for its preservation.”
  2. **Head Field** – “Mental hygiene is concerned with the maintenance of mental health and the prevention of mental disorder.”
  3. **Crow & Crow** – “Mental hygiene is a science that deals with the human welfare and pervades all field human relationship.”
- Rojanoff A.J.** – “Mental hygiene endeavors to aid people toward of the trouble as well as to furnish ways of handling troubles.”
- Kolesnik** – “Mental Hygiene is a set of condition which enables a person to live at peace with himself and others.”

**In Webster’s Dictionary**, The meaning of mental hygiene has been explained in this way. – “Mental hygiene is the science, by which we keep mental health stable, and prevents the growth of diseases related to madness and nerve system. In the general health hygiene, only attention is paid over the physical health, but in the mental hygiene physical health is also included along with the mental health, because mental health is not possible without physical health.”

According to this statement, it is important in this type of educational process that teacher and student both should be mentally healthy. If there is no mental health the child does not get success in acquiring education and teacher does not success in the educational work, so it necessary to think over the causes of their mental disease and the solution of maintaining good mental health.



*Did u know?* Under the mental hygiene the rules and use of keeping health fitness are studied.

Notes

### 26.3 Factors which Adversely Affect Child's Mental Health

There are many factors which adversely affect child's mental health. These factors are following –

1. **The Effect of Heredity** – Some children are mentally weak because of faulty heredity, as lack of intelligence or nerve related diseases are found. Thus he is mentally ill.
2. **Effect of Physical Health** – Physical health is closely related mental health. Patient feels complication with the adjustment of new situations.
3. **Effect of Physical Defect** – Accident or diseases cause physical defect or illness. Physical defects generate the feeling of deficiency in the children. The feeling of deficiency generates the problem of adjustment with their friends and society for them.

#### Self Assessment

Select the correct alternative:

1. Who has given the following definition of mental hygiene –  
 "Mental hygiene is the science which tells about human welfare, and affects all the fields of human relation."  
 (a) Headfield                      (b) Crow & Crow                      (c) Drever
2. "Generally we can say that mental health is to do work of complete adjustment of the whole personality."  
 (a) Ledell                      (b) Kupposwamy                      (c) Headfield
3. "Mental health means- the ability to make adequate adjustments to make the environment on the plane of reality."  
 (a) Webster dictionary                      (b) Ledell                      (c) Drever
4. **Causes Related to Family:** The following factors related to family effect the personality of children –
  - (a) **The Environment of Family** – If there is personal conflict and dispute in the family, it affects the child badly.
  - (b) **Poverty of Family** – If the economical condition of family is not well, the children are irritated and strict, they have the feeling of lack of security, lack of confidence and deficiency. All these things affect health badly.
  - (c) **The Strict Disciplines of Family** – If the children are scolded over a trivial matter, the sense of deficiency create in them and they are mentally unhealthy in such kinds of environment.
  - (d) **Inappropriate Favor of the Family** – If the parent in the family like other child very much and neglects one, this child is affected badly. The child, who is ignored, has the feeling of jealousy with the other children of family. The disputing tendency generates in them. They always try to harm other.
  - (e) **The Beloved Child of Parent** – Parents loves more the child, who is only or hardly alive or if the parents are rich. This thing also harms the child. They have lack of self confidence and they are unable to face the difficulties of life.

Notes

- (f) **The Effect of High Morals of Parent** – In the family whose parents have high morals and ideals, and always hope for their children to follow those morals in their conduct. Stressing under the burden of these morals and ideals children have to face these difficulties. They always move in the world of reality, away from this world. Thus they could not solve the problems of this world. The feelings of complexities create in them. There is always conflict in their mind between reality and ideal. Consequently their nervous system is always affected. The diseases of nerve generate in them.



Task

'Healthy mind lies in healthy body'. Think over the significance of healthy mind from in this statement.

**5. Psychological Causes** – In spite of having above causes of mental sickness, some causes are such psychological, which help in the growth of mental sickness and mental ailments, which are called mental conflict, emotional tension, feeling complexities, anxiety, mental weakness and tiredness. All these things have been described earlier. All these affect badly on the mental health of child.

**6. Society Related Causes** – The defective organization and environment of the society also affect the mentality of child. The mental health of the children of unorganized society are not well, because there is always fight, dispute and different kinds of evils are presented in the environment of this society. The children, who grow in these types of environment, are very, emotional unstable, full of jealous, hate, chaos and conduct less. The racial and religious conflict of society, the feeling of high and low, the feeling of jealousy, hatred, incorporation in the different community, generate the feeling of mental tension in the mind of children. The condition of this type of society and environment is harmful for the mental health of children.

**7. College Related Causes** – After family, the mental health of child is also affected by the undesirable effect of college, which is described in this way-

- (a) **The Environment of College** – If there is so much control on the student in the college, his desires are stressed, or it is not allowed him to take part in the cocurricular activities of college, this generates obstacle in his mind. There is always the environment of fear and strict discipline, child is always mentally unhealthy.
- (b) **Defective Syllabus** – If child does not get the syllabus according to his interest and ability, he does not take interest in it and gets failure in the examination. And his mental health is affected. When he does not learn the subject-syllabus, he is always worried and fearful that he will be punished. Such child lives in the mental depression and victim of criminal tendency. And often the runs away from the college.
- (c) **In Proper Education Method** – If teacher uses un-psychological method, not paying attention on the individual difference, it is difficult for child to get knowledge and when he does not learn anything he gets disappointed.
- (d) **Defective Examination-System** – In the current times subjective tests are popular, in which the real ability and progress of student is not known, on account of having many defects in the examination, child does not get success in the class and fortunately unworthy student gets success with high marks. In this condition intelligent student is discouraged and lose self confidence. And dull child does not take interest in the study. Such types of children cannot adjust themselves with the society.
- (e) **Feeling of Competition** – Competition feeling, which is the feeling of jealousy, hatred, also affects the mental health of children.

- (f) **Effect of Personality of Teacher**—If teacher has emotional instability, he does not behave well with the student. His behavior is strict and full of partiality. Then the mind of child is not balanced. Child is either more proud or wicked or always lives in fear. And becomes the victim of feeling of complexity.

Notes

## 26.4 Summary

- Mind has an important place in the human body, because whatever works a man does, he does it according to the indication of his mind or following his mind. Until our mind is healthy, we cannot do any work properly.
- The men, whose mental health is good, enable to adjust themselves with the material and social situations in the world.
- Under the education psychology, the remedy of personality development is pondered upon. The development of man is possible, when the mind and body is completely healthy, because body and mind are closely related.
- Mental health has been given the name of 'Mental Remedy'. Mental hygiene means the science of keeping mind healthy. As the physical hygiene is related to the health of body, so the mental hygiene is related to mental health.
- In Webster's Dictionary the meaning of mental hygiene has been explained in this way. "Mental hygiene is the science, by which we keep mental health stable, and prevents the growth of diseases related to madness and nerve system. In the general health hygiene, only attention is paid over the physical health, but in the mental hygiene physical health is also included along with the mental health, because mental health is not possible without physical health."
- According to this statement, it is important in this type of educational process that teacher and student both should be mentally healthy. If there is no mental health the child does not get success in acquiring education and teacher does not success in the educational work.

## 26.5 Keywords

1. **Adjust**—Adapt according to need and situation.

## 26.6 Review Questions

1. What do you know by mental health?
2. What is mental hygiene? Explain with the definitions.
3. Explain harmful factors, which influence badly on the mental health.

### **Answers: Self-Assessment**

1. (b)
2. (c)
3. (b)

Notes

## **26.7 Further Readings**



*Books*

1. Psychology - the Study of Human Behavior – *The Importance and Information of Education in the Children* – Seema Chaupra, Hindi Book Center, New Delhi.
2. The Development of Learner and Teaching Learning Process – A.K. Verma, Hindi Book Center, New Delhi.
3. Education–Psychology – S.K. Mangal, P.H.I Learning PTV, New Delhi.
4. Education–Psychology – S.H. Sinha and Rachna Sharma, Atlantic Publications, New Delhi.

## Unit-27: Meaning and Characteristics of Stress

### CONTENTS

Objectives

Introduction

- 27.1 Meaning and Characteristics of Stress
- 27.2 Reactions of Stress
- 27.3 Factors Influencing Reactions to Stress
- 27.4 Measurement of Stress
- 27.5 Sources or Causes of Stress
- 27.6 Strategies for Coping with Stress
- 27.7 Management of Stress
- 27.8 Summary
- 27.9 Keywords
- 27.10 Review Questions
- 27.11 Further Readings

### Objectives

After the study of this unit, the students will be able to –

- Understand the meaning and characteristics of stress.
- Understand the reaction of stress.
- Understand the factors influencing reactions to stress.
- Understand the measurement, source and causes of stress.
- Understand the strategies for coping stress and the management of stress.

### Introduction

Stress affects the human life for a long time. When we are dissatisfied, we come under stress and until we solve this problem, the situation of stress is same. Under the educational psychology, along with the strategies of understanding the process of stress, the measurement, coping and resolving of stress are also suggested.

Notes

## 27.1 Meaning and Characteristics of Stress

Stress is a big problem of our society. It is known from modern researches that stress is the cause of the illness of 75% people. Even stress is the cause of dangerous disease like heart attack and cancer. The question is that, what is the meaning of stress? Psychologists have admitted different attitudes for defining stress.

- (i) Some psychologists have tried to understand the stress, as the factors of stimulus and have said that any event or situation that insists a man for doing abnormal responses is called stress. Events as- earthquake, leaving the job, destroy the business, death of loving person are the main events, which create stress in a man. Such materials, social and environmental factors, which create stress, are called stressor.
- (ii) Some psychologists have tried to explain the stress as a response. Here psychologists have delivered physical and physiological responses done by man in the difficult situations. When a man shows this type of special psychological responses as – anxiety, anger, aggression and physiological responses as – stomach is not fit, do not take the sleep, shooting the blood pressure, we call that this man is under stress. A popular psychologist Hans Selye<sup>1</sup>, in 1979 of this field has said, defining stress in the form of response – “Stress refers to nonspecific responses of the body to any demand made upon it.” The main characteristics of this definition, stress has been defined as a non specific response, by which Selye means that such responses are not related to stimulus, which produce any specific stress, but same types of response can be produced by any stimulus of producing stress.
- (iii) The third batch of psychologists, who defined stress not only as a stimulus not as a response but also tried to define it on the basis of its relationship. This approach is called transactional approach. Psychologists consider it that some events or situation are definitely such, which are stressful for men. There are some situations and events which can create stress in some men, hence stress cannot be defined meaningfully as a stimulus in the same way the responses of stressful events, even that physiological responses can be affected easily. So stress can be understood in the form of only stress. According to transactional approach, it is necessary to know that how does a man evaluate the events and situation in the form of present material for the solution of his needs or motives and similar situations. In the other words according to this approach stress reflects a specific relationship between man and environment ( by which man feels fear and his materials get challenged. The followers of this approach are Lazarus and Folkman, 1984 and Taylor, 1991

**Morgan, King, Weize and Schopler<sup>2</sup>**, in 1986 have given a good definition of stress by collecting the thoughts of Lazarus, Folkman and Taylor etc.” We will define stress as an internal state which can be caused by physical demands on the body (diseases, conditions, exercise, extremes of temperature and like) or by environmental and social situations which are evaluated as potentially harmful, uncontrolled or exceeding our resources for coping.” In the same way Wood and Wood 1999<sup>3</sup> have defined stress – “Most psychologists define stress as the psychological and physiological responses to a condition that threatens or challenges the individual and requires some form of adaption or adjustment.”

1. “Stress refers to nonspecific response of the body to any demand made upon it.”

– Hans Selye: The stress of life, 1979, p. 40

2. “We will define stress as an internal state which can be caused by physical demands on the body (diseased conditions, exercise, extremes of temperature and the like) or by environmental and social situations which are evaluated as potentially harmful, uncontrollable or exceeding our resources for coping”.

– Morgan, King, Weisz and Schopler, Introduction to Psychology, 1986, p. 321

3. “Most psychologists define stress as the physiological and psychological response to a condition that threatens or challenges the individual and requires some form of adaptation or adjustment.”

– Wood and Wood : The World of Psychology, 1999, p. 469

Baron<sup>1</sup> (1992) has defined the stress in this way – “ Stress is manifested process that occurs in us in response to events that disrupt or threaten to disrupt our physical or psychological functioning.”

Notes

If we analyze above both extended definition of stress, the following characteristics about the nature of stress will be highlighted –

1. Stress is a multi-faceted process, which is a process towards the evaluation of stressors which is done by stressors.
2. Generally it is known that stress is the result of negative events and unfortunate events, but it the fact that it is also caused by the positive events, as – to get married in a high standard family, progress with a good job, and get some special reward or prize which creates stress in a man are some events. That’s why popular psychologist Hans Sally has divided stress into two parts- positive stress and negative stress. He has called negative stress, stress and Distress to the negative stress. So stress has been called multi faceted process.
3. Whatever events happen in stress (which produce stress) those events are out of control of a man, if in any case, situation is under control of man, stress turns into relaxation.
4. There are both types of responses in stress as physiological and Psychological. In other words, a man feels disturbance psychologically and mentally in stress.
5. Stress can be over after some time or can be lived for a long time. It is mostly dependent on the nature of events and situations which cause stress.

It can be concluded that stress is a special response, which happens towards the stress after the evaluation of events and situation of stress, in which a man finds his physical and mental work.

## 27.2 Reactions to Stress

When a man is under stress, he feels it and does response toward it. It is important to keep in mind the following points for understanding this type of response.

- (i) Man responses properly for stress. It means that stress not only creates one type of reaction but also both types of reactions as psychological and physiological. Stress affects many part of nervous system of man, as- autonomic nervous system, which controls the psychological types of body as emotion and motives which include the function of internal excretion gland. The stress affects the both types of actions of man as physiological psychological.
- (ii) Whether stress is physiological or psychological for a man, the reaction of the mind and body of man toward stress is not same. Every source of stress creates a specific type of coping reaction. A general reaction creates in the mind of man toward all types of stress, which depends on the response of internal relationship, as- automatic, adrenal gland and the sympathetic system.

Man does two types of responses in stress, which is following –

- (a) Psychological Reaction
- (b) Physiological Reaction

The details of both types of reactions are following –

**(a) Psychological Reactions** – There are many kinds of physiological and psychological reactions in stress. In other words, disruption is found in the physiological works of man in stress. All these disruptions are divided into two parts.

1. “Stress is many-facted process that occurs in us in response to events that disrupt or threaten to disrupt our physical or psychological functioning”

– Baron: Psychology, 1992, p. 443

Notes

**1. Cognitive Impairment**—Clear cognitive impairment is found in stress. The capability of concentration is less in man. And he does not organize his ruminations logically. The role of anxiety increases in ruminations, and he does not observe the different prospects properly. The expeditions of hindrances are less. And ephemeral increases in concentration. Memory gets weak by it. In other words, abnormality comes in the cognitive works of man it has been identified from the psychological researches that in the stress situation a man shows something that practical pattern as that is done by him in the past. As the man, who has the tendency of caution and awareness for a long time, they become more cautious and aware in the situation of stress. And the men who are aggressive, their aggression grows more in the time of stress, and the clear proof of aggression is found in their behavior. The cause of it has been said that this type of cognitive impairment causes because of stress that man does not observe the alternative means of the solution of problems and shows rigidity in his behavior.

**2. Emotional Responses**—A man does different types of emotional response especially negative response in stress. Such emotional responses are following:

(i) **Anxiety**—When a man surrounds with stressful situations, whichever emotional responses occur in him during the first time, is called anxiety. Anxiety is such an unlovable stage in which fears, doubts and troubles are found in man. There are two types of anxiety—normal and neurotic. The nature of general anxiety is adaptive, and this type of anxiety helps man in adapting with the situation, causing stress. In the neurotic anxiety a man fears from the situation causing stress or comes in doubts, by which the capability of resolving it or coping with the situation is finished and he feels himself alone. According to Freud, “the reason of anxiety is unconscious conflict.”

(ii) **Anger and Aggression**—There is also one another emotional response towards the situation causing stress. After that a man does aggressive behavior, it is identified by the study of researches done on the animals and men that in the starting, anger generates in the man towards the stimulus and situation causing stress. If such types of stimuli are kept in front of man for a long time, then he starts aggressive behavior towards them.

 *Did u know?* It has been identified by the study done on the children when he is stopped on reaching goal, one type of frustration is found in him and frustration gives birth to aggressive behavior and they show aggressiveness towards the goal.

Sometimes goal or sources, that create frustration in a man, are not clear. In this situation man does not know that he should attack on the things, but he is under anger. In this condition, showing his aggression he searches for proper things. Sometimes it happens that the source of arising frustration is powerful therefore man does not show aggression towards it. In all these situations, the aggression of man is towards any special person and things, not towards the real things or person. This type of aggression is called displaced aggression.

(iii) **Empathy and Depression**—Some people do not have the feeling of aggression and anger but on the contrary the feeling of empathy and depression developed in them. Generally it has been observed that if the stressful situation is presented in front of a man and he does not succeed in resolving it, the feeling of empathy and depression is developed in him, which creates depressive tendency in him. It has been identified from the psychological studies that a man learns the reaction, which is done towards the stimulus causing frustration, like other behaviors. As the man, who does not get success by showing aggression towards the situations causing stress, he learns the responses of living in distress towards it, and gradually tendency, shown in it becomes powerful. It is also identified from the researches that are done on animals

and men, that a man is surrounded with the situations he finds himself helpless. The concept of learned helplessness is also developed by these studies, in which the contribution of Seligman is important.

Notes

**(b) Physiological Reaction** – A man does physiological reactions towards the situation or stimulus causing stress. Often it is seen that after surrounded by the stressful situation, the stomach of man is disturbed and heart beats become abnormal and changes in nerves system. All these are the example of physiological reactions. Such physiological reactions can be studied by dividing into two parts –

**1. Emergency Responses** – There are some of these responses that happen in the body of man towards the stimulus causing stress, they are called emergency responses. By the medium of such responses, liver create more quantity of sugar in the body, by which the muscles of body got more strength. Some hormones start to grow in body, which turn fat and protein into sugar and man gets enough energy for the physical works and there is growth in the heart beats, blood pressure and nervous system of man. There is stress in the muscles of body. And there is enough consumption in the quantity of mucus, so that there is no hindrance in the way of entering of more air in lungs. Perhaps that's why man feels dry in his mouth in the stressful situation. Endorphin, which is an antipathy, the quantity of it grows in body. And the blood tubes, which are found in the lower part of body, are shrieked in body, by which the resolving of stressful situation, if there is cutting in the body of man, less blood comes out of the body of man. And the spleen of body creates red tissue in the blood in a great quantity. So that body can get more oxygen. Therefore there is more creation of white blood tissues than bone marrow, so that body can face any kinds of infection properly.

There is only one motive of all kinds of emergency responses- to face properly with the situation that causes stress and make adjustment with them. All these physiological responses are controlled with the help of autonomic nervous system, endocrine gland and specially pituitary gland. Often in this condition autonomic nervous system does his work under hypothalamus. The pattern of this physiological responses, are complicated and innate. Canon has said 'fight and flight responses' because such responses prepare man for fight or flight. Selye has called it 'Alarm responses'. Because such responses prepare a man for fighting and flighting.

**2. General Adaptation Syndrome or GAS** – Selye has delivered the concept of GAS. Selye has described the physiological changes that happen in the body of animals in the stressful situation. Although this types of changes are found in the animals, yet Selye thinks in this way that such types of changes are also found in the human body. If they are surrounded with the stimulus, causing stress for a long time. The changes that happen in GAS are divided into three stages that are following-

- (i) Stage of Alarm Reaction.
- (ii) Stage of Resistance.
- (iii) Stage of Exhaustion.

All these stages are described in this way –

- (i) **Stage of Alarm Reaction** – When a man is surrounded with the situation or event causing stress, which is called stressor. And affected by it the changes that happen in his body, the first time, that are called alarm reaction. In this stage the human body is always ready for doing immediate response towards the stressor. Sympathetic nervous system gets excited and man is ready for fighting with the challenges and threatens of stressor. There are two sub stages of this stage. Shock stage and counter shock phase. In the shock stage, on the time of facing obstacles, a man feels physical shock. Which causes physical temperature or blood pressure low, heart beats are low and muscles are inactive? After this stage counter phase is started, in which body increased his protective nature and all kinds of emergency responses as -swiftness come in heart beats, blood pressure and nervous system. The result if it that the resistance capability of fighting with the stressor is growth, as in the above curve, which is known from the original stressor. It is identified from the picture that in the counter stage phase curve is started to increase upside.

Notes

(ii) **Stage of Resistance** – If stressor is presented in front of man, the second stage of GAS is started. Where body stops the effect that arises with the continue presentation of stressor. Some Hormone arises in the body of man in this stage. Which increases the quantity of hormones, means by the medium of these hormones, body after making itself powerful, protects itself from the effect of stressor. In the blood line of body, a special hormone, in which adreno corticotrophin is important, is created by some cells of pituitary gland. The excretion of ACTH which is called another kind of corticotrophin-releasing factor which is arisen by hypothalamus is controlled by it. Consequently CRF are sent into pituitary gland in more quantity, which increases the quantity of ACTH in blood. The effect of stressor can be prevented when the more quantity of ACTH will be presented into blood. In this way the level of resistance is increased. Not only this ACTH excites the cortex of adrenal gland by which cortisol named hormone mingles in the blood of body and the capability of fighting with the effect of stressor is increased, but the maximum level of this hormone is harmful for the body.

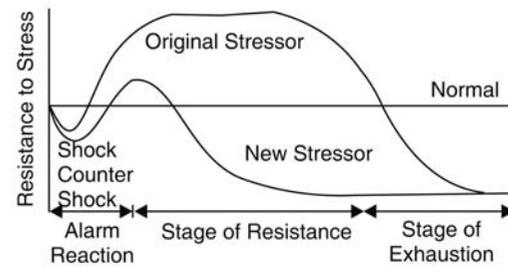


Fig. 26.1 General Adaptation Syndrome

If new stressor comes in front of man in this stage, the resistance power of man towards the stressor is reduced. As that in the picture, it has been shown by the curve.

(iii) **Stage of Exhaustion** – The third stage of GAS is the stage of exhaustion. In which there is enough reduction in the capability of responses toward new stressors and original stressors. And stability increased in the creature. And he becomes inactive. And falls ill. It is also seen that the level of stressor- induced hormones. There is possibility of stomach ulcer, asthma, high blood pressure and cancer etc. and diabetes because of stress. And there are more possibilities of the death of man.

It is identified that a man does not only psychological but physiological reactions toward the stressors because stress that caused by stressors is harmful for health. So it is essential to highlight its causes and the strategy for coping with them.

### 27.3 Factors Influencing Reactions to Stress

As we know man does not only do one reaction but different reactions towards the stress. In other words, there is individual differences in the reactions that are done towards the stress. Psychologists have tried to understand the causes of this individual difference. According to their consideration following factors are such as by which reactions are influenced.

**1. Prior Experience** – When man feels the prior experience of facing stressful events, generally it has been seen their reactions which have been done towards the stress are serious. For example- if the posting of any officer is in a terrorist village, he will react less stressful in comparison of that police officer, who is sent in that village for the first time.

**2. Social Support** – The man who gets more social support from his family, friends and neighbors his reaction towards the stress is less serious. Which type of shortcoming comes in the seriousness of these reactions it is not clear but Heller, Swindle and Dusenbury, 1986 have claimed when a man talks to other about his stress and gets their advices, and he gets the true words of their help, the seriousness of the reactions that is done towards the stress is reduced.

The man, who gets social support sufficiently, the reaction he does towards the stress or negative problems of life, as- anxiety, depression and health problems are reduced in them. As- dew, Ragni and Nimorwicz have found in their study that the quantity of stress, anxiety, depression and hopelessness is found less in the man who is affected by AIDS in that situation, when he got the social support sufficiently.

In the same way Kendall-Tackett, 1993 found in his study that the children who were sexually weak, when they got the support of their mother in that situation their reactions towards the stress were not much seriously. This aspect of social support when a man is in stress he shares his feelings to other and becomes unburdened. the practical study of it has been done deeply. Penne baker and Bell has signified this factor in their famous study. This study had been done on the colleges; there were two groups of students. A group of students has to describe the traumatic events of each day continue for four nights in written within 15 minutes. There is another group of students for comparison; they had to write about unimportant subjects given by user. It was seen when the students were writing about the death of his family member specially the traumatic events of life, the tendency of sadness and depression was found swiftly in them, and their blood pressure was high. It was found after six months that the students who had told their negative feelings with other, they were not only feeling less stress but also their reactions towards the stress were not very serious.

**3. Predictability and Control** – Man's reaction towards the stress is also affected by the capability of predictability and controlling of stress. If the situation is such about which prediction can be done previously, the seriousness of reaction, which is done towards the stress, is less. In the same way when a man finds that he can control over the situation, the seriousness of the reaction, which is done towards the stress, is less. Epstein and Roupenian, 1970 have done a study in which three users took part. Three groups had to count the frequency of the sound specially that produced from there. After completing the counting of ten times, one group of users had given electric shock at 95% times. 50% times to the second and at the 5% to the third group. It is identified that the predictability of the third group of the electric shock was least because there was less uncertainty in it. While there was the most predictability of electric shock in the first group. it has been seen in the result that although electric shock has been given in the least quantity to the third group, there was more sympathetic autonomic arousal because of present uncertainty means the nature of the reactions that are done towards the stress were more serious. Abbott, Schoen and Badia, 1986 have identified it after analyzing it deeply. If stress is presented for a long time, predictable stress is proved more stressful in comparison of un predictable tension.

**4. Cognitive Factors** – One reason of individual difference in the reactions that is done towards the stress that how does a man think about the stressful situation or event. The follower of this factor is Lazarus. Some people explain such events or stimulus in a stressful way, by which the reaction, done towards it becomes more serious. On the other side, some explain such events by giving them less importance, by which the reaction that is done it becomes less serious. Roth and Cohen, 1986 have recognized the two types of styles for collecting the information towards the stressors- sensitizers and repressors. Sensitizers are those men who get the information after being activate and think about the stressful events. Stressors are those men who never think about the stressful events and keep away themselves from the information of stressful events. Stressor resolves the stress in a effective way. Miller and Morgon, 1983 have told in their study when the proper information is collected about the stressors, repressive style is not harmful in that situation but in this situation sensitizer style does not prove beneficial. As they have found in their study the patient, whose surgery was done by the doctors and who were sensitizers, when they were informed about the surgery, they did not feel stress but repressors feel the stress in less quantity when they were informed such information in less quantity.

**5. Type 'A' Personality** – There is difference in the reaction that done towards the stress by type 'A' personality. There are some special qualities of type a personality, by which the reaction that is done towards the stress are determined. Friedman and Rosenman, 1957, Diamond Matthews have told some important qualities of type a personality:

- (i) Show up more driving and highly ambitious in the field of competition, work and play.
- (ii) Doing any works rapidly, give importance to time -urgency, often show up the nature of doing any two actions at a time rapidly.
- (iii) Give less importance to workaholic and rest.

**Notes**

- (iv) Speak loudly.
- (v) Impulsivity and hostile and doing aggressive behavior towards other.

In which these characteristics are not presented, they are called type 'B' personality. It has been found after the researches that there is more possibility of coronary heart disease in the men of type 'A' personality. It is fact that type 'A' personality is internally added with the two risk factors- high blood pressure and high level of cholesterol. According to one theory that type 'A' man reacts more physiologically towards the stress in comparison of others. Haynes and his follower, 1980 and Mathews, 1982 have confirmed this fact in their studies that type 'A' man reacts towards the stress by showing high blood pressure. In the same way Williams etc have found in their studies when type a man react towards the stress, more quantity of epinephrine and norepinephrien are found in its body and there is more flow of blood in the Skelton muscles comparatively. These changes are directly related to cholesterol plaque<sup>1</sup>, which make the possibility of CHD strong by arousing strictness in the artery of heart.

It has been identified, that there are many causes of different reactions that a man does towards the stress.

### **27.4 Measurement of Stress**

Scientist have done successful effort for the measurement of stress, and they have described four important methods for this –

**1. Self-Report Method** – In this method a man says about self emotional trouble, and the changes which is happening in his life and about the severity if stress. On the basis of the indices which he has told, his stress is scaled. Social readjustment rating scale delivered by Holmes and Rahe, Hassle scale delivered by schedule of recent experiences and Kanner and all his companion, exercises are used under the self report method.

**2. Behavioral Methods** – In this method, stress is scaled on the basis of completed work, which is done in this situation. If in this situation, rapidly falls come in the accomplishment of work, it is considered that the severity of stress is more for the man.

**3. Physiological Indices Methods** – In this method, stress is scaled on the basis of the chemical changes as-on the basis of the changes that happen when catecholamine and hydroxycorticosteriods is found in urinary level and blood level.

Each of these methods has some defects, in case of those defects; these methods should be used carefully. It is necessary to describe such defects here.

- (i) The first method, which depends on the self report, can be completely believed, because man always tries to present himself in proper way and in this effort he does not present the correct picture of stress.
- (ii) Behavioral method is considered defective because the explanation if accomplishing work can be done by different methods, as- it can be found that lack of motivation, cognitive strain and tiredness can be the cause of loss of accomplishment in place of tension.
- (iii) It is necessary for scaling the tension on the basis of physiological indices that some equipment, related to that should be bought and doing this in itself will be stressful.
- (iv) It is not credible to scale the stress on the basis of chemical changes, because such changes can be possible by other causes, as catecholamine secretion in body not only by stress but also in other situations. Hence such growth in body cannot be considered because of stress.

It is explained that there are different methods for the measurement of stress but every method has some limitation, yet it can be used according to the situation. According to Baum1982 it is necessary for the correct measurement of stress that all these methods should be used together by which the result got by it may be credible.

## 27.5 Sources or Causes of Stress

Notes

How does stress arouse in the mind of man, psychologists have done deeply study of it. And a schedule of many factors has been prepared by which tension arouse in man, such factors are following-

1. Stressful events of life
2. Conflicts of motives
3. Daily hassles
4. Stress produced by work
5. Environmental sources

**1. Stressful Events of Life**—Different types of events happen in the life of man. Some are pleasant and some are painfully. The important need of these events that man may readjustment with them. It has been identified by the study of psychologists that when a man does not adjust with such events properly, they arouse stress. And physiological and emotional disorder are aroused in man, in this way the study of Holmes and Rahe is important. They have developed a special scale for the measurement of important events of life means they have developed the method of magnitude production, which has been called social readjustment rating scale or SRRS. Different types of events as- the death of husband, wife, divorce, material separation, marriage, illness of the member of family, leave, death of best friend, entrance of new member in family, pregnancy, lost of the member of family, fight with the husband's relatives, change in the habit if food, minor violation of law are included in this scale. The most stressful has been ranked with the least stress. Life changing value of these events have been decided from 1 to 100. It has been found from the life changing value how much readjustment is needed for a man on account of happing such events, as - death of husband and wife has been told the most stressful events of life, which changing value is 100. In the same the unit value of retirement has been called 45 in the last rank means minor violation of law has been put in 43 rank. which unit value is 1. A man is asked to put tick on those statements among the 43 statements for knowing a special period as- how much stress does he feel in the last one or two years, which is found correct for him during the said period, then the unit value related to statement is added, which is called total stress score. As much as there is total, so the stress is considered in man. Generally when the total of man is 250 or more come on this scale on the basis of the events that happen within one year, his life is considered stressful. And there is more possibility of his falling ill within a year. Generally man of getting total score 150 or less than it is considered general, and the man of obtaining total between 150 to 199 is considered as a moderate stress and the man who has obtained the total more than 300, he is considered full of mental stress. Holmes and Masuda have shown it by doing study, the man whose life changing unit value is more than 300 he fell ill seriously within the next nine months, in the comparison of those men whose total score was 200 or under it. It has been found out from these studies how much stressful events happen in the life of man, the more quantity of stress is found in them. And their health is affected by it badly. Although the events- changes of life have been called an important cause of stress, following some facts are such, which has doubts on the called relation.

- (i) It is difficult to separate the effect that arouse from the stress on some health as- the habit of having special food, habit of smoking, habit of taking alcohol. Man can adjust with the changes that happened in his life that he starts taking more alcohol, or starts smoking cigarette. In such situation, illness that aroused in his body or because of emotional or physiological stages, his health habit will be worse and the important events of life will be reduced.
- (ii) If the changing event is the cause of stress, any events can arouse stress in the mind of men. But this is not fact. It has been seen that some events arouse more stress in the mind of men, but the same events do not arouse stress in the mind of other people. It is also seen that the normal event arouse psychological and physiological decay in some men, but sometimes more stressful events do not arouse psychological physiological decay in men. Such individual differences indicate that it is not logical to consider special event the cause of stress.

**Notes**

- (iii) There are some parts of life scale events, which are considered not as a result but as a cause, as-maternal or economical complication arouse because of decay of emotional or physiological health, which causes stress.
- (iv) It is an important hypothesis of life event scale that change is stressful in itself. But it was identified by the researches that done later that positive changes are not related to health, sometimes it happens that there is stress in men because of not happening changes in life. It is known that no event makes life stressful, it is mostly depended on the personal history and current life situation.
- (v) After these situations, the changes that happen in life are also the important causes of stress.

**2. Conflicts of Motives** – When there is conflict between motives, it creates stress in man. In this situation when motive is not satisfied, it create frustration in man, which is the important sources of stress. As-one student, who cannot obtained best marks in the group, he can gain fame by playing game in the field and remove mental conflict from his mind, but there is stress in his mind by thinking that he could not perform well in the field of education. There are some mental conflicts in the life of man, which arouse stress in which support vs competition, independence vs dependence, intimacy vs isolation and impulse expression vs moral standard.



*Notes*

Success and competition is given more importance in our society, but along with the attitude of co-operation is also considered important. As a result there is mental conflict and stress arouses.

In the same way the desire of living with others and desire of sharing in the weal and woe with others also connected with it. If we do so, we will be given up by our family member and we will be alone. This situation also arouse stress in man in the same way sometimes man is depended on other, but along with he thinks that being adolescence, he should not depend on others it is not good things, this situation also arouse stress in him. some fields as- sex and aggression are such , in which the desire of man moral are faced with normal standards, if man does not accept it, guilt feelings are aroused in him, which becomes the sources of stress.

It is cleared that trial of compromising among the opposites motives also arouse the stress in man.

Kurt Lewin has described the conflict as two opposite inclination- approach and avoidance. When it necessary for a man to select one between two desirable alternatives, it is called approach-approach conflict. Avoidance-avoidance conflict, man is forced to select one between two undesirable alternatives. The third types of conflict is called approach-avoidance conflict, in which a man has to face both types of motives as desirable and undesirable in one choice. It is known from the study that approach- avoidance conflict is the strongest sources of stress among thrice of them.

**3. Daily Hassles** – The big event of life is the sources of stress definitely, but it is also found that daily hassles arouse stress. Such hassles are found in the life of man all the times, so their importance in arousing stress is not less. This fact is confirmed by the study of Lazarus and their companion and kanner and his followers. Daily hassles that is found in the man all the times, it can be divided into six parts, which are following:

- (i) **Environmental Hassles** – In which noise, sounds, culprits and useless talking with the neighbours are kept.
- (ii) **Household Hassles** – In which cooking food, washing the utensils, sweeping the house buying clothes and other things related factors are kept.
- (iii) **Inner Concern Hassles** – In which the feeling of loneliness, the feeling of fighting with others, the factors are kept.

- (iv) **Hassles Due to Time** – In which the feeling of completing all works within given time, and the factors of performing many responsibilities at a time are kept .
- (v) **Hassles Arising Due to Financial Responsibility** – In which saving, earning related factors and financial responsibility are included, which's burden should not put on them according to law.
- (vi) **Work Hassles** – unsatisfied from job, not having the opportunity of progress in job and the possibility of firing from job all the factors are put in it.

Lazarus and his companions and Kanner and his companions have developed a hassles scale for the measurement of hassles. Man says about those events on this scale, by which he is put in the hassles for last months. Positive correlation was found between the mental traits and obtained total that was shown by man. Hence it is evident that stress is aroused in man due to daily hassles and physiological and psychological illness arises in it.

**4. Stress Produced by Work** – Which work is done by man. There are some factors related to it, which produce stress in him. As – if one employ is asked to all lot of work at a time, it is naturally that stress will be produced in him. The feeling of burden will be developed in him. Not only this if employ feels that the physical environment of doing work is not proper, means there is no good arrangement of air, light and sound and controlling in it, he will feel job dissatisfaction. Which produce stress in him? In it role-conflict and performance appraisal are important. In the condition of role-conflict, different hopes are developed by different groups of employ from any executive or manager, which is not possible for management to complete it, consequently stress produce in them. For example take the job of kulpati of university, employ demands him for good service condition, teachers force him for maintaining good environment, student demands with him for good education and government force him for doing his work recognizing his resources. Thus it is not possible for him to complete this types of opposite hopes., which produce role-conflict which produce stress in him. In the same way if the way of performing appraisal of employ of such, which is considered by employ proper, it does not create stress in them, but if they consider it that this way is not proper, it will create tension in them.

When there is more stress on work, and men do get rid of it, a special stage produce in them , which is called Burnout. in which employ look quite hopeless, unsatisfied, incapable for work and psychologically weak. In the last stage of Burnout, man is incapable in doing work. according to Rice- Burnout work is not the trait of work it is the result of unmanaged work stress.

**5. Environmental Sources** – Environment is also the cause of producing stress. Some environmental factors are such, which are natural and produce stress in men, as- earthquake, storm and swift air etc are some factors, which create stress in men according to Kasl, 1990. Such environmental factors can be studied at that time, when it is found in great quantity. Such natural event arise stress in men. Except these natural factors there are some environmental factors, which are made by men, and produce stress in men. As- noise pollution, situation produce by nuclear test is the example of such factors, by which stress creates in man. Balm and his companions (1983) found in their study, the men who live far from the place, where nuclear is tested, are affected more or stress arises in them more than the men, who live near by it. In the same way Cohen and his companions (1986) have done a study, which motive was to study the effect, which put on the stress of noise. In this experiment the students of school near by busy aero dram are compared with the students of school, which school is suited on a solitary and peaceful place. As a result it was seen that there was more stress in the first school's student than second school, which is known by their high blood pressure and by the bad performance on standardized tests.

In the last it can be said that stress arises in man due to many reasons, if we think about the strategy of coping it, we will keep these factors in mind.

Notes

## 27.6 Strategies of Coping Stress

Whatever may be the causes for stress, but it lays bad effect on the emotional and physiological health of man. Hence psychologists have thought seriously on the strategies of coping it. Reducing the related behavior of stress is called coping behavior. Coping behavior has been defined by the psychologists in different ways, as – **Goodstein and Lanyon** (1975) have defined the coping behavior in this way –

“By coping we mean the degree to which individuals are able to meet and master at least three kinds of challenges to their existence: (1) direct challenges from the physical environment (2) challenges stemming from their physical limitation (3) interpersonal challenges.” **Lazarus and Launier**<sup>2</sup> (1978) have defined this behavior in this way- “Coping consists of efforts, both action-oriented and intrapsychic, to manage, (that is master, tolerate, reduce, minimize) environmental and internal demands and conflicts among them.” According to Wood & Wood – “Coping refers to person efforts through action and thought to deal with demands perceived as taxing or overwhelming.”

After analyzing the above definition, many characteristics of coping behavior are highlighted, which are following –

- (i) Coping behavior is not an active behavior of any time, which is done between the demands of man and environment, but there is an internal process, that moves continuously between its sources, values and demand till a special time. Hence it is process and strategy.
- (ii) Coping behavior includes many types of actions and reactions, done towards the stressful stimulus and situations.
- (iii) In this way, in the coping behavior, a man arranges three types of factors as- demand of environment, physical limitation and internal individual challenges with his sources and values in this way that they could not affect man more.
- (iv) Coping behavior is effortful. It does not happen itself.
- (v) Coping behavior is a learnt behavior.

According to Lazarus and Folkman, 1984- all these strategies can be divided into two part –

**1. Problem-Focused Coping Strategies** – In this type of strategies, man evaluates the stressful situation and problem. And does some strategies, in which he could gain success by changing it or by removing it. man uses such strategies when he sees that problem, which is producing stress, is not very serious or he could change the nature of this problem, in this strategy, problem which is producing stress, after making it clear man defines it, then he searches it alternative solution, and evaluates them in the form of coming lose and benefit of all those solutions. And selecting correct alternative gives it work form. How much does a man give work to these series strategies properly, it is depended on his past experiences, intellectual capability and the capability of self control. In this way a man tries to make the stress less by changing the nature of experience. Here specially following strategies have been successful.



**Task** Do you think that social favor helps in reducing stress? Present your thoughts in favor and against.

- (i) **Confrontational Coping** – In these types of coping strategies, a man faces the problem by standing in front of problem. And tries to resolve it. As, any officer is angry with his under officer and he threatens him for firing, he will know the cause of his firing by standing in front of his officer. What is his defect? Will he try to take his officer in believe so that he could change his thought? Holhan and Moos, (1987) on the basis of their study, they said

that the method of confrontation proves more useful than the method of avoidance. The man who tries to resolve the problem, they not only resolve the problem properly but also develop the capability of facing the problem emotionally with the stressful situation in the coming time. It has been explained from the researches done by Felton (1984) the men who use avoidance method more for facing the stressful situation, there is more possibility of arising stress in them and along with health problem also produce in them, but avoidance is not a bad method in the form of behavior coping. When man faces less stress, he could resolve it by adapting avoidance method. In this method, man makes himself separate from that stressful situation.

- (ii) **Social Support**—How does a man face with the stressful situation, it is not only depended on the internal sources but also external sources means it is depended on his social support. Cobb (1976) has said defining the situation of social support that it means by that special information, in which man is liked by other men, respected by other, given importance by other and cared him by other. When any man feels the social support of other men, he faces to stressful situation properly and his health relative can be as his uncle, aunt, maternal uncle or maternal aunt and any club organization or political party.

It has been explained from the researches of House, 1981, Schafer and their companions that the different version of social support can be divided into three categories- tangible assistance, information and emotional support. In the tangible assistance, tangible things are given to man as money, , food or other related things so that he may face the stress , in the information method, some thoughts are provided to man by other men by which he could face the stressful situation easily. Emotional support, that is the most important source of facing stressful situation in the form of social support. In this family, friends or neighbor behave in this manner as they are with him for facing the problem.

It has been cleared by the study of Cohen and Wills, 1985 that social support helps in reducing pain which is produced by the stressful situation. Kulik (1989) has said this on the basis of his study, there is less possibility of having any disease with the social support. And man recovers soon from any disease. And there is no possibility of dying with the dangerous disease. Berkman and Syme , 1979 have told 7000 men, who were living in California, for sharing about their social and group relation, in their one study. And they were asked to share about the mortality rate of their family in the last seven years. It is seen in the result that the men who have good social relationship, their mortality rate was less than the men, who have not good social and group relation. It is also found that the men, who meet with others, good habits also develop in them by social circle.

### Self Assessment

Fill in the blank:

- The first group of psychologists understand stress as a ..... .  
 (a) Specific Factors                      (b) Stimulus Factor                      (c) Psychological Factor
- The second group of psychologists define stress as a ..... .  
 (a) Stimulus                                      (b) Response                                      (c) Reaction
- Emergency reactions come under reaction of ..... of stress.  
 (a) Mental                                      (b) Objective                                      (c) physiological
- Self-report method is a method of ..... .  
 (a) Tension-scale                                      (b) Intelligent -scale                                      (c) Behavior

- (iii) **Plan Full Problem Solving**—In this type of coping strategy, man makes a plan for facing with problem that aroused stress in man and he resolves the problem by behaving according to that,

Notes

**Notes**

as- one unemployed man reduce his stress by reading vacancies in the news paper and sending his resume to the employer for coping stress that aroused from the unemployment.

Under problem-focused strategy there are some strategy in which the focus of man does not towards the changing the nature of problem but goes towards him self. In it man tries to bring changes in the level of aspiration. He searches for alternative sources and learns new skill. With the help of these strategies, the stress of man can be coped properly.

**2. Emotion-Focus Coping Strategy** – In this type of strategy, man focuses on the emotional response aroused by problem. In this strategy man does not try to change the nature of problem but tries to cope the anxiety aroused by problem. These strategies are used where man feels that the problem, that is arising stress, is so much serious, that it cannot be changed and the stress is arising in man in great quantity. Under it two types of strategies are described –

- (a) **Behavior Strategy** – In this strategy, stress can be coped by doing different kinds of behavior. as- he focuses on another things by moving away his focus from the problem, the man who starts to take alcohol and cigarette in great quantity, and he does work by making schedule of the works, which is done by him every day. The advantage of it that man does not feel obstacle in such works which can be obstacles in his main traits.
- (b) **Cognitive Strategy** – In this strategy, man tries to control stress by changing the meaning of stressful situation. In this way man does here reappraisal to the stressful situation. This reappraisal is real. Where a man finds this conclusion after thinking seriously that in fact the problem was not so much serious. Meichambaunm has called this problem cognitive restructuring. But sometimes we make reality distort by doing so, and deceive ourselves in a different way. Such cognitive strategy is called by Freud a defense mechanism, in which seven if following-
  - (1) **Repression** – In which anxiety, memory etc, which is aroused from the stressful problem, goes into unconscious mind from conscious mind, because they are mentally painful. It is called repression process, which is different from suppression where a man knowingly keeps away the memory and desires that aroused anxiety from the conscious mind, so that he could focus on other factor. Man does not know his desires and memories in repression, while in suppression, man knows that which desires and memories are kept away from him.
  - (2) **Reaction Formation** – In which man tries to control stress by developing quite opposite desires and thoughts from the desires and thoughts that aroused stress in man, as- a leader worried with corruption copes his stress by giving speech against corruption.
  - (3) **Rationalization** – In which a man moves away from his stress and satisfy himself by changing his irrational behavior or thoughts into rational behavior. In this way rationalization completes two motives of man. First when he enables to achieve goal, rationalization copes the seriousness of stress, produced from frustration and it provides acceptable motive for the behavior that is done by man. As- one student can make this rationalization not reaching in the examination hall at the correct time that his room-mate did not awake him at the proper time. here student tries to remove the stress of not reaching examination hall by the medium of rationalization behavior. it is possible that his friend did not awake him at the proper time but reaching the examination hall at correct time is his responsibility not his friend.
  - (4) **Projection** – In these types of defense mechanism, man blames on others for his mistakes and failures for removing his stress and in this way he makes himself free from the faults, which create peace and satisfaction in him. Really projection is like rationalization, but its importance is different, because it is mostly used in our society. After getting failure in the examination, student tries to cope his stress by saying this that teacher did not teach him properly or his he was kept busy during the period of examination, by thinking in this way he did not find himself guilty and his stress is reduced.
  - (5) **Displacement** – Displacement is also an important cognitive defense mechanism by which a man can reduce his stress, in which stress aroused by painful motives and conflict is displacement by

fundamental things, which produce painful motives and conflicts is reduced by the displacement towards unrelated things or situation. As- the boy, who is beaten by his parents copes his stress by beating his younger brother, it is the example of displacement it is identified in the displacement man copes his stress by doing react towards that things and man, which is seen him less dangerous and less fearful.

- (6) **Denial** – When external reality is more painful and dangerous that man cannot tolerate it, he removes tension by denying the existence of that reality, as- the parent of the child, who is seriously ill, reduce his stress by thinking that his child is out of danger, while they know the outcome of the illness.
- (7) **Intellectualization** – Intellectualization is such a defensive mechanism, in which man develops detachment by thinking in an abstract way about the stressful situation, by which he reduces his tension. As- a doctor who always fights with the life of patient, seeing their situation stress is produced in them, but not showing emotionally enrolment towards them the develop a different kinds of detachment, by which their stress is reduced and they get success in the treatment of patients.

It was identified that many strategies had been described for coping the seriousness of stress, yet all these strategy do not get success in its motives because the seriousness of stress has affected badly most of the men of the society, that their emotional and physiological health is affecting badly day by day. Hence psychologists have taken all this in a challenging way.

It has been known from the new researches that there are temporal aspects of coping behavior. Man can cope stress after arising it. Beehr and Mc Grath, 1996 have described such five situations, which create special temporal context, in which man does coping behavior –

- (a) **Preventing Coping** – This is such a coping behavior, which is started very early by men from the event of arising stress, as- smoker gives up smoking by the thought of keeping away from the danger of lungs cancer, it is accepted as the example of preventive coping.
- (b) **Anticipatory Coping** – When man does coping behavior that stressful event is happening at once, such coping behavior is called anticipatory coping. If man takes tranquilizer at once with the guess, that surgery is done by doctor at once, this coping behavior is called anticipatory coping.
- (c) **Dynamic Coping** – This type of behavior is done by man when he is going through stressful situation. As - when a man pays his attention on other thing for the thought of coping his pain, it is called dynamic coping.
- (d) **Reactive Coping** – Man accepts this type behavior after the event, which aroused stress, as a man adjusts with his life by bringing some changes in life style after losing his one foot. Then it will be called reactive coping.
- (e) **Residual Coping** – This is such a coping behavior which is used by man to face the deep effect of stress of event which has produced long time ago, as after a long time of happening traumatic event, a man can adjust with the event by controlling his fearful rumination about that event.

It has been cleared that there are different aspects of coping behavior, which are very useful. Now It is known by new study that men and women show different behavior from one another in the selection of coping strategies. It has been identified by the studies that problem focused coping strategies is mostly used by men, while emotion focus strategy used by women, in which it is tried to get the social aid by other people. It has been cleared by the studies of Ptacek, Smith and Dodge (1994) that the main reason of it from the starting of life men and women are taught to follow the different way to face the stress, but this conclusion comes under doubt by the study of Porter and Stone (1995), because it is found in their study that the thoughts felt by men and women are less different from each other, or which strategies they follow to face the stress, are less different among themselves. There is difference in both of them in the thought of content. Work related stress is more told by men. And self related problems as parent related problem and problems which are related to the internal action with other people are always told by women,

**Notes**

it is also find out by the study that coping strategy is also affected by culture. Chang, 1996 did an experiment in which specially thought on this fact that is there any differences in the thoughts of optimist and pessimist and coping strategies between Asian and European students, Or not. It is seen in the result that Asian students were most optimists comparatively and they used more coping strategies of problem avoidance and social withdrawal.

## **27.7 Management of Stress**

As we know that a man uses different kinds of strategies for removing the stress that happens in life, but such strategies do not prove useful forever. The most important cause among them is the seriousness of stress or its newness. Health psychologists have paid attention on some methods for facing such situation. It will be appropriate to ask here before thinking on those methods. What is stress management? Stress management means by such programs, in which man is asked about the sources of stress and education is given him about the scientific and modern way of facing it. Not only is this practice of the skill, for reducing stress also done here.

There are many ways of managing stress management, in which main three stages are important –

- (1) In the first stage, man learns that what is stress?
- (2) In the second stage he learns the method of removing or reducing stress, practice is also done by him in this work.
- (3) In the last stage, he practices of the management methods in the targeted stressful situations and monitor the effect of it.

An important program based on these three stages is developed in America, which is called 'Combat Stress Now', which is successfully used in those schools where students feel complication in facing with the stress of educated life.

According to Lehrer and Wollfolk,1993 many techniques of management have been divided into two parts:

- (a) Individual Approach
- (b) Environmental Change Approach

The techniques that come under both of these approach are following described –

- (a) **Individual Approach** – Under it special work is done on mainly men for the management stress, under it two techniques are put-
  - (i) **Arousal Reduction** – In this method , man is trained to the relaxation of muscles. And sometimes the support of biofeedback is also taken. It is seen that after getting the training of this man (1988) began to use this talent slowly in his real life for reducing the stress. Davidson and Thomson have said, after doing the study of this that man can get the stable advantage of this training, when he does continue practice of this type of relaxation.
  - (ii) **Cognitive Restructuring** – The founders of this method are Meichambaunm, 1977; Ellis,1962 and Beck. This is such a techniques in which it is tried to change the belief system of man so that he may present the right and appropriate detail of experiences of life and can bring changes in his clear behavior and emotion, Because of such belief, man has many expectations with others and even himself, and becomes stressful. By the cognitive restructuring techniques, he enables to put away such belief from himself and put another in place of that. Folkman and Lazarus (1984) have accepted this fact in his study.
  - (iii) **Behavioral Skill Training** – This is such a method of stress management, man is trained with some such skill, related to behavior, by using that he can reduce his stress. As- time management is such a skill, by learning this, man can reduce his day to day stress. Often it is seen that man

has to do more work in limited time, which is a cause of stress, in the time management, man is trained how he can deal with such situations. It is evident that some special behavioral skills are taught to man, by which he could control day to day stress.

- (iv) **Biofeedback** – In the decade 1970, a new technique became popular, which is called biofeedback. Biofeedback is such a specific technique, by which the physiological aspects of stress can be controlled and monitored. In which feedback is given about the function of any special internal part of man. Which is generally out of conscious control of man, man has to control it by recognizing it, as the connection of disease can be established with such a machine, which can change the heart's beat into tone, so that man could understand this how much rapidly heart is beating. In the process of trial and error, man learns to control over this autonomic response slowly. Now man can feel it that not paying attention on the heart beats, if the attention is focused on other things, by this his heart beats can be easily reduced.

Biofeedback is not only used for reducing stress, but also for the prevention of high blood pressure, long pain and muscles-contraction headache. But these techniques did not become popular because of high cost. The another cause of its unpopularity is that better result began to come with other techniques.

- (v) **Relaxation Techniques** – There are many relaxation techniques, which are used for reducing stress by man when man is in the stage of relaxation, there is less arousal in the body of man. Which means man does not want to react towards the stress. In this way man takes his body into the pleasant stage from the lower stage. There are many relaxation methods, which is used by man for reducing stress. In which important are following –

- (1) According to Everly (1989) – one aspect of relaxation technique is that in which there is projective relaxation of different muscles of body. Here imagination is this, because tension and anxiety is related to the muscles stress so the feeling of stress and anxiety can be coped by reducing the stress of muscles. In the projective relaxation, man putting some muscles of body in sequence, specially first man relax the muscles of face by starting from lower parts of muscles. Until body comes in the stage of complete relaxation, the feeling of arousing peace is practiced in man, then he developed less stressful tendency.
- (2) The second version of relaxation technique is controlled breathing. Because the stage of relaxation is related to controlled breathing, so we can develop relaxation in man by arousing this type of breathing pattern, first man takes a long breathe, by which fresh air goes in the lungs of man. After taking long breathe within 10 minutes, man takes short breathe, stress arousing pain is controlled after adapting this process. This fact is confirmed by the studies of Turk and his colleagues and Weisenberg, 1977.

This fact has supported by some studies, which by putting relaxation techniques in continue practice it helps a lot in developing immune system. Kiecolt-Glaser and his colleagues (1984) studied in which some medical students of first year were divided in two groups, relaxation group and comparison group. The students of relaxation group were trained in relaxation session before 5 to 10 months before the starting the examination, training was not given to comparison group. During the time of examination defects were seen in the work of immune system of both of the groups, means the ratio of t cells were less, but stress was felt less by the students of relaxation group in this group the member, who practice more in the relaxation session, t cells were found in them more than the student, who did not practice in the relaxation session. It is identified from this study that relaxation reduces anxiety and stress. Kiecolt-Glaser, 1985 did other experiment in which 45 old men were divided into three groups, relaxation training is given to one group, social contact is provided to second group and third group was kept under control group. Training was given three times to first two groups in a week till one month. It was seen after finishing month, there was enough improvement in the works of immune system of relaxation group, which tells himself that the clear effect of it seen by doing continue practice of it.

**Notes**

**(b) Environmental Changes Approach**—In the individual approach, those techniques are forced, which prepares a man for doing compromise with the special environment, but in the environmental approach, accepting environment as a problem it is tried to reduce stress by doing some changes in it. The role of social support is considered important in it. Cohen and Wills (1985) have called two types of changes- Structure social support and functional social support. Structure social support means by the network, which is related to the social support, as- numbers of friends on the occasion of marriage. Functional social support means, by the qualities of men, as - does a man has this faith that he can call his relative in the bad time. If yes, it will be considered that man has got functional social support. It has been cleared by the study of Goodnow and Grady (1990) and Seeman and Seeme (1990) that tension is creates by low social support and many physical and mental diseases are produced by it. In this approach, man is trained in this way by which can make his social circle strong and changes the environment of his surrounds in which stress is not presented. In this field the contribution done by community psychologists is admirable.

It can be concluded that there are many techniques of stress management, a man can spend stress less life by using these methods properly.

### **27.8 Summary**

- Stress is a big problem of our society. It is known from modern researches that stress is the cause of the illness of 75% people.
- Some psychologists have tried to understand the stress, as the factors of stimulus and have said that any event or situation that insists a man for doing abnormal responses is called stress. Events as- earthquake, leaving the job, destroy the business, death of loving person are the main events, which create stress in a man. Such materials, social and environmental factors, which create stress, are called stressor.
- Some psychologists have tried to explain the stress as a response.
- The third batch of psychologists, who defined stress not only as a stimulus not as a response but also tried to define it on the basis of its relationship. This approach is called transactional approach. Psychologists consider it that some events or situation are definitely such, which are stressful for men. There are some situations and events which can create stress in some men, hence stress can not be defined meaningfully as a stimulus in the same way the responses of stressful events, even that physiological responses can be affected easily
- When a man is under stress, he feels it and does response toward it.
- Psychological Reactions-there are many kinds of physiological and psychological reactions in stress. In other words, disruption is found in the physiological works of man in stress.
- A man does physiological reactions towards the situation or stimulus causing stress. Often it is seen that after surrounded by the stressful situation, the stomach of man is disturbed and heart beats become abnormal and changes in nerves system. All these are the example of physiological reactions.
- As we know man does not only do one reaction but different reactions towards the stress. In other words, there is individual differences in the reactions that are done towards the stress. Psychologists have tried to understand the causes of this individual difference. According to their consideration following factors are such as by which reactions are influenced – (1) Prior Experience (2) Social Support (3) Predictability and Control (4) Cognitive Factors (5) Type 'A' Personality.
- Scientist have done successful effort for the measurement of stress, and they have described four important methods for this – (1) Self-Report Method (2) Behavioral Methods (3) Physiological Methods.

- How does stress arouse in the mind of man, psychologists have done deep study of it. And a schedule of many factors has been prepared by which tension arouse in man, such factors are following – (1) Stressful Events of Life (2) Conflicts of Motives (3) Daily Hassles (4) Work Related Sources (5) Environmental Sources
- Whatever may be the causes for stress, but it lays bad effect on the emotional and physiological health of man. Hence psychologists have thought seriously on the strategies of coping it. Reducing the related behavior of stress is called coping behavior. Coping behavior has been defined by the psychologists in different ways, as- Goodstein and Lanyon have defined the coping behavior in this way –  
 “By coping we mean the degree to which individuals are able to meet and master at least three kinds of challenges to their existence: (1) direct challenges from the physical environment (2) challenges stemming from their physical limitation (3) interpersonal challenges.”
- The most important cause among them is the seriousness of stress or its newness. Health psychologists have paid attention on some methods for facing such situation. It will be appropriate to ask here before thinking on those methods. What is stress management? Stress management means by such programs, in which man is asked about the sources of stress and education is given him about the scientific and modern way of facing it. Not only is this practice of the skill, for reducing stress also done here.

### 27.9 Keywords

1. **Physiological Reaction** – Bodily reaction
2. **Rationalization** – Try to understand work and sources by the medium of logic

### 27.10 Review Questions

1. Explain the characteristics of tress and tension.
2. How many types do reactions have? Explain in detail.
3. Analyze the factors that happened under stress.
4. Explain the methods of measurement of stress.
5. Explain the strategy of coping stress and its management in detail.

### **Answers: Self-Assessment**

1. (b)
2. (b)
3. (c)
4. (a)

### 27.11 Further Readings



#### Books

1. Psychology - The Study of Human Behavior – *Brijkumar Mishra, P.H.I, Learning New Delhi.*
2. Education Psychology – *S.K. Mangal, P.H.I Learning, Pvt, New Delhi.*
3. The Development of Learner and Teaching Learning Process – *A.K.Verma, Hindi book Center, New Delhi.*
4. Psychology – *Dr. Saryu Prasad, Agra, Book Store, Agra.*

## Notes

**Unit-28: Anxiety****CONTENTS**

Objectives

Introduction

28.1 Anxiety: Meaning and Definition

28.2 Nature of Anxiety

28.3 Kinds of Anxiety

28.4 Principles of Anxiety

28.5 Causes of Anxiety

28.6 Characteristics of Anxiety

28.7 Summary

28.8 Keywords

28.9 Review Questions

28.10 Further Readings

**Objectives**

After the study of this unit, the student will be able to–

- Understand the anxiety and nature of Anxiety.
- Understand the principles and kinds of anxiety.
- Understand the causes of anxiety.
- Understand the characteristics of anxiety.

**Introduction**

It is natural for a man to be fearful. Sometimes he gets worried and fearful with the curse of god and goddess and other times worried with personal and social problems. Freud (1939) considers the conflict between Id, ego and super ego as the important cause of anxiety. This is the fact in itself. But it is the statement of Hargi (1939) that it is developed by the social causes, family disputes, criticism of man by the people of society, uncompleted need of man etc are helped in the development of the nature of anxiety. Hopelessness, discouragement, frustration, depression, mental and physical weakness is seen in worried man. Thus fear and social adjustment is the basis of anxiety.

## 28.1 Anxiety: Meaning and Definition

Notes

The word 'Duschinta' is the Hindi transformation of English word 'Anxiety', which is made from the word Anxious of Latin language, which means 'State of Agitation' in English or it means in Hindi 'the condition of Agitation'. Anxiety has been defined differently by different psychologists.

1. **Freud (1936):** Anxiety is a stoppage in the human development. There is an important role of anxiety in human behavior in the materialistic age of today. It is not clear and invisible in the beginning. As soon as it develops, its nature becomes serious, by which changes are seen in the behavior, activities and daily routine of men.
2. **Solian, (1955):** Anxiety is the condition of painful mental stage, which is arisen by past personal experiences.
3. **W. Liscar (1956):** Anxiety is the physical and mental movement.
4. **Lorel (1955):** Anxiety is the fruit of behavior of parent with children.
5. **Drever (1958):** Anxiety is the mixing nature of many emotions, in which anger, fear, low self-esteem, jealousy are included.
6. **Colman:** Anxiety means by the worried of liberal and directionless.
7. **Fisher:** Anxiety is the process of that those internal, personal and enter less worthy difficulties in mental seizures.
8. **Roznav Gragti:** The man who is suffered from this disease, restlessness, doubt and liberal directionless worried in him.
9. **R.R. Willard (1965):** Sudden changes in civilization is the most important cause of anxiety.
10. **Kaimran:** There is maximum emotional stress and liberal worried in found in this type of patient.
11. **Mandugal:** Anxiety is produced from fear.
12. **Bugleski:** Anxiety is a starting element in the learning of any work, anxiety is produced as the result of efforts of protecting from the curiosity obstacles, the desire of reward and punishment etc.

**Movar** (1950) said that modern environment is the cause of arising anxiety, in which alcohol, smoking, addicted tablets, gambling and more sexual tendency etc are found. Movar has said further that today's modern techniques, materials and outfits, celebration in the cocktail parties and more tendencies in the materialism are helpful in anxiety, as a result, unsocial works are done by man as – murder, suicide and divorce etc.

Movar has written in his book that anxiety was not studied before 1930 in the psychology. The study of anxiety is started in psychology, when Freud and his followers studied anxiety as a human development. Daidald and Miller have said (1950) anxiety is added with the personality of men. Searches have also accepted it.

## 28.2 Nature of Anxiety

Anxiety has attracted the attention of many psychologists for a long times. In fact anxiety is curse for human life, when it is out of control. When a little bit anxiety is told necessary for the development of man, on the other side, out of control anxiety is the cause of destruction of man. Especially it is dangerous for the teachers, trainers and the students of school.

**Albert and Heber, Meddler and Watson, Spans and Spans, Wine and Surgeon** and other psychologists have certified the nature of Anxiety. According to them, the nature of Anxiety is following:

1. The nature of work, the evaluation of result and emotionalism is the basis of anxiety. Albert and Lever (1960) have confirmed this fact and said- "anxiety is always depended on the natural evaluation and the nature of emotion for doing work."

**Notes**

2. Anxiety is arisen due to the hindrance in the work. Anxiety is the emotional explosion to the helpless stage of a man. It is the statement of Meddler and Watson (1966) – when a man does any work, any obstacle is arisen in the limitation of period of work and there is no other alternative of that work, man finds himself in the mental weakness and helpless condition, which is conserved as an anxiety.
3. Mental conflict is the further factor of anxiety. This mental conflict takes the form of anxiety in the coming time. It is the statement of Amelpe (1966) – “in spite of having proper mental conditions if obstacles come in the work of man, the condition of mental conflict arises in him, which becomes the cause of anxiety moving further.”
4. If work is difficult or in spite of being easy it is out of the reach of man, it is natural for a man that he becomes the victim of anxiety. Spans and Spans (1966) have told that anxiety is always depended on the difficulty and capability of work.

### **28.3 Kinds of Anxiety**

Anxiety can be divided into two parts on the basis of nature of it.

**(a) Division on the basis of nature and aspect –**

- (1) Independence and directionless anxiety or non-abstract anxiety
- (2) Abstract Thinking

#### **1. Independence and directionless anxiety or non-abstract anxiety**

It is the statement of Freud (1953) that anxiety is a baseless and shapeless mantle thinking, according to it, which anxiety is supported without any reason, that is put under it.

Explaining it Olpe (1969) has said – That liberal directionless anxiety means such types of worried men have lack of concentration, incapability in taking decision, more emotionalism, discouragement and mental stress is found without any reason.

#### **2. Abstract Thinking**

According to Colman – The meaning of this type of anxiety, as- internal chaos, unhealthiness, the death of beloved, failure in the examination and the arrival of any man, such worried come under it.

**(b) Classification of anxiety on the basis of traits –**

Some psychologists have described the division of anxiety, on the basis of traits, which is following-

1. Some men are such, who are hardworking from nature but get worried by many reasons, which causes painful physical and mental traits in them, this condition is found mainly in the old age, which give suffering to some people with the disease of mental defect.
2. There are some people, who are depended on others, less intelligence is found in them and such people fear from the confronting of difficulties of life. These people are self centered and selfish. And

sometimes they are trouble for others. Because of these defects as weakness, selfishness and incapability, the traits of mood defects are developed in these types of men.

3. Freud (1940) has said that some married women are such who are not emotionally developed completely. They adapted the nature of in generosity and intolerance. If she gets married with the strict man, the feeling of loneliness, inferiority and insecurity developed in her. as a result her life is filled with quarrel and they become suffered with the seizures of worried.

Notes

## **28.4 Principles of Anxiety**

Many psychologists have delivered the concept, nature and definition of anxiety. on the basis of it, the principles of anxiety has been delivered, which is following –

### **(1) Freud's principles of anxiety**

Freud (1933) has said about the theory of anxiety that there is a great conflict between the ed, ego and super ego, which developed mental stress, that is anxiety. Namely the absence of these three orchestrated by mutual anxiety is born.

### **(2) Cornhani's principle of anxiety**

Cornhani's (1937) has said about the principles of anxiety that anxiety is increased in child because of social effects not by organic factors as Ed, ego and super ego. It is considered that in the starting child fears from his parents and society. Child tries to adjust himself with the society by the quarrelsome atmosphere and hearing the criticism by the family member, which is considered as the theory of trial and error. It is his statement that dual organic factors are not found between Ed, ego and Super ego. But among the needs.

## **Self Assessment**

Who has given the following definition about anxiety:

1. "Anxiety is the condition of painful mental stress, which is aroused by the past experiences of man."
2. "Anxiety is the physical and mental movement of man."
3. "Anxiety means by the liberal directionless worried."
4. "The most important cause of anxiety is the sudden changes in civilization."

## **28.5 Causes of Anxiety**

The anxiety that take birth in teachers and students turns into horrible form. They also have the same reason, which are produced in any men by the explosion of anxiety. It can be many causes of anxiety. But Coalman has described all of those causes including into three causes in his book 'Normal psychology and modern life' –

1. Organic Factors
2. Psychological Factors
3. Social Cultural Factors

### **1. Organic Factors**

Polin (1969) and Cohen (1974) have highlighted this factor for the first time. This factor is related to heredity. Under it the age, sex, emotional stress and more fear of man etc are obtained by heredity. The alive example of that as much as the country will be more prosperous, so the anxiety is found in it. heredity is such a factor among the organic effective factors, which is found in the mental patient from birth.

Notes

**2. Psychological Factors**

Coalman has describes two factors under this effective factor –

**(i) Defective learning**

When any child does not get proper learning. It is natural to produce the feeling of inadjustment in them. This unadjustment slowly keeps him away from the society. Consequently he becomes the victim of frustration, hopelessness, discouragement and depression. Thus defective learning is also an important factor for anxiety.

**(ii) Obstacles in the progress of man**

When some one does not get proper opportunity for doing progress and growing in personal life, definitely he becomes the victim of mental disease. It is natural for him to be the victim of mental disease as- irritation. Above saying all diseases are the main cause of anxiety. It grow it after producing it.

**3. Social Cultural Factors**

Famous psychologists kidson and johns (1968) have said on the basis of the study on the West Australian people that the people, who live in more civilized country, more anxiety is found in them. While little anxiety is found, where people are not living in educated manner. It is identified that social cultural factors affects anxiety.



*Did u know?* Coalman (1976)has said that in the backward countries, intoxicating nerve affected is found more, while anxiety is found in the developed country.

Unhappiness is the main reason of it. Coalman has found out on the basis of different researches that in the absence of culture and well conditioning situation, unsatisfaction is maintained towards the life and this unsatisfaction affects the mental condition of man.

There are some others effective causes of anxiety besides the causes, told by Coalman –

**(i) Fear**

In the starting, Freud (1936) has indicated towards this fact that mental and physical fear is found baseless in the worried man, as – the fear of an accident, fear of firing from the job, or the fear of get failure in the examination, etc.

**(ii) Long diseases**

It is the statement of Coral (1955), when a man is in long disease for a long time, mental seizures take birth in him, as – the feeling of inferiority. As – they think- now we will not get well, people are doing unexpected behavior with us etc.

**(iii) Deep worry**

It has also been concluded on the basis of the researches and study, which has been done on the anxiety. When there is deep anxiety in any man because of some special causes, sometimes after finishing the causes of worry this anxiety is presented in man, for example- after finishing the cause of an accident in the moving train, when he travels in that train again, the fear of reaccident is presented in him.

**(iv) Family dispute**

Family dispute is also another cause of anxiety. Fight between mother and father, father and son, stress between two brothers creates the cause of anxiety.

**(v) Strict Punishment**

Burt (1947) has said that the fear of strict punishment that is found in school and family is also another cause of anxiety in the children. Such children have the tendency of desertion for school in the starting. By and by the tendency of desertion towards other works is also found in them.

**(vi) Suppression of internal feelings**

It can be concluded from the study of Freud that such children, who have introvert personality, anxiety is developed in them because they suppress their feelings, by which frustration and inferiority is developed in them, which is the causes of anxiety.

**(vii) Unable to get the desirable things**

It is the statement of Morgon that the people, who do not success in getting the desirable things, anxiety naturally takes birth in them. This type of anxiety create because of not getting desirable jobs, money and the girl, whom you loves, gets married with other man.

**(viii) The feeling of criminal tendency**

This fact came in front of us as the result of the statement of Morgon that anxiety is produced in man due to developing criminal tendency in man.

*Notes*

After study Morgon has said about a woman that her criminal tendency was so much developed that she wants to eat her child. Such different examples confirm this statement that sin and criminal tendency has given birth to anxiety.

**(ix) Get failure**

Often it is seen that the child, who always gets failure in any work. it is natural for him to get frustration, this frustration take the place of anxiety. When any student gets failure in the examination of class again and again, he is filled with frustration and moving forward this frustration turned into anxiety.

**(x) Other factors**

Ese (1952) has said about the cause of anxiety that more smoking, unable to get expected help from friends, insulted by the family and society, feeling of insecurity, selfish, feeling of inferiority and more doubted mentality etc affected man indirectly and directly and filled him with anxiety.

**28.6 Characteristics of Anxiety**

Different psychologists have told different characteristics of anxiety, which are following –

**(1) Directionless**

Freud has said that the man, who is filled with anxiety, he cannot make a definite goal in any works, because anxiety is a characteristics in itself. It is unstable, goalless, and baseless.

**(2) Baseless**

Freud considers it that anxiety is a baseless fear, means there is no solid basis of anxiety. Sometimes worried man does not know himself that why is he worried? But he is worried.

**Notes**

**(3) Anxiety is Internal**

Anxiety is the condition of mental movement, so it is mainly internal. A man can feel it but if he is told to express his desire he cannot do it properly. Besides it there is one another characteristics of anxiety. That it is completely personal.

**(4) Anxiety is aroused without any causes**

There is no solid basis of anxiety. It comes itself it is the important characteristics of it. And it is arisen without any reasons. or which are the reasons, they are not quite clear.

**(5) Difficulty in taking decision**

Anxiety adds with some characteristics as- causeless, baseless, and goalless, so it natural for the man, who is worried, to have arisen the dual mentality. The man, who is filled with anxiety, cannot take decision that what is wrong and what is right, he feels difficulties in taking decisions of dual feeling, in which man is trapped in the pawn of anxiety.

**(6) Anxiety is filled with emotion**

Anxiety makes a man more emotional means the men who is filled with anxiety cannot feel movement in the changes of physical and mental and social condition, consequently it is considered the characteristics of anxiety.



*Task*

The feeling of anxiety is found more in the emotional men, express your thought in the context of this statement.

**(7) Anxiety is shapeless**

Anxiety is an abstract thinking, the statement of the psychologists as- Freud, "in fact the man , who is filled with anxiety cannot think it that why is he worried, consequently there is no form of it.

**(8) Anxiety is added with mental excitement**

Mental excitement is one of the characteristics of anxiety. As much as the anxiety, so the mental excitement or it can be said that as soon as mental excitement grows, anxiety will also grow, because anxiety is a mental movement in itself.

**(9) Lack of intelligence skill**

Anxiety is inspired by fear, baseless and daydreaming, by which anxiety man lives in more mental and physical stress. So intelligence skill can be developed in such men, but there is lack of intelligence in them.

**(10) Sufficiency of dreams filled with the future doubts**

Psychologists as Coalman have confirmed that due to anxiety, such dreams come during the time of sleeping, in which the doubts of future play its games. Such dreams are added with especially failure and convict.

**(11) The feeling of inappropriate is developed**

Anxiety arises the feeling of inappropriate in man itself. This feeling can be related to the educational, family, social and any other matter. This feeling is the symbol of self inferiority.

**(12) Disorder affect**

Anxiety creates undeveloped environment in the field of both life of specific and general, as feeding, living, thoughts, learning-teaching and disorder and instability is found completely in the field of life.

**(13) Other**

There are many characteristics of anxiety except it, as- living fearful, lack of concentration, excess of selfishness, soon restlessness and desire less etc are the development of the feeling is the characteristics of anxiety.

**Notes****28.7 Summary**

- It is natural for a man to be fearful. Sometimes he gets worried and fearful with the curse of god and goddess and other times worried with personal and social problems. Freud (1939) considers the conflict between Id, ego and super ego as the important cause of anxiety.
- In fact anxiety is curse for human life, when it is out of control. When a little bit anxiety is told necessary for the development of man, on the other side, out of control anxiety is the cause of destruction of man. Especially it is dangerous for the teachers, trainers and the students of school.
- The anxiety that take birth in teachers and students turns into horrible form. They also have the same reason, which are produced in any men by the explosion of anxiety.

**28.8 Keywords**

1. **Anxiety** – Bad worry
2. **Defective Learning** – Mistakes in learning.

**28.9 Review Questions**

1. Describe the kinds of anxiety.
2. Write the note on the nature of anxiety.
3. Throw light on the causes of anxiety.
4. Write the characteristics of anxiety.

**Answers: Self-Assessment**

1. Solian
2. W Lisker
3. Coalman
4. R.R.Williards

**28.10 Further Readings****Books**

1. Education Psychology – *S.H.Sinha and Rachna Sharma, Atlantic Publications, New Delhi.*
2. Education Psychology – *S.K. Mangal – P.H.I, Learning Pvt, New Delhi.*
3. Psychology – The Study of Human Behavior – *Brij Kumar Mishra, P.H.I.Learning, New Delhi.*
4. The Development of Learner and Education Learning Process – *A.K. Verma, Hindi Book Center, New Delhi.*

Notes

## Unit-29: Adjustment

### CONTENTS

Objectives

Introduction

29.1 What is Adjustment?

29.2 Frustration

29.3 Mental Conflict

29.4 Methods of Resolving the Conflicts and Tension Reduction

29.5 Summary

29.6 Keywords

29.7 Review Questions

29.8 Further Readings

### Objectives

After studying this unit, the students will be able to:

- Know about adjust and frustration.
- Understand the mental conflict.
- Understand the methods of resolving the conflicts and tension reduction.

### Introduction

It is compulsory for man to adjust according to the situation to lead a successful life. Person has to face many favorable as well as adverse conditions. Every person try to adjust in these conditions as per their capability. Some people successfully face the adverse conditions while some fails and lose their mental stability. These people are victim of frustration, mental conflict and stress. These affect the mental and physical health. So to understand the problems related to personality adjustment, meaning of adjustment, maladjustment, frustration, meaning of conflict and stress, reason and methods to resolve will be discussed here.

### 29.1 What is Adjustment?

**Meaning of Adjustment**—Adjustment is called fine-tuning, correction and amendment also. Adjustment is made by combining two words - connection and Events. Likely means well - like, well,

that means the system or society is well as arranging and organizing. Adjustment means well managed or the process of making things comfortable so that the requirements of man can be pleased and mental conflicts can be avoided. This universal truth can't be ignored that like other species human being also have its own requirements or needs. These requirements motivate a person to achieve his goals and makes him to move ahead. When a person gets his objectives easily he finds pleasure. But when he has to face difficulties on the way then he finds it a nasty experience, which is called as frustration. Thus, when a person has to face the powers force against his wills and interests in that situation mental conflict arises within his mind. Thus as a result of frustration and mental conflicts stress gets birth. Due to this stress a certain kind of disorder took place in his mind, then he tries to eliminate difficulties to eradicate stress. If he gets success in to eliminate these difficulties by remaining within situations and creativity, it means he has established adjustment with environment. If he gets failed in this process and adopts erroneous way then it gives birth to Maladjusted. Generally this process of adjustment is continuous during the life of a person. **Gates and others** write the meaning of 'adjustment' as there are two meanings of the word 'adjustment' at one hand it is a continuous process in which a person gets changes in his behavior to coordinate with environment. On the other hand adjustment is a well-balanced state after reaching which we say the person is well managed. To know the process of adjustment more clearly we should know about the characters of well adjusted person and maladjusted person.

## Notes

**Characteristics of well adjusted person:** Following characteristics can be seen in a well adjusted person on the basis of definition of adjustment and on the analysis of behavior:

1. A well adjusted person acquires the knowledge of surroundings and situations and has control over them and behaves accordingly.
2. He makes a balance between him and surroundings.
3. He consumes the surroundings and things according to his needs and determination.
4. He does not hurt other people of society for execution of his own desires.
5. Maintains his working ability even in complex situations and remains content with it.
6. He has the feeling of socialism, good behavior, well balanced from the view of sentiments and is always ready to accept responsibility.
7. He has clear objectives and is able to face difficulties bravely and in proper way.

In the same way Gates and Other write that, In short, the Well adjusted person is one, whose needs and satisfaction in life are integrated with a sense of social feeling and an acceptance of social responsibility.

**Characteristics of Maladjusted Person:** A maladjusted person can be identified by following characters:

1. Maladjusted person is incapable to develop him according to the surroundings.
2. He is of unfixed mind, unstable mind, unbalanced from the view of sentiments, undefined objectives and he has the feeling of enmity, hate and revenge.
3. He is unsocial, selfish and remains miserable.
4. He loses his mental balance while facing little problem.
5. Victim of nerve diseases, full of mental conflict and stressful.

From above characteristics we came to know that maladjusted person is full of mental conflicts and frustration. Actually both the two (mental conflict and frustration) are more obstructive on the way of adjustment of person. In short, it is good to understand meaning, cause and results of these.



Task

Define the meaning of well adjusted and maladjusted person.

Notes

## 29.2 Frustration

**Meaning of Frustration**—Often a person faces various little difficulties and hindrances daily. Most of them can be solved easily. Sometimes such difficulties arise which obstruct the needs of a person, means they create disturbance in execution of his objectives. Person makes efforts to eradicate these disturbances. He feels pleasure while he finally reaches to his goal by eradicating these problems, but when he gets failed to reaching his goals by removing hindrances even after making huge efforts then it makes him unhappy and feels failure or disappointment, it is called frustration in the language of psychology. Frustration is called despondency. Thus it is clear that “frustration is that stage of mind of a person that he gets after facing various hindrances and unfavorable alternatives”.



*Did u know?* That according to a scholar “frustration is that extreme feeling that a person feels after getting fail or being unsatisfied”

**Causes of Frustration**—There are various causes and sources of frustration, some of which are as following:

1. **Physical Causes**—Whereas the various physical or natural things are available in environment are helpful in pleasing needs and wants of a person, on the other hand various physical elements such as, famine, flood, drought, earthquake etc. proves barriers in execution of needs and wants, that creates despondency within the mind of person.
2. **Personal Causes**—Some people or children due to their mental, emotional or physical flaws such as lack of mind, fear, feeling of inferiority, inability, blindness, deafness etc. remains unsuccessful to accomplish their needs and desires. It creates the feeling of un-satisfaction and frustration in mind.
3. **Social Causes**—Strict laws, customs, culture, cast, religion and laws are also barrier in the accomplishment of desires and needs of a person, that introduce person with hopelessness and un-satisfaction and he feels obscurity in adjusting with society.
4. **Economic Causes**—One of the major factors of frustration is economic factor. Due to the bad economic conditions a person is unable to fulfill his various desires and needs and could not achieve his goals.
5. **Moral Measurement of Person**—There are some moral idols in his life such as non-violence, laying etc. due to which he is unable to accomplish his some needs and desires. For instance, passing an exam is the goal of a student, but difficult question-paper is present in form of barrier on his way. He finds cheating as a way to eliminate this barrier, but at the same time he came to know that it is an offence and pilfering, means it is unethical. He dumped cheating for his moral idol, but gets failed in exam as he could not solve question and feels un-satisfied and despondency.
6. **Current Circumstances and Stages**—Due to the social dearness, poorness, unemployment, unsuitable place for living, restless family environment etc. some requirements of child get un-fulfilled, it results as hopelessness. For instance after passing high-school a student wants to get higher education, but due to poorness or due to lack of inter-school his desire remains incomplete and he feels unsatisfied and frustration.
7. **Irrelevant/irregular Needs or Goals**—Due to many contrary needs or aim mental conflicts arise, as a result he has to face bleakness. For example a child feel important to go to school and also wants to stay home for the ill ailing father, but out of the two he can opt only one, therefore he will find failure or frustration in not accomplishing other objective.

**Adverse Impacts of Frustration**—Frustration adversely affects the adjustment of person with development and environment. Some of its adverse impacts are following:

1. Barrier in the development and adjustment of person.
2. Instability enters into the emotional situation, due to which he feels confuse and instable.
3. Unique personality symptoms.
4. Smugness and Undisposed.
5. Increase in mental stress and mental frustration.

### **29.3 Mental Conflict**

**Meaning of Mental Conflict:** A person has various desires, needs and interests, but it is not necessary that all his desires and needs get accomplished. He has to face some adverse situation in surrounding and a certain kind of war starts within his mind. Thus when a person has to choose one out of two opposite objects then he has to face war. For instance a student whose BA final year exams are going to be started next week, he gets an appointment letter in the same week for a job. In such a situation he wants to appear exam as well as job, but finds difficult to choose one of the two alternatives. Some kind of instability arises within his mind. What to do? In psychology this situation is called conflict.

According to L.D. Crow and A. Crow, "Conflict arises when an individual is faced with forces in his environment that act in opposition to his own interest and desires."

While defining mental conflict Frayed wrote, "Mental conflict is caused by the lack of adjustment between Id, Ego and Supper ego."

**Causes of Mental Crises:** A definite list of causes of mental crises could not be presented. There are so many reasons of it, still its main causes are as following:

1. **Biological and Physical Causes**—Under this physical elements and biological wishes, such as requirement of food, wish for sex etc. and physical stages are included, that create mental conflict.
2. **Momentum Causes**—Satisfaction or un-satisfaction of wills, happiness, sorrow, sex and emotion-glands also create mental conflicts.
3. **Social Causes**—A person has to face mental conflicts due to the regulation, customs, culture, moral ethics, behavior, cast, thought and religion of society.
4. **Economic Causes**—Even after good economic conditions a person has to face mental conflicts at every step while accomplishing his needs and choosing relevant way of life.

**Adverse Impacts of Mental Conflicts**—Due to mental conflicts, barriers are created in general development of person and adjusting with environment and his entire personality get adversely affected. Some of its main adverse impacts are following—

1. **Special Mental Activities**—At the stage of mental conflicts all of his mental activities get affected. There is high quantity of un-remembrance, see more dreams and feel difficulty while facing reality.
2. **Showing Un-ordinary Emotions/Momentum**—Symptoms of happiness, sorrow, un-encouraging, sadness etc. can be experienced within person differently.
3. **Unsocial Behavior**—Seclusion, social-disincline and introversion behavior can be seen.
4. **Criminal Tendency**—At the stage of mental conflict, mental stability of a person get destroyed. He could not what is right and what is wrong and he moves towards social and constitutional offences.
5. **Mental Frustration**—Due to the adverse effects of mental conflicts person get nerve diseases and mental stress keeps on.

Entire personality of a person gets affected by above said frustration and mental conflicts and then he gets complexity in adjusting with his surroundings.

Notes

### 29.4 Methods of Resolving the Conflicts and Tension Reduction

Due to the emotional instability, extreme un-satisfaction and mental conflict or due to the excess stress person starts losing his mental balance. In such stage to avoid these harmful events person starts getting some securing activities these are to be defined under upcoming... solutions. **Psychologist Cameron, Saffore and Shohev** told about two kinds of adjustments: protective methods and Escaping methods. The main function of protective method is to protect the ego of person. Main objective of escaping methods is to get person out of the stressful situation and help him in personal adjustment. This personal adjustment is appropriate from the view of person, but not from social view, because person is only called adjusted when his behavior is according to the measurements of society. Here we are explaining about protective methods of adjustment. Psychologist **Cameron** defines about following five protective methods:

1. Attention Getting.
2. Identification.
3. Compensation
4. Rationalization.
5. Projection

From the View of convenience all the methods can be divided in following four parts –

- (a) Direct Methods
- (b) Indirect Methods
- (c) Compensatory Methods
- (d) Aggressive Methods

Now each of the above is defined as following –

**(a) Direct methods** – Direct methods of reducing stress are those in which a person makes efforts in his consciousness/awaking stage. He use his logical power to use these methods. Some direct methods are following:

**1. To Finish or Eradicate Hindrances** – Person try to eradicate or completely destroy those barriers in consciousness form, which occur during his way to accomplish his needs or reaching his goal. In this way by eradicating hindrances a person can succeed in achieving his goals and his mental stress disappears. For instance, when a child could not solve the complete question paper in exam and could not get success due to his slow writing speed, which increases his mental stress day by day. Slow writing speed is the barrier in his success. Therefore he eradicates this hindrance by improving his writing speed by continuous practice and get succeed. It reduces his mental stress. If we deeply study daily life of a person then we will find that he uses this method most.



Notes

When we do not get success in accomplishing any work, and then try to accomplish the work by efforts and practice. Thus we reduce our mental stress.

**2. Find Alternatives** – When a person could not eliminate the barriers of his way then he found new way. When he get success by finding another way then, his metal stress disappears automatically.

**3. Attention Getting Mechanism** – Child use this since the beginning of life.

According to **Shekhar and Shoven**, “Attention-getting is an act that makes person the focus of other people’s behavior.

When a person feel himself neglected then he use this method to attract other people towards him. By this method he wants others to pay attention to him. It is the psychological need of person that he should be appreciated by others. Often the children could not get care from parents or treated as neglected in society use this method. This method can be seen in behavior related problems of flaws, which create difficulty in social adjustment, means this method is more faulty/defected.

## Notes

**4. Re-establishment of Other Objectives** – When a person does not get success in achieving his goal after making all his possible efforts, then he adopts second objective which is almost same to the previous one that can be easily achieved. This re-established objective reduces his stress till some extent. For instance, students have the will to be professor in his college, but due to some problems if he could not be professor in college then satisfy him with being lecturer in the college. It provides him some mental relaxation and stress decreases to some extent.

**5. Analysis and Decision** – When there are more than one contrary desires or destinations a conflict arises within him and results mental stress. It is difficult for him choose between alternatives. He analysis all aspects of all the alternatives using his past experiences and choose which he finds most appropriate.

### Self Assessment

Fill in the blanks:

1. If a person gets success to eliminate difficulties by remaining within situations and creativity, it means he have established ..... with environment.
2. frustration is that extreme feeling that a person feels after getting ..... or being unsatisfied?
3. When a person has to choose between two contrary and gets confused, it is called ..... in Psychology.
4. When a person fails to adjust with situation, in Psychology it is called .....

**(b) Indirect methods** – Indirect methods of reducing stress are those that a person adopts in unconscious form. For avoiding mental instability due to stress and feeling unwind. These methods are called **Defense Mechanisms**. These defense mechanisms are the attempts for getting adjustment through unconscious mind and an attempt for killing mental conflicts. Personality can be adjusted in various ways. Mental stress born by internal conflicts can be reduced by defense mechanism. Some of defense mechanisms are discussed below, which are helpful in reducing stress:

**1. Sublimation** – Sublimation is that mental process of an unconscious mind within which basic-reacting power or sentimental powers, turns pashvik requirements or desires towards an artificial direction which is acceptable by society. For instance, sex-tendency of a person moves towards formation of artistic behavior, music, religion and spirituality. This rectifies basic behavior. Mr. Frayed is devotee of this belief.

**2. Withdrawal** – Often person deduct himself from the sources arising distress or stress or withdraw himself. Such person is called withdrawer. These people do not hurt others, but when their withdrawal becomes extraordinarily unsocial then they feel very difficult to be adjusted. For instance when a child is teased or insulted by his friends in class, then it is possible that he try to keep himself away from others. If his behavior becomes extraordinary then it will be very difficult for him to be adjusted. Therefore withdrawal should to happen to some extent only. Withdrawal can be seen in following two ways:

**(i) Regression** – Actually regression is the reaction of the activities that a person could not understand in his life which is based on the reaction of childhood. It means when stress arises due to dissatisfaction then he returns back to his past experience for avoiding unhappy experience. For instance an old man behaves like a child, such as starts crying, shouting, stammering, etc.

**(ii) Day-Dreaming** – Day-dreaming is the process in which a person lives in the world of imagination by forgetting his present unpleasant happiness. With the help of day-dreaming a person gets pleasant

**Notes**

feeling by imagining his failure as success and thus reduces his stress to some extent. For example a child constantly failing can see himself as passing in best grades or holding a higher post. In day-dreaming a person sometimes feels himself as a hero and sometime as a looser. The person thus gets an instable happiness. But the excess of day-dreaming lacks in adjustment.

**3. Identification** – Identification is an ordinary stage of adjustment. This tendency can be found in most of the people. When a person get failed in a particular field and have lack of ability then he identify with a successful and able person means feel his abilities within himself. For example Mohan is dull and is weak in sports, but his father is a professor in a college who always passed with good score and was a good player, so he introduces himself as the son of an intelligent professor, instead of his personal qualities as he is afraid. Identification reduces personal feelings and inferiority remains away. Identification is only good to reduce inferiority and stress, but when it affects social behavior then it is dangerous.

**4. Becoming Dependent** – When a person gets failed even after making continues efforts then he handover his responsibilities to solve his problems to a much intelligent and powerful person. This attempt reduces his mental stress and along with it a combined attempt of both make problem solving easy and dependent person get more benefit.

**5. Rationalization** – To understand the process of rationalization it will be better to understand it as famous phrase ‘Sour grapes’. when a person get failed in any field he gets a less painful reason rather than real cause. For example getting late for school he tries to evade mental stress.

**6. Repression** – Person wants to forget his bad experiences for reducing stress. Thus, he suppresses his basic desires and wants who are in anti-social form, which is requiring a momentum for its presentation. Suppress means not presenting wills and desires. It is believed that behaviors based on inherent factors are often unsocial. They include the opponent factors of morality and respect. Society does not allow the presentation of this kind of behavior freely. it is controlled by society to some extent. For example, if there is no social control over the lewdness of a person then he may do many offensive acts and at that time there will be no idol of society will remain. Therefore a person suppresses his anti-social wills. But the process of repression is not good, because due to this other behavioral flaws arise.

**7. Projection** – Often it is seen that a person blames other factors of surrounding or people for his own failure, here it is right to say that ‘naach na jaane aangan Tedha’. For example, on not selecting for a post, a person said that I was able for it, but selection committee did partiality. In the same way on getting failed student blame test-paper and examiner for it.

**8. Reversal Formation** – The function of reversal formation is to keep away mental conflict. It is that activity of unconscious mind, which creates such behavior, interest, thoughts and feelings in conscious mind against the partially suppressed wills. For instance, a person argues about moral ideas to suppress his extreme sex tendency and pretends his hate for it.

**(c) Compensatory Methods** – Often when a person get failed in a particular field or realizes drawbacks within him then he try to get success in some other area or to make more efforts in the same field to demolish his limitations. It reduces his mental stress. **Crow** and **Crow** define compensation as “Compensation may be defined as the utilization of extra energy in the development of a trait or traits to alleviate the tension caused by a real or imagined defect.”

A person compensates both in **direct** and **indirect** way. Direct way for compensation is that in which a person get success in the same by striving hard. For example a weak student became a good one by constant study. The indirect method of compensation is that, where one gets failed in a particular area but get success in another field. Thus his feeling of inferiority raised by failure in first area gets away and his mental stress get reduced. Example, A weak student compensate himself by being a good sportsperson, speaker or actor. Often all the people can be seen in compensation from practical life to another field. Wearing high heels by short height person, use of more cosmetics by less beautiful person and wearing bold cloths etc. are the compensating methods. Here reader can ask that more beautiful

person also use cosmetics and bold dress then what do they compensate? Here it can be said that they may be beautiful for others but they themselves believe that they are less beautiful than someone else. But it is a fact that less beautiful person man or woman uses more cosmetics and bends towards fashion than more beautiful person.

**(d) Aggressive Methods**—Aggressive method refers to that method in which a person damages to the person or to the factor which is creating barrier in his want satisfaction and thus tries to reduce his mental stress. Aggression may be of two kinds, direct and indirect. Direct aggression is that, in which a person only attacks on the person or factor who/which is responsible for his dissatisfaction. For example a students who wants to do cheating but invigilator stops him in doing so means, he is barrier in his goal accomplishment, then student attacks on invigilator only. Here the objective cheating is not completing hence the tendency to attack arises. Indirect aggression is that in which a person attacks on another person or thing while he is unsatisfied. It is called displacement of aggression also. Such as, the above student does not attack on invigilator but fights with friend or brother after exam and thus reduces his stress. Sometimes person punish himself also it is called inter-directed aggression/attack. Inter-directed aggression is mostly seen in women, children and weak peoples. When kids get failed in something they bite themselves or chop their shirt. In the same way women and weak people when failed in something or insulted by someone beat themselves. This can reduce stress but it has dangerous Sid effects.

Therefore this method can't be contemplated as a good method. Various methods such as desired surrounding and catharsis etc. are there other than above said methods which can reduce stress and person can be well-adjusted.

Notes

## 29.5 Summary

- Person has to face various favorable and unfavorable situations. Everybody try to adjust himself according his ability. Some of them defeat unfavorable situations and some of them loss their mental stability after defeated by them. This kinds of people becomes the victim of stress or un-satisfaction, mental-conflicts and frustration.
- Only necessities inspire a person for goal accomplishment and he moves forward. When person easily achieve his objectives then he find pleasure. But when he has to face difficulties on the way then he finds it a horrible experience, which is called as frustration. In the same way when a person has to face the powers against his wills and interest in that situation a mental conflict arises within him. Thus as a result of frustration and mental-conflicts, mental stress arises. Because of the frustration a certain kind of fluctuation get birth within the mind of a person, for eliminating this he tries to eliminate barriers. If he get success into eliminate these difficulties by remaining within the boundary of situations and creativity, then he establishes adjustment with environment. If the person gets failed in it and adopts erroneous way then it gives birth to Maladjusted.
- When a person get failed in achieving his goals by removing hindrances even after making huge efforts then it makes him unhappy and feels failure or disappointment, it is called frustration in the language of psychology.
- When a person has to choose one out of two opposite objects then he has to face conflict. For instance a student whose BA final year exams are going to be started next week, he gets an appointment letter in the same week for a job. In such a situation he likes exam as well as job, but finds difficult to choose one of the two alternatives. Some kind of instability arises within his mind. What to do? The situation in which he is, it is called mental conflict in the language of psychology.

**Notes**

- Psychologist Cameron, Saffore and Shohev told about two kinds of adjustments: Defensive methods and Escaping methods. The main function of defensive method is to protect the ego of person. Main objective of escaping methods is to get person out of the stressful situation and help him in personal adjustment. This personal adjustment is appropriate from the view of person, but not from social view, because person is only called adjusted when his behavior exits within the measurements of society.

### **29.6 Keywords**

1. **Frustration** – Disappointment, dissatisfaction
2. **Ill** – Not well
3. **Maladjustment** – Unable to adjust according to the situation

### **29.7 Review Questions**

1. What is adjustment? Write the signs of adjustment.
2. What do you mean by frustration? Tell the reasons of frustration.
3. What do you mean by mental conflict? Explain the reasons of mental conflict.
4. Describe the Methods of resolving the Conflicts and Tension Reduction.

### **Answers: Self-Assessment**

1. Adjustment
2. Fail
3. Mental Conflict
4. Maladjustment

### **29.8 Further Readings**



*Books*

1. Adhigamkarta Ka Vikas Evam Shiksan Adhigam Parkiriya – A.K. Verma, Hindi Book Center, New Delhi.
2. Education Psychology – S.K. Mangal, P.H.I. Learning Private Ltd. New Delhi.
3. Education Psychology – S.H. Sinha & Rachna Sharma, Atlantic Publication, New Delhi.
4. Importance of Education for Children and Information – Seema Chopra, Hindi Book Center, New Delhi.

## Unit-30: Adolescence

### CONTENTS

Objectives

Introduction

- 30.1 Characteristics of Adolescence
- 30.2 Problems of Adolescence
- 30.3 Nature of Education in Adolescence or Guiding and Counseling Adolescents
- 30.4 Adolescence: A Period of Storm and Stress
- 30.5 Role of the Teacher
- 30.6 Summary
- 30.7 Keywords
- 30.8 Review Questions
- 30.9 Further Readings

### Objectives

After studying this unit, the students will be able to:

- Understand the characteristics of Adolescence.
- Understand the problems of Adolescence.
- Understand the nature of education in Adolescence or guiding and counseling Adolescents.
- Understand the stress and period of storm of Adolescence.
- Know the role of teacher

### Introduction

Adolescence comes after childhood. This stage starts at age of 12 years and continues till the age of 19 years. Psychologists call it the period of storm and problems. Especially sexual changes take place due to it life of adolescence fills with tension, worry and storm. So a proper guidance is required to the adolescence at this stage. In western countries it is also called "Teen Age". This is considered as the most complicated stage of development.

Notes

### 30.1 Characteristics of Adolescence

Main characteristics of Adolescence are as—

**Physical Development:** Two kinds of changes take place at adolescence: internal and external. Personality of adolescence develops according to these changes. At this stage flexibility of bones comes to an end and rigidity enters into them and bones take cylindrical shape. In girls fat starts gathering at their hips and starts gaining weight and symptoms of maturity can be experience on the faces of girls and their face say that now they are going to be mature. Pimples arise on face. Hair grows on certain body parts of boys such as chest, beard, secrete parts etc. moustache and beard also grow in some girls also, if their glands do not perform appropriately. Sweat of the boys produces a certain kind of smell. The most important giving of this stage is, complete growth of the reproductive parts, by which reproduction capacity arises within them. This change can be experienced in girls more quickly. Their breast becomes heavy. Sometimes breast develops before time, when the glands do not work properly. Chest of boys starts getting broad. Spermatorrhea in boys and menses within girls are the identity of being adolescence. Along with this internal parts of body also grow completely. Such as mind, heart, breathing, digestive system, nerve system etc. Immunity also develops within body.

**Mental Development:** At this stage unsteadiness ends and the concentration power develops and recollection-power increases. Girls have comparatively more cramming power than that of boys. Adolescent run in the world or imagination and also became the victim of day dreams. Growth of imagination is much higher in boys than that of girls. Their reasoning power increases and interests for various things also arise. Boys are interested in football, kabaddi and girls are more interested in dance and singing. This stage also gives birth to the boldness. Boy's emphasis on making their body strong whereas girls concentrate on beauty. The interest for comedy, story, poem, satire, patriotism, adventure, love-stories and sex arises within adolescent. Social awaking also arises and their discussion area also gets limited. Boys are interested in discussing about girls and girls are more interested in discussing about boys. At this stage adolescence also made planning for future.

**Social Development:** From the point of view of social development, now the interest of adolescence moves towards outer world instead of family. He can behave rudely towards his family but cannot abandon his friends. He only sees his criticism for him in the guidance of parents. He does not surrender easily; instead of it he became obstinate. He does not compromise with their thinking and challenge them, along with it the feeling of social awaking and religious feelings also arises within him. He composes a group and finds himself much comfortable within it. Therefore he spends much of time outside home. But some teenagers are more aware about their future and spend much of their time in studies. Adolescent choose an ideal at this stage, who can be a teacher, player, scholar or actor. If a proper guidance is not given to this feeling his existence may be on danger.

### 30.2 Problems of Adolescence

Main problems of adolescence are following:

**1. Problems of Self-respect, and Security:** Both these three things make adolescence more worried. From the view of self-respect he wants respect at home or group wherever he lives. Therefore he is eager to be class-monitor, captain or post-holder of student union. He wants that the work done by him should be appreciated; he should get the care and love of parents, teachers and friends. The poor adolescents are more worried about security. As a result they become the victim of inferiority. If these requirements are fulfilled they better adjust otherwise their personality becomes faulty in the absence of these requirements.

**2. Problem of Independence:** At this stage adolescent want to be self dependent and he wants to fulfill the future dreams. He wants a complete freedom to accomplish these dreams, such as they think the advice of others is an interference in his way, but the adolescent is not mature enough so that he can be

## Notes

left alone for taking decisions, it is not appropriate. He will definitely require the guidance of parents and teachers. Adolescent does not understand this fact and creates complications for himself on the way to accomplish his objectives. Therefore he needs to understand his limits and capabilities and get his objective with the help of others. The help taken from others should not be treated as the with ego.

**3. Need for Adventure:** This stage is also called happy or pleasant stage. Adolescent thinks about excess of happiness. He likes to watch movies, go to hotels, read or write novels listening songs, acting. Doing friendship with opposite sex is the strongest determination of an adolescent. Boys are always eager to talk with girls and vice versa. They like to have knowledge regarding sex and for the fulfillment of this they read the sex related literature, watch animal intercourse, nude scenes of movies and discuss this with friends and express their feeling by writing and drawing abuse things on the walls of toilets. They have interest in homosexuality, opposite sex, vulgar talks, writing love-letters etc.

**4. Need for Self-support:** An adolescent feels that now he is mature enough and he should not depend on parents. He also needs money to fulfill his needs, therefore he wants to be self dependent and wants to choose an occupation. Initially these thoughts seem to be an imagination, then as rubbish things and finally he gets serious about achieving his objectives. It is usually seen that the adolescent of poor families do not like their parents occupation, whereas the adolescents of higher class are interested in accepting their parents occupation. This feeling can be seen in the behavior of the adolescents who have strong feeling of it. Adolescents of the big cities are more eager about their goals.

**5. Threat of Being Isolated or Need of Belongingness:** Both the feelings are always influenced on adolescents. They are more dependent on their friends for their emotional satisfaction. They want to get love from others and also want to give the same to others also. They can't bear the sulking of their friends. They cannot concentrate on anything. They feel themselves secure in group and on the contrary if they do not find place in the group or get insulted in the group they become sad sometimes which can be dangerous.

**6. Adherence to Codes and Morals:** Adolescent believes that the moral values and social values are adherence. He has to adjust himself with various values at the same point of time. Together he has to be loyal to the strict discipline of parents, school environment, feelings of friends etc. In this situation at any specific time the feeling that gets strong adolescent moves towards it, but in the context of other values it is considered as contrary. Therefore he finds himself in complication in the endeavor to satisfy all. Therefore it is the responsibility of the parents, teachers and society to take him apart from this strain, for which they are required to understand the personality of the child and respect it.

**7. Too much Fantasy:** Imagination has the priority in adolescence. He moves in the world of dreams. Dreams inspire child and also helpful in partial satisfaction of wills. Adolescent is motivated to write poem, story, article etc. on the basis of dreams. He gets some satisfaction from the difficult jobs that he has performed in dreams. But the excess of dreams is also destructive for adolescents. Adolescent lost in dreams is keeps unsuccessful in realistic life. Developing imagining power is only good when it can be transformed in the form of literature.

**8. Hero-Worship:** Feeling of hero-worship arises within adolescents. They start obeying the model-person. They try to make themselves like their ideal. Ideals for them may be related to various fields. Actor of cinema, historical hero or religious leader, political leader or scholar may be their ideals.



*Did u know?* In India today most of the children have their ideals from the cinema industry. They start accepting their behavior such as, dressing, hair style and speaking.

At collage ideal of adolescent is a teacher, who affects them most. Adolescents always speak about their ideal. Sometimes this Hero-Warship can be seen in the form of love.

Notes

**9. Feeling of Revolt:** Feeling of self-respect arises within adolescent. Now he do not like the control of parents or teachers. V.N. Jha wrote that, “with the introduction of the life the strong feeling of self-respect get birth within him. He likes to make himself free of bounding.” **Kaulsnik** statement Kisore, Adolescent treats elders as a barrier in his way because they want to make control over his freedom. Adolescents start revolt against elders. They start opposing the orders of parents or teachers.

**10. Special Hobbies:** With the increase in age, changes in interest also take place. According to Straing interests of adolescent changes till the age of 15 years but after that certain kind of stability can be seen there. Boys and girls have some same interests and some different interests. Same interests are generally reading story, play, novels, looking good , wearing latest cloths of fashion, love with opposite sex, listening radio, watching cinema etc. Difference in their interest is as: Boys are more interested in playing and exercises and choosing right occupation but girls have special interest in music, art, acting, fashion.

**11. Sex Development:** Sexual development is the important symptom of adolescence. At this period reproductive power enters within reproduction parts of the adolescents. Psychologist believes that the reentry of sexual feeling of childhood enters at the stage of adolescence. Sexual feeling of childhood exists in sleeping form and it wake up at the stage of adolescence. Therefore adolescence is called as the awaking stage of sex-feeling. A blast of sex feeling took place at this period of time. A fever of sex holds adolescent. There are three important stages of sexual development in adolescent, which is as:

**(i) Auto-Erotism:** The first stage of sexual-development in adolescence stage is auto-erotism. Auto-erotism is of two types: according to the first type, adolescent believes that he is most beautiful. He uses makeup to improve this beauty. He finds pleasure in watching him self in front of mirror again and again. He mend himself, sometimes he continuously changes his dress to see which one is most suitable to him. Noyd called this situation as stage of Narcissism. According to the second type, adolescent touches its sexual-parts and feels happiness. Now he feels tickling in touching secret parts. It develops the bad habit like masturbation in adolescent. This habit of masturbation does not affect boys only, girls also became victim of it. Currently psychologist think that masturbation is obvious, still it these kind of un-natural things should not be appreciated.



**Notes** Adolescent touches its sexual-parts and finds sexual pleasure in it. He feels tickling in touching secret parts.

**(ii) Homo-Sexuality:** The second stage of sexual-development is homosexuality. At this stage person of similar sex falls into love with each other. Girls like to live, walk, eat, talk with girls and boys with boys. They can be seen as kissing each other also. Sometimes both two can be seen as engaged in such activities where they are arising their sex feelings together with. There are some factors responsible for homo-sexuality. One of the reasons of homo sexuality is putting girls apart from boys. When there is lack of opportunities to introduce with opposite sex then, at the stage of adolescence child satisfy his sexual needs through homo-sexuality. Same kind of situation can be seen in Indian society. Here boys and girls kept apart. Hence they think that homo-sexuality is the means to satisfy sexual needs. Homosexuality can also be seen in those institutions where there is lack of co-education. Due to the lack of co-education there are minimum opportunities to attract towards opposite sex and getting love. On the basis of the study Remje, Jhingran and Kinsey concluded that the high degree of homosexuality can be seen at the initial stage of adolescence. Kinsey believes that one fourth of the adolescents are affected by homosexuality. The feeling of homo-sexuality is comparatively high in the children who grow quickly, rather than of those who grow slowly. Sometimes the tendency of homo-sexuality enters in elder age after adolescence. This kind of situation is considerable. This kind of unnatural process creates barrier in the process of nature.

**(iii) Hetero-Sexuality:** The matured stage of sex-tendency is hetero-sexuality which develops in later adolescence. It is the obvious and natural stage of sexual relationship. At this stage boys attracts towards girls and girls towards boys, they talk to each other and associate with each other. After getting more friends they used to watch cinema, do kiss and hug each other, some of them engaged in sexual interconnection before marriage. This stage is terrible and they are treating as deficient in society. Due to the fear of physical relationship parents try to control the interconnection of boys and girls which spreads miss-discipline within boys and girls. If boys and girls are appreciated for group working then a positive point of view towards sexual relationship can be develop within them.

### 30.3 Nature of Education in Adolescence or Guiding and Counseling Adolescents:

It is clear from the study of characteristics of adolescence that it is a period when a tide of power rises within child. The correct phase of education should be concern to use this power in better manner, which is helpful in satisfying his needs. Here we will discuss about nature of education:

**1. Education for Physical Development:** Physical growth took place very quickly at the stage of adolescence. Height increases. Exercises should be practiced in schools for complete growth of body. Along with this special attention should be given to sports.

**2. Training of Emotions:** Strong impacts of fear, stress, guilty, love etc. can be found within adolescent. Adolescents show their impacts in various forms. Emotions and momentum of adolescents should not be criticized. Momentum of adolescence should not be suppressed. Teachers should pay attention to the correction of their momentum. Adolescents take interest in study of poem, music; novels, story, and play etc. teacher should be attention towards the correction of these momentums at the time of teaching these subjects. Accordingly arrangements should be made for the transfer of momentum. It should be motivated to serve nation, religion and society.

**3. Moral Education:** Adolescent keeps in psychological quarrel. Therefore it is important to tough them moral education. Moral education should be practical instead of principal. Students should do the practice of truth, self-control, responsibility, justice and punctuality etc. Teachers should also present example in front of students.

**4. Vocational Guidance:** Generally adolescents are worried about their future. It is the responsibility of the school to guide student to choose occupation. In a country like India, where the problem of unemployment is very high selecting an occupation is very difficult task. Teacher should introduce students with various occupations during their education.



*Task*

How much the current education system of India is eligible for personality development of adolescents? Express your views.

**5. Motivation to Read good Literature:** Psychologists believes that adolescents are highly interested in studies. At this stage they should be advised to which kind of literature they should study. They should be inspired to study the biography of great people and literature of fine quality.

**6. Development of Social Traits:** Social values should be developed within adolescents so that they can participate in the process of reestablishment of the society. Adolescents also have the feeling of grouping. Teachers should emphasize on group studies in schools, it can develop values like love, cooperation, coordination etc. within them. By the means of project method the quality of responsibility can be develop within students. It can also develop the quality of leadership. A democratic country

**Notes**

like India needs the people who are eligible to provide good leadership. Therefore in such countries emphasis should be to make people social and capable to take independent decisions .

**7. Use of Proper Teaching Techniques:** At the stage of adolescence the development of mind is on the peak. His all the mental abilities develop fully. Therefore teachers should adopt that teaching technique in which students can get full opportunities for the practice of self assessment, self examining, and thinking and debating. At this stage also full concentration should be made on learning. Imagining power of adolescent also develops. Means teacher can also use it. Students should be provided with opportunities for self-representation. For this co-educational programs should be organized in schools.

**8. Self Discipline and Self Control:** Discipline should not be strictly impose at the period of adolescence. Adolescents oppose the control over them and create the problem of indiscipline. They should be motivated for self-governance. Discipline committee should be organized within schools and some student representatives should be appointed in that. Management of all the programs to be organized in college should be managed by students. This develops responsibility within them and they learn self control.

**9. Behavior of Teacher:** Behavior of teachers affects students deeply. An adolescent should not be treated as a child. Most of the parents treat their adolescents like children. This behavior irritates adolescents. Teachers should treat adolescents as an adult. They should have love and sympathy towards adolescents. This creates stability in the momentum of adolescents and they are inspired to do work. Skills of social behavior of adolescent develop.

**10. Sex-Education:** A high tide of sexual feeling arises during adolescence. Many of the problems of an adolescent are caused by sexual-feelings. This creates in-stability in the behavior, momentum and interest etc. of an adolescent. Scholars believe that there should be arrangements for sex-education of adolescents. An attempt for creating a positive view towards sex should be made through sex-education. Conflicts arise at two points of sex -education: first is that what should be the structure of sex-education and second what should be the appropriate manner for sex-education.

Initial stage of adolescence is full of fear and excitement. Wet dreams occur in boys at adolescence. Due to which his semen falls. Menstruation starts within girls due to which bleeding took place within them. As they are unaware of it, both of them are afraid of it. They believe that it is a kind of disease or symptom of it. Girls feel more humiliation as they have lack of knowledge about periods. Therefore in this situation knowledge about the structure of reproductive organs, their functions and semen related knowledge should be given to girls before menstruation and to the boys before spermatorrhea. A positive point of view towards opposite sex should be developed within adolescents. They should know about reproduction. But when teaching this, it should be keep in mind that sex-education will not create any adverse feeling within them. Along with this arrangements for moral and behavioral education should be made. Some scholars think that co-education should be emphasized. Co-education removes many sex related roomers can be clarified. Parents at home and teachers at schools should perform this duty.

Teachers should engage adolescents in such creative activities by which their will/path of sex-power can be changed. Literature, art, music, social service etc. are such activities through which the will of sex-power of adolescents can be bisected.

### **30.4 Adolescence: A Period of Storm and Stress**

Adolescence is the stage where there is neither the childhood nor the thinking/ understanding maturity exists. In this situation it is very difficult job for the parents to handle adolescents carefully. In this context a slight mistake can give birth to an unpleasant event. Then how will adolescence get a right path?

Often people talk about children and adults. Those adolescents are generally left behind those who does not counted with children and not in adults. Means, the teenagers of thirteen to nineteen years of age, who are passing through physical and mental change, and those whose problem keeps on complicating. Sometimes they became 'problem child' for school and family.

## Notes

Their problems are also strange, such as, "I am a student of 18 years. I am in an inter-cast love. He also likes me, but now days he is attracted towards a girl. I can't live without him. I think of suicide." Or "I am a thirteen years student of class eighth. Nobody likes me at home. Parents always scold me. I could not concentrate on studies. This year I got failed. Often I think of escaping house." In the same way beauty and sex-related questions, problem of not spending time with parents, description of getting in bad company.

They are the children of that age group, who get rebuked at their suggestions that "there is no need to speak between elders....." or "a child should behave like a child." They are scolded on mistakes by saying "you have grown up without any intelligence." Or "When I was of your age. I managed whole household". Teenagers are forced to walk on the edge of sword. Caught between two stools. Adolescence is that phase of the age where childhood is passing away and maturity is knocking to enter. At this stages he afraid of physical changes. Girls get tensed about menstrual cycle. And boys feel same due to the growing beard, moustache. Due to armonal changes they are tensed.They are attracted toward opposite sex. At this age most of the children get fall in love, which is actually not love. They believe the attraction towards different sex and behave according it. Lack of concentration in studies is obvious in this stage.

Disinterest shown by teachers in school and the physical punishment affects deeply. Attraction or enmity for a special-teacher is very obvious. Children of this age require special attention, love, co-ordination, then only they maintain their self-confidence. Adolescent reacts differently for a punishment or insult that he tolerated in childhood. Extrovert children come to give instant reaction while introvert Children suffocate. Tension between parents, social-economic business, intolerant towards child and lack of dialog creates anger in child. They get tired with home environment. As a result they wants to spend most of the time out of the house. For that they start pretending, laying and wants to accomplish their objectives.

They treat the points of their parents as verbal communication. They do not agree with the points their parents. Sometimes they react against parents intensely. In most of the cases, they do that to get attention of parents. It a psychological problem, its solution can be find with intelligence. Strict steps enforce adolescents to take wrong decision such as escaping from house.

At the stage of adolescence children behave emotionally. It is their negative as well as positive point. Creative/reconstructive values can be developed by directing this sensitivity appropriately, also this emotional attitude push them into the world of dreams and made them escaping, lazy and useless. It is good to be fabricating, but the adolescents living in world of imagination get disappointed when the dream comes to an end. In this situation whether it's a girl or a boy it is good to made them busy with their favorite activities. They can be taught painting, signing, dance, writing etc. according their interest. Adolescents interested in sports can get coaching of specific sport, swimming which will help them in physical exercise. As they are busy their mind will stable. According to the time children can be specialist of their field. These interests of adolescence can be their occupation.

Other than personal problems of adolescence question regarding their carrier also arises at this stage of adolescence. Ambitious parents are more aware about the bright future of their child it influences the yielding mind of an adolescent. Selection of subjects in class according career, restlessness of getting desirable subject, selection of school and expectations of parents psychologically put child under pressure.

### Self Assessment

Fill in the blanks:

1. Western scholars called adolescence as .....
2. At the stage of adolescence various problems occur due to .....
3. Age from 12 years to ..... is called as adolescence.
4. At the adolescence attraction towards ..... sex increases.

School environment terrorize adolescents. Selfish teacher emphasizes over private coaching rather than class studies. Insult children again and again in class. They also warn about failing student in the case

**Notes**

of not getting coaching. Aware parents do not take interest in getting coaching from school teachers. In this situation what should be done by child? An adverse impact of the conflict of school and house is that student stop going school. He returns home after spending his school time in a park or cinema hall with friend(s) rather than going school. As a result he get failed in class. Ones he get last in studies then this process keeps on moving. Then parents get worried about.

Adolescent learn very much through various television channels. An adverse aspect of the advertisement telecasted for the precaution from AIDS is that, adolescent starts understanding something about sex-relationship and homosexuality at small age. This little information proved injurious. For the solution of curiosity they start learning adult contents and get misled. At this time attraction towards elder man or women also increases, the excitement of getting experience of sex with so called uncle-aunty finally becomes the reason for aversion, complex, guilty feeling and psychological disorder.

Indian society is not appropriate for the free minded discussion on sex. Date problem, kiss, hug, discussion about male or female friend between father and daughter, telecasted on foreign television channels are not in trend in our middle class society. Sex-education is only in process of thinking. Girls wants to wear shot dress like as on television, wants to make boyfriend, but are often unable to maintain the purity of this relationship. Pregnancy before marriage is a common think in foreign but our society is unable to identify these values right now.

Western countries are experiencing the result of care free sex-relationship. Our country is also now grip in the form of AIDS, but the western countries are now influencing with our beliefs and values. Now they are inclining towards behavioral..... yoga, Dhyan and worship.

It's a psychological truth that at the stage of adolescence children considers them as intelligent and believes parents are comparatively fool. It is the reason that's why they start lying parents, as a result often fall into trouble. Bragging became their habit. Some children do not show their result to their parents till the end, increase numbers by editing and making duplicate signature of parents became obvious things for them. Children make such innocent faces that their teachers and principle also get cheated by them, then cheating parents is not a difficult task.

The offence of violent, theft, robbing also found in this period. Though the number of girls in this area is comparatively very low but the incident of murdering a girl by two girls was breaking news two year ago around the country. Therefore it should also be considered.

Stress and depression can also be seen at the stage of adolescence. Mostly the reason behind it is higher ambition, enmity and expectation more than capacity. Parents expects very much from their children. For them they are horse of the race who has to come first. Children are also hopeful and at in case of failure take impatience decision like escaping from home or suicide.

Now a day's society is passing through Solstice period. Older trends are now breaking, new are in the process of constructing. Older values are breaking down, new are still not formed. In a society where, there is a difference between doing and saying, on doing the same thing results different, it is obvious for the adolescents to get misled.

In this situation a feeling for security should be developed by both the sides i.e. school and family. Child should be trusted so that he can also trust you and himself as well. There should be provision for punishment on mistake it should be reformative and in optimistic manner.

Adolescents are emotional, sensitive and they are full of energy. This energy should be used for noble cause. Education should be purposeful and occupational, which can guarantee for a secure future.

### **30.5 Role of the Teacher**

Enthusiasm of adolescents can be usually arises in the form of ego, arrogance and breaking trends. Sometimes this deformation reaches to the vulgar provoking. It is the duty of the teachers to have an eye of love and an eye of reforms towards the children of this age group. Eye of love because the sweet

relationship can be developing with them and the situation of conflict could not arise and the cross eye of reforms to control their bad habits and drawbacks. The said matter is important because it is not possible to get him or right track without strict attitude. Only by saying with soft attitude they treat it as a joke and cannot understand the seriousness of the mistake and sometimes comment adversely. It is intellectual to get the middle way and the objective of reform can be fulfilled without increasing arrogance.

The situation for the moral education at adolescence is very critical. It cannot be solved by teacher or parents alone. Both of them are afraid of clash. On explaining they show rudeness and come to opposing. A punishment cannot to be given that can harm their future and became a reason for insult. In this situation both the parents are teachers should find a way with together. There should be inter communication among them and a way should be fined so that children do not be rebel. They should be explained and should provide leadership of some work. Generally the feeling of rudeness arises from the will of leadership and children do something wrong to prove themselves better than others. Such children should be introduced with the great people who compromised their ability and life for others and finally became comparatively special than others and achieved glory. Talent should be understood as a double edged sword, who misused it he became culpable, defame and suffered sentence. On the contrary who had used their talent carefully moved ahead, became great. If the talents of such adolescent get right direction then he may do some valuable things in his life which may prove valuable not only for him to the entire society also. Talent is a double edged sword, if it gets the wrong way then it destroys itself and others also, but if it is used for noble causes then it does such things which makes it incredible and to the person glorious. It is really a tuff job to handle such people but, if parents and teachers strive together then it is not so difficult.

## Notes

### 30.6 Summary

- Adolescence enters after childhood. This stage starts from 12 years and continuous to the age of 19 year. Psychologists called it as a stage of problem. Specially from the view of sex, various changes took place during this period due to which life of and adolescence is surrounded by tension, worry, struggle etc. Therefore it is essential to guide adolescents. Western scholars called it 'teen age' also. It is considered as the most difficult stage of development.
- Two types of physical changes occur during adolescence: internal and external. Personality of an adolescent develops in a certain way only because of these changes.
- Fickleness ends and the ability to concentration develop and memory power increases. Adolescents move in the world of imagination more and get victim of it. Imagination develops comparatively more within boys rather than girls. Logical power increases and various interests arise.
- From the view point of social development now the interest of adolescent moves towards outer world by neglecting family. He can adopt rigid behavior towards parents but cannot abandon friends. He only see his insult in the advice of parents. He does not compromise with their thinking and do challenge them. From the view of self-respect, in the family or in group wherever he lives want respect for himself.
- The feeling of insecurity worries poor adolescents every time. As a result they became the victim of feeling of enmity.
- At this stage adolescent expects more happiness and pleasure. He like watching cinema, go to hotels, reading or writing story-novel, listning song, acting etc. His most powerful will is to do friendship with opposite sex. He requires money to be self-dependent. Therefore he wants to the self-dependent. Some adolescents are deeply affected by this feeling and it can be seen in their behavior. Adolescents of big cities are more excited towards their objectives.
- Adolescent treat moral and social values as restriction. He has to deal with various values at a single time. Therefore he tries to satisfy all at a single point of time and get problematic in that. Therefore

**Notes**

it is the responsibility of the teachers, parents and society to understand his behavior and respect him.

- The feeling of Hero-worship arises within adolescents. They start following ideal person. Try to make themselves like their ideal person. Sometimes the effect of this hero-worship can be seen in the form of love.
- With increase in age interests also changes. There are some similar interests of girls and boys and some are different. Boys are more interested in sports, exercise and future occupation but, girls are often interested in music, art, acting, framing activities.
- Important symptom of adolescence is sexual-development. During this period their reproductive parts get the power of reproduction as they get complete development. Sex-feelings get blast during this period.
- To utilize the energy of adolescence, proper structure should be emphasized; this can be helpful in fulfillment of their needs.
- At the stage of adolescence physique develops with a high speed. His height gets more increment. It is important to have arrangement for exercise in schools for healthy development of the body.
- Adolescent remains at a situation of psychological conflict. Therefore it is important to provide them moral education. Moral education should be practical rather than theoretical.
- Generally adolescents are worried about their future. It is the responsibility of the school to guide them to choose a right occupation for them.
- Psychologists believe that adolescents are more interested towards studies. In this situation children should be inspired to read the biography of great people and quality novels.
- From the view of participating in the formation of society, social values should be developed within adolescent. Adolescent also includes group feeling. In schools teachers should emphasize group studies.
- Reason behind various problems of adolescents is tendency of sex. This causes instability in his momentum, behavior, interest etc. scholars believe that there should be arrangements for sex-education for adolescents. An attempt should be made for developing a positive point of view towards sex.
- Adolescents are emotional, sensitive and they are owners of boundless energy. This energy should be properly used. Education should be full of objective and occupational that can guarantee a secure life.

### **30.7 Keywords**

1. **Homosexual** – of the same sex such as woman-woman
2. **Heterosexual** – of opposite sex such as male-female

### **30.8 Review Questions**

1. Explain in detail the changes in adolescence.
2. What problems are faced by adolescent at the stage of adolescence? Explain
3. Explain the nature of education of adolescent and their guidance.
4. Comment on the Period of storm of adolescence.
5. What should be the role of teacher at the stage of adolescence?

**Answers: Self-Assessment**

**Notes**

1. Teen Age
2. Sex
3. 19 Years
4. Opposite

**30.9 Further Readings**



*Books*

1. Psychology – *Dr. Saryu Prasad, Agra Book Store, Agra.*
2. Education Psychology – *S.H. Sinha & Rachna Sharma, Atlantic Publication, New Delhi.*
3. Education Psychology – *S.K. Mangal, P.H.I. Learning Private Ltd., New Delhi.*
4. Adhigamkarta Ka Vikas Evam Shikshan Adhigam Parkiriya – *A.K. Verma, Hindi Book Center, New Delhi.*

## Notes

**Unit-31: Behavioral Problems****CONTENTS**

Objectives

Introduction

31.1 Factors which Adversely Affect Behavior of Child

31.2 Measures to keep Good Behavior of Child

31.3 Summary

31.4 Keywords

31.5 Review Questions

31.6 Further Readings

**Objectives**

After studying this unit, the students will be able to:

- Understand the factors which adversely affect behavior of child.
- Understand the measures to keep good behavior of child.

**Introduction**

Objective of education is to develop a healthy mind within a healthy body. Mental health of a child can be better through education only. Success of education process depends on healthy mind. As said by Psychiatrist Frandsen, "Mental health and success in learning is very closely related". – **Frandsen**

According to this statement, in an education process it is compulsory that the student and the teacher both must be mentally healthy. With an unhealthy mind a student fails to learn and a teacher fails to educate. So it is important to understand the reason for the unhealthy mind and to find the measures to make their minds healthy.

**31.1 Factors which Adversely Affect Behavior of Child**

Factors which Adversely affect behavior of child there are various factors that adversely affect the behavior of child. Which are:

1. **Effect of Inheritance:** Due to the faulty inheritance various diseases like mental infirmity or nerve related diseases are found in child. Because of it he remains unhealthy.



*Notes* Diseases related to inheritance does not affect children necessarily or always.

Notes

2. **Effect of Physical Health:** Physical health has deep relation with mental health. Ailing person finds difficulty in adjusting with new conditions.
3. **Effect of Physical Limitation:** Physical limitation occurs due to accidents or diseases etc. Physical limitation develops the inferiority complex in child which creates a problem for him in adjusting with his friends and society.
4. **Family Related Reasons:** following factors related to the family affects the behavior of child.
  - (a) **Family Environment:** The crises amongst the family members adversely affects the child.
  - (b) **Poverty of Family:** Due to the bad economic condition of family, child becomes rigid or enraged. Feeling of insecurity, lack of confidence and inferiority complex develops within him and all these things adversely affect the mental health of child.
  - (c) **Strict Discipline of Family:** If child gets rebuked in little things it creates the feeling of self-complex within him. In this kind of environment the child gets ill.
  - (d) **Biasness of Parents:** If parents like one of the child more than the others due to several reasons, then also the child getting low care adversely affected by this behavior. In this kind of situation they have jealousy for other children of the family. Pugnacious attitude arises in the mind of child and they always try to harm others.
  - (e) **Excess love of Parents:** Some of the parents give extra care or love to their only child or hardly surviving children or due to ealthiness. It also harms children. There is lack of self dependence within them. They are unable to face the difficulties of life. They got excess care; therefore they do not grow independently.
  - (f) **Effects of the high values of Parents:** Parents believe in high moral values and expect their children to behave according to these. Children of the family feel suffocation under the burden of these high moral values. They walk in the world of imagination, by depriving general life and therefore they cannot handle the social problems. There is always a conflict between the values and reality within their mind. As a result nervous system gets affected and nerve related diseases rises within them.
5. **Psychological Reasons:** There are some other reasons of mental illness other than other reasons, which are helpful in arising mental illness, which are called as tension, emotion-gland, anxiety, mental weakness and tiredness. These are described earlier. All these adversely affect the mind of children.
6. **Social Reasons:** Defective organization and environment of society also affects mental health of the child. Mental health of child can't be good in an unorganized society because there is always the involvement of conflicts, crises, various kind of social evils such as stealing, lying, dishonesty etc. in this kind of environment. Children growing in this kind of environment can be the victim of various flaws such as instability, jealousy, enmity, conflict, misbehave etc. cast and communal conflicts of society, distance between the rich and the poor group, feelings of higher and lower, jealousy, enmity, non-cooperation etc. creates strain in the mind of children. This kind of situation and environment of society is harmful for the mental health of child.

Notes



Task

Do you agree with the statement that class irregularity (Rich or poor class ) and cast irregularity creates the inferiority within children? Comment in its support and against it.

7. **School Related Reasons:** After family, school environment also affects the mental health of the child:

- (a) **School Environment:** If there is excess of regulatory control over child in school, his desires are depressed or he is restricted to participate on subject activities, then his mental health gets disturbed. If there is always fear of discipline in school and classrooms, then the child becomes the victim of mental illness.
- (b) **Defective Syllabus:** If children do not the syllabus according their interest, needs and abilities then they do not take interest in studies and get defeated in exams, this results as mental illness within children. They are always afraid of punishment in case of not learning the subject-matter. These kinds of children get tensed and became the victims of criminal behavior. Often they bunk their classes.
- (c) **Insufficient Teaching-Techniques:** If teacher does not emphasis over personal difference and try to use psychological techniques, then the child have to face difficulties in studies and he became frustrated when he is unable to learn anything.
- (d) **Faulty Examination system:** Today subjective examinations system are in tradition, these are not sufficient to assess the real development and ability of the child. Usually due to the various flaws of examination system, able children do not get promotion in class and by chance due to some reasons students who are not capable get passed in exams. In such circumstances the able students lose their confidence and unable students do not take interest in studies. These kinds of children could not adjust themselves in society.
- (e) **Feeling of Competition:** The feeling of competition which involves the feelings of jealousy, enmity and hate also affects the mental health of children.
- (f) **Effect of the Personality of the Teacher:** If there is instability in the behavior of teacher then he could not properly behave with children. His behavior becomes rigid and bias. If he punish children in little things then the mind of children get unbalanced. In such a situation child became more enraged and rude or always afraid and became the victim of emotion-gland.

### 31.2 Measures to Keep Good Behavior of Child

Family, school and society have an important role in forming the better mental-health of the child. From this point of view the factors that maintain the mental health or the psychological health of child are following:

- (a) **Functions of Family:** Family plays the most importance role in the protection of mental health. Family helps in maintaining mental health in following ways:
  - 1. **Provide Necessary Facilities for Development:** According to the psychologist, feelings like freedom, self-confidence and responsibility of a mentally fit child develops till the age of 6 years. Family has to provide required opportunities, facilities and environment to the child for the fulfillment of the physical and mental necessities of the child.



*Did u know?* In a mentally fit child sense of responsibility develops within the age of 6 years.

## Notes

2. **Family Environment:** The family environment should be peaceful to maintain the mental health of the child and there should be care and love in hearts of the family members for each other. Child should be motivated to do work of his interest. Mental health of parents should be good.
  3. **Behavior of Parents:** Proper behavior of parents towards their children is helpful in development of good mental health of the children. In this relation Kupooswami wrote, "the mother who give love and protection to her children, she contributes in mental development of he children, the father who spends his time and life with his children, he helps in providing a healthy psychological point of view to the children.
- (b) **Role of School:** The process of development of the personality of child begins from family, but it can be successfully achieved in schools by various means. Teachers have the important role in school. He can help in maintaining the mental health and resisting the mental disability of children by emphasizing on following factors. Following things should be kept in mind in schools for the development of mental health:
1. **Good Environment:** School environment affects the physical and mental health very much. There should be arrangement of regular physical education, food, rest, sports, exercise, cleanliness and treatment of diseases in schools.
  2. **Caring Behavior of Teachers:** Teacher should have polite, good and kindly behavior towards students. Teacher should behave equally to the students without being bias.
  3. **Discipline:** School Discipline should be based on democratic principles, means the policy of fear, punishment and suppression should be avoided. For developing the feeling of self-discipline within children, they should be motivated to perform responsibility oriented tasks.
  4. **Balanced and Proper Syllabus:** Syllabus should be according to the age, interest and requirement of the child and it should be flexible. Syllabus should be in such a manner that it can develop all the aspects of personality of children.
  5. **Balanced Home-Work:** Students should not be rewarded with too much home work. The burden of home-work makes them always worry about the punishment in not doing it. It affects their mind adversely.
  6. **Organizing Syllabus Oriented Activities:** Sports, entertainment, scouting and cultural programs should be organized in school. These kinds of programs avail students to present their inspirations, their wills and basic behavior.
  7. **New View Towards the Teaching-Techniques:** Traditional education-techniques should be avoided. Modern psychological techniques should be used, which should be based on the principle of performance, behavior, practice, self-experience and freedom.
  8. **Educational Directions:** Students should be help in choosing subjects according their interest and ability.

## Self Assessment

Mark the following as true or false:

1. High values of parents create the feeling of inferiority.
2. Mentally unfit children also have extraordinary talent.

Notes

- 3. Healthy mind develops in healthy body.
- 4. Burden of excess of home-work creates tension within children.
- 5. Children have the learning capacity; therefore they are able to learn in any kind of environment.
- 9. **Personal Directions:** Children have many problems, to which they are unable to solve. Therefore problems can be easily solved with the help of skilled people and psychologist. This kind of directions should be available in school.
- 10. **Occupational Directions:** An important objective of education is to provide professional skills. The upcoming professional life makes the teenagers worry during their study/learning period. They can be help in choosing right occupation with the means of professional/occupational directions.
- 11. **Parent-Teacher Meeting:** There is special contribution of family and parents in education of the child. Therefore teachers and parents should concern about the education of children at a regular interval. For this purpose a parent-teacher council should be established.
- 12. **Arrangement of Religious and Moral Education:** Child should be introduced with religious and moral thoughts at a regular interval for the moral and behavioral development of the child. By this they can accept healthy feelings and good ideas easily.
- 13. **Formation of Good Habits:** Formation of good habits is important for mental health. Teacher should make efforts to raise the habit of daily life, balanced food and simple living, high thinking.
- 14. **Take Advice from Mental Health Specialists:** Psychologists should be concerned for the psychological problems of children and their studies in schools and their arrangement should be made properly.  

Records of educational progress and behavior of children should be maintained in schools. Teacher and parents can make efforts for the improvement of mental health of children by observing these records.
- 15. **Education of Good Citizenship:** Education for being good citizen should be given in schools from initial stage. As the member of the society, for the development of social qualities education of ideal citizenship and being social should be given through various subjects and programs.

Above mentioned factors are the simple measures for maintaining psychological health and resisting mental illness.

### 31.3 Summary

- Developing a healthy mind in a healthy body is an objective of education. Mental health of the child can be developed only with the help of education.
- As the victim of mental illness both the student and teacher could not succeed in their objective of being educated and educating respectively. Therefore the measures for their mental illness and maintaining their mental health should be concerned.
- There are several factors that affects adversely to the mental health of the child. (1) Effect of family succession, (2) Effect of physical health, (3) Effect of physical deficiency or development, (4) Family related factors, (5) Psychological reasons, (6) Society related reasons, (7) School related reasons.
- Family, school and society have an important role in forming the better mental-health of the child. From this point of view the factors that maintain the mental health or the psychological health of child are (a) Role of Family: (1) Provide necessary facilities for development, (2) Family Environment, (3) Behavior of Parents. (b) Functions of School: 1. Good Environment, 2. Caring/Lovingly Behavior of Teachers, 3. Discipline, 4. Balanced and Proper Syllabus, 5. Balanced Home-Work, 6. Organizing

Syllabus oriented Activities, 7. New view towards the teaching-techniques, 8. Educational directions, 9. Personal Directions, 10. Occupational Directions, 11. Parent-Teacher Meeting 12. Arrangement of Religious and Moral Education.

Notes

### **31.4 Keywords**

1. **Subjective** – Self Dependent.
2. **Democratic Principle** – Based on Equality. Run by the democratic process.

### **31.5 Review Questions**

1. Comment on the factors which adversely affect behavior of child.
2. Describe the measures to keep good behavior of child.

### **Answers: Self-Assessment**

1. True
2. False
3. True
4. True
5. True

### **31.6 Further Readings**



Books

1. Education Psychology – S.K. Mangal, P.H.I. Learning Private Ltd., New Delhi.
2. Education Psychology – S.H. Sinha & Rachna Sharma, Atlantic Publication, New Delhi.
3. Psychology – Dr. Saryu Prasad, Agra Book Store, Agra.
4. Adhigamkarta Ka Vikas Evam Shikshan Adhigam Parkiriya – A.K. Verma, Hindi Book Center, New Delhi.

Notes

## Unit-32: Thinking, Reasoning and Problem-Solving

### CONTENTS

Objectives

Introduction

32.1 Nature of Thinking

32.2 Types of Thinking

32.3 Tools of Thinking

32.4 Language and Thinking

32.5 Thinking and Education

32.6 Reasoning and Problem-Solving

32.7 Types of Reasoning

32.8 Training of Logical Thinking

32.9 Meaning of Problem-Solving

32.10 Methods of Problem-Solving

32.11 Summary

32.12 Keywords

32.13 Review Questions

32.14 Further Readings

### Objectives

After studying this unit, the students will be able to:

- Understand the nature and types of Thinking.
- Know the tools of Thinking.
- Understand the Language, Education and Thinking.
- Know the Reasoning Problems and Types of Reasoning.
- To obtain information concerning the training of logical thinking.
- Problem - to understand the methods of solution.

## Introduction

Notes

Human thinking has important contribution in the development of the world. Human being is considered as great among all the species only because of its thinking-power. He is a thinker by nature. This power is a god gift to him. According to the psychology, thinking is a mixture of sensation, visibility, concentration, memory and imagination etc. There is a purpose in thinking activity of a person. He uses thinking to accomplish this purpose. A person has to make efforts to fulfill his willing or aim and to get success in this kind of work, he has to plan in beginning and has to work carefully for this planning, and then he gets succeed. Therefore it is important to emphasis on thinking and logical-power of children with the means of education.

### 32.1 Nature of Thinking

In previous chapters we discussed about learning process and knowledge development related phases such as, learning and interest, habit, construction, sensation and visibility, memory, imagination etc. these activities are included in the difficult process of learning. That activity or process in which we use our past experience to face new conditions and to solve a problem, that mental process is called **thinking**.



Notes

Children should be trained in educational activities for thinking, so that they can use their acquired knowledge and can acquire more knowledge. Some children may naturally be good thinker then others; thinking-power and concept-formation can be developed by intellectual training.

**Psychologist T.C. Morgan** presents his thought in this regard as: “Actually the word used in daily life ‘thinking’ includes detailed configuration of various activities.” At one side it means remembering or something more than memory. For example, sign boards on the roads displaying “Think, carelessness means accident”, here think means to think about the accident or keep in mind. In the same way if someone says that ‘tell after thinking’ then he says about to learn that thing which we have learnt somewhere. Some kind of thinking is involved in these situations of memory. On the other side the word ‘thinking’ represents that serious thinking process, in which a scientist is engaged in solving a complicated problem. He clashes with the principles of mathematics or think about various procedures, by which he can solve the problem.

Whether thinking is easy or complicated, a fact is always involved in it, a mediator activity. At the time of thinking we connect past problem with current situation. Gap between Stimulated situation and the activities we do for it, is filled by mediator activities. When we are engaged in solving a problem these activities creates those elements, which we possibly do it with trial and error method. Here is a popular example to explain it:

“Suppose you have to solve a jigsaw puzzle. The difficult way to solve the puzzle is to join it’s every part actually and see that it is matching with the other part or not, it is to solve the puzzle by ‘trial and error’. If there is large number of parts in this puzzle, then it will take more time and have to do thousands of ‘trial and error’ attempts. Possibly you will perform some of the activities out of it. But you will select two or three possible activities which are closer to the right activities, mostly you will think. There will be several activities in your mind, in which you can put parts like actually you are putting in ‘trial and error’ method. You will think before putting them by hand, that can they will be getting their right place or not? So you will do by thinking that you are placing the pieces to the right place. In the same way we can take example of the game of chess where we will think about the place of pawn before putting them at right place.

**Notes**

From above examples it is clear that how a thinking process work as the mediator.

In the same way **Psychologist Hughes** has defined the word thinking process with the help of an example of a puzzle: our thinking process keeps on moving to solve a word group puzzle. We think again and again about the suitability of a word and then we concentrate on the thought included in a particular word. In this way various solutions of a problem arises within our mind. But it is not sure that the identified word is suitable to fill the gap. If you got excellence in finding group puzzles then it is also possible that the word in your mind is not correctly right after re-thinking. Therefore attempt to find right word and thought involve in word continuously run within the mind and at the end a solution which is right from every aspect suddenly rises.

**Thinking is a cognitive process.** It includes obvious and imagination knowledge. In other words thinking or thought is involved in every mental activity of a person. It is the activity of human mind that prepares us to face any condition. Because of the thinking power a person imagine a possible activity of livelihood or prepare mental sketch of it and tries to adjust according to the upcoming circumstances.



*Did u know?* Animals learn by reality and mistakes and solve the problems. But human being ends 'Trial and error' activity at ideational level. At the time of thinking problems are solved with the help of symbols or language.

When thinking is made on a problem, various solutions arises within mind and the solutions which are not appropriate, we give up them. In this way we try to solve the problems with possible solutions. Therefore we can say that thinking is that mental activity, through which we can solve problems. To clear the meaning of thinking it is important to study the definitions of various psychologists. Which are as:

- (1) **Warren:** "Thinking is an ideational activity which is symbolic in character, initiated by the problem or task the individual is facing, involving some trial and error but under directing influences of his problem set and ultimately leading a conclusion or solution of the problem."
- (2) **Ross:** "Thinking is mental activity in its cognitive aspect."
- (3) **C.W. Valentine:** "In Psychological discussion it is well to keep the term thinking" for an activity which consists essentially of a connected flow of ideas which are directed towards end of purpose."

According to **Woodworth** thinking process involves following elements:

1. Looking towards an objective or goal.
2. Make efforts to get that objective.
3. Remember earlier experiences or inspected facts/elements.
4. Adjust the past experience into the new pattern.
5. Internal talking and posses.

Thinking process includes these elements. Educationalist Divi has also explained about the five argument situation within human brain in his book 'How We Think'.

According to D.V. thoughts are completed by five steps:

1. Thinking begins with a problem or trouble.
2. Complete definition of situation arises within mind.
3. A description of possible solutions prepared on the basis of various advises.
4. Best solution is presented for use after analyzing all the solutions.
5. Solution is accepted or rejected according to the result of re-examination and use.

In this way thinking is a difficult mental job, which starts with the arising of a problem and continuous till the end of solution. In this way above steps are helpful in the solution of problems.

In education, knowledge earning should be emphasizes by keeping this in mind.

Notes

Thinking process is mainly possible at two levels. First stage is Preventive, Mr. Ross defined it as: "Mental activities related to those objects which are present with senses and affect them", in this thoughts reaches to the mind through sensations. Sensation is the objective form of thinking. Appearing and sensation has been already discussed in previous chapter. Second stage is Conceptual. To understand this we have to concentrate on conceptual process and means of thinking. These are explained further.

**The Art of Thinking:** as it said in above example that high thinking is made within mind during finding the answer of word group puzzle and thus, a person get a chance of introspection, due to which he is at a position to find out the following step in thinking process. Psychologist Hughes has defined these steps as:

1. Appreciation of a problem
2. Collection of adequate relevant data
3. Arriving at a conclusion
4. Testing the conclusion

With the help of above steps we can improve the thinking-process of children. These steps are explained as:

**1. Appreciation of Problem:** Arising a problem is the result of experience and activities of person or whatever he thinks is useful. Child also appreciates a problem in the same way. Initially his problems are related to existing objects/things, not with words or not existing thoughts. For example, a child is play with water near the tap. He sees that water is coming through the tap. Then he questions in the mind or verbally from where water is coming? For him it is a problem which increases his curiosity. He can take help from somebody to solve this problem, but he himself think on it. When somebody starts him telling about how water is coming then he tries to understand the things and he starts thinking. Therefore introduce child with problem in such a way, in which he will really take interest and curiosity can born within him and will do stimulus work to solve the problem. As the physical and mental development take place then he also tries to think without actual things. At this time words became meaningful and a specific condition can be imagines. Therefore teachers need to choose subject-matter smartly and create problems for the thinking of child.

**2. Collection of Adequate Relevant Data:** After understanding problem we start collecting those elements/facts can be helpful in solving the problem. Various advise appear in our mind will be controlled with our purpose. Facts can be collected by memory, study, inspection or questions. Here teacher have to see that student have right grasp the problem and then motivate them to awoke memory to collect required/important facts, instruct to repeat earlier gained knowledge, advise to study good books is the responsibility of teacher. Remembered facts are the main things of thinking-process. Here in education example of project method can be supposed. In this method work has a purposeful scheme/plan. Child selects a work of his choice. This work has a purpose. Problem is putted in front of him to fulfill the objective/purpose. He actively try to participate in solving the problem, thus gets knowledge of various subjects. When a problem arises in front of children then they are deeply engaged in collecting information and they tries to see the relation of one item of knowledge with another item.

**3. Arriving at a conclusion:** Teacher should tell the process of creating record of elements collected earlier. With the help of it an item can be compared with another and it helps in reaching to conclusion. For example research related work and problem in science related scheme are presented, like research on physical and chemical equipments used in daily life, study of various plants and tree of garden. What conditions are required in budding of a seed? In this experiment effect of water, air, light, temperature etc. factors are observed and a conclusion came brought out by fine inspection of those observations. In this way children learn by their interest and efforts and get benefit from their experiences.

**4. Testing and Conclusion:** Inspection of the result of thinking process is also important. These results should not against the pre-defined truths. If some kind of mistakes are there, then re-inspection of

**Notes** collected facts and proper directions should be motivated. Solutions are accepted or rejected according to the re-inspection, experiment and result.

## 32.2 Types of Thinking

Psychologist told about the following types of thinking:

**1. Perceptual Thinking:** this kind of thinking is observed/present in animals and kids. Base of this kind of thinking is obvious knowledge. Here sensation and obviousness works. A person thinks after seeing an object or condition. In this any kind of word or name is not used. This kind of thinking is based on past experiences. For example, a child burnt by fire, afraid by watching fire again. In the same way when a child does not complete home work, then he is afraid of punishment, his fear involves thinking. This thinking is of primary stage.

**2. Imaginative Thinking:** In this kind of thinking there is no object or condition is present obviously. There is lack of apparent. Here past experiences are used through memory and thinking is made through mental talent. As objects are not present obviously, objects are imagined with the help of efforts. For example, every day father get something for child while return to the home at evening therefore at the time of evening child waits for father and think about the object. It is imaginary thinking.

**3. Conceptual Thinking:** It is the best kind of thinking. Earlier established is used in conceptual thinking. First of all thoughts are tied with sense perception. Slowly they reached to the concepts and the person reaches to a conclusion by keeping the future in mind by thoroughly inspecting an object or situation on the basis of past experience. To understand conceptual thinking it is also important to know about 'concept knowledge'.

**4. Logical Thinking:** It is the most outstanding form of thinking. Divi defined it as 'Reflective Thinking'. To understand the complicated process of thinking, it is important to study concept establishment, argument and problem solution subjects.

## 32.3 Tools of Thinking

Often some kind of problems may arise during finding solution of a problem like, diversion of mind due to various stimulations or to be restless etc. help of some tools is to be taken to defeat these problems, these are called main tools of thinking. These are as following:

**1. Image:** person sees the object in his practical life creates an image of it within his mind. According to Mr. **Drever**, "image is the knowledge in the absent of object, which have fixe in our sense perception in beginning." Different images related to different sensations form within the mind of a person. Like, touch, sight, hate, audition, smell and taste related images of sensations. Generally sight imaging is considered as chief imaging amongst all these sensations **Raus** said - "primary memory images can be considered as substitute to real sense perception". For example when I see a book then it is a sensation, but if I close my eyes then I see the book again and now it is a visual. One of the important sign of visuals is that it is realized as it is not present for senses. These images are called as tools of thinking. There is a question present in relation to image is, what is the role of image in thinking? Are they mediator activities in thinking? Some scholars have supported it and some opposed it. To answer this question, psychologists have made sober experiments on the importance of images in thinking.

**2. Symbols and Signs:** Symbols or signs are also helpful as the means of thinking. These are presented as picture, words or by the means of objects. Symbol is the sensation that represents the objects in its absence. Like, our thinking is totally different while we see the Red, Yellow and Green signals at traffic crossing.

**Psychologist Woodworth** defined symbolic means in thinking with an example as: “if you are explaining how your car get collide with another car, then you say : it is a road and it is another road, assume that this book is my car and the second book is second car”, here two types of objects and words are used as the symbol in place of the absent object. Book and the said place indicate the symbol of incident and these words ‘my car and another car’ are the oral signs that indicate the absent objects. Thus we see words and picture are the means of thinking.

**3. Language:** language is the primary means of thinking. We establish relation between image and thought. A person presents his thoughts with the help of language. Every word of the language is a definite perception-symbol of an image or concept. Person with higher language-knowledge will have higher percentage of success in thinking. More description on language and thing is made ahead.

**4. Concept:** Concept is an important base of thinking. Concept is also called general notion. In the construction of general concepts mind brought out the prominent values involve in the individual images, mixes it with the general values involve in it. Thus we see in the formation of concept equalization and differentiation have important role. Form of concept and concept-formations will be defined ahead.

### 32.4 Language and Thinking

Language forms the thinking. Language is an important tool of thinking. Person thinks with the help of language. Language is the means to express thinking clearly. Some psychologist called thinking as inner speech. The person having more language-power or word-power can express his thinking in easy and clear way. Language may be verbal or symbolic. Often people debate on a difficult problem or express through hand or face posture.

It indicates that a form of language is used in thinking. Various forms of thinking are coordinated through language. Language is a kind of symbol, through which a person can express or present his emotions and thoughts. A person express his thinking or thought through the words present in his mind. **Valentine** expressed his thoughts related to language and thinking as: “Language is helpful in the formation of concept. A word became the central ideal, whether it is developed in the form of image or proposed activity or in the form of thinking associate”. For example, when we say the words book, copy or pen individually then he understand the meaning, even these things are not shown to him. He has the image of book in front of his and he has the concept of book. At the time we say ‘book’ he understands that there are pages in the book and is an object of reading. Language is helpful in this kind of thinking. Here the word ‘book’ work as a symbol for book and the help of symbol is taken in thinking process. There is a deep relation between language and thinking and without language thinking is impossible. But some psychologists believe that thinking is possible without language. Usually there are some conditions where we think without the use of language. Sometimes we do not find the right words to express our thoughts. But it is all pervasive that language is very important in thinking. According to this fact there are following works of language in thinking:

1. Thoughts are expressed by language.
2. Language is the means of discussion; thoughts are expressed only with the help of language.
3. Language is assistance to thinking.
4. Formation of concepts is based on language-development.
5. Language has more importance in concept-thinking. We finally name the general concept at the last mental process of concept formation by using the word or language.
6. Language is helpful in remembering.
7. Language is the means of conservation of thinking. Language minimizes the need of thinking. We can express extensive thoughts in fewer words.
8. Thinking can be expended by language.

**Notes**

9. Language helps to concentrate towards thinking. In the process of thinking internal speech is helpful in the situation of indirection.

In this way we can say that concept and language has close relationship and language and concept has important role in development of thinking. These are the two main tools of thinking.

### **32.5 Thinking and Education**

In the field of education thinking is of extreme importance. It is the important mental activity of a person. Education has the highest post in mental development. It is important to improve thinking-power for the smooth functioning of education. Teacher should take following steps to develop the thinking power of the students:

**1. Emphasis on the Development of Concept and Experience:** Concept knowledge and experience of bulky objects are of much importance in thinking-process. Therefore teachers should create this kind of situations in front of student and give opportunity of inspection so that student can make concept by personal experience.

**2. Help in Concept-Formation:** Teacher should help in concept formation by scientific way. Concepts are based on personal experiences. Therefore they should provide various facilities to get experience. Teacher should clearly teach about each and every subject. Thinking power develops with the help of concept-knowledge.

**3. Emphasis on Language-Development:** Language is called the foundation of thinking. Thinking can be only expressed with the help of language. Language and thinking have deep relationship. A proper dictionary is required to the memory of past experience. Therefore a good, interesting and proper teaching technique should be adopted to increase the dictionary of students.

**4. Remove the Habit of Cramming:** It is responsibility of the teacher to look after the habit of cramming within the students; they should be motivated to learn by understanding. Often, students cram the definition in subjects like science; grammar etc. and the teacher also make them to cram the definition without any related experience. This kind of knowledge is not clear, student use this kind of knowledge without any thinking as it is. Various examples should be explained to the students to attract them towards the general law, so that they themselves can create definition. This process is helpful in thinking development.

**5. Create the Curiosity:** Teacher should create such kind of situations in front of the student so that, it can create curiosity within the student towards subject and he can make thinking to understand the subject.

**6. Development of Concentration and Interest:** It is very important to have concentration and interest for thinking. If we don't have interest in a subject then we cannot concentrate on it. Therefore teacher required to create concentration and interest for usual thinking, through proper teaching-method.

**7. Inspiration:** Thinking needs inspiration. We think on the solution of a problem by an inspiration. Therefore child should be motivated for acquiring knowledge and problem solution.

**8. Provide Opportunities for Argument and Debate:** Teachers should provide opportunities for debate in education, subjects related to syllabus. Such as, by organizing group discussion, debate competition etc. in this way students get the opportunities for thinking and discussion related to syllabus and other general knowledge.

**9. Handing over the Responsibility:** Those activities where responsibility is involved should be handed over to the students. This will motivate the healthy thinking.

**10. Provide Opportunities for Thought-Expression:** students should be provided with the opportunities to express their view freely. There should be no unreasonable disturbance in their freedom. **Nobel and Mauntesri** supported the principle of self-working and freedom for the self-expression of children in education.

**11. Concentrate on teaching technique/process:** Teacher should take help of proper teaching-processes by psychological method for the development of thinking-power. Thoughtful questions should be asked to the students and questions should be asked differently in exams. Thinking ability can be developed by proper teaching-method.

Notes

## 32.6 Reasoning and Problem-Solving

Reasoning is the best form of thinking. Reasoning is a process of thinking, the concepts earned in it are used to define a situation and for solution. When concepts are organized in a proper manner within the mind then a new problem is solved with the help of these. A person has to solve many problems in his daily life. Various problems are to be faced, so that adjustment can be made with situations. Problem is that situation for which a person does not have a predefined solution.

When a problem arises then a person needs to consider about it. In this situation of reasoning-thinking arises. For example, "my pen which was on the study table lost somewhere. Pen is valuable therefore I have a problem to find the pen and I make search for it and I think who have taken my pen? May be the mate, who entered the room for dusting, or my sister, who have exam today, then I reached to the conclusion that, I am getting late for school, I will definitely get the pen from the younger sister. Thus, the current problem will be solved. It is an reasoning. Woodworth called reasoning as '**mental exploration**'. In simple words an attempt to made conclusion by examining the current situations on the basis of past experience or memory subject, with the help of reasoning. Getting a conclusion is the major element of reasoning. To reach on a conclusion it is important to have a well organized mental activity and managed reasonable thinking process. Various philosophers have given various definitions of reasoning to understand reasoning:

1. **N.L. Munn:** "Reasoning is combining past experiences in order to solve a problem which can-not be solved by mere reproduction of earlier solutions."
2. **Bernard:** "Reasoning is a process of delaying response until data are arranged into a new combination so that a clearly perceived goal can be reached."
3. **Gates and Others:** "Reasoning is productive thinking in which previous experiences are organized or combined in new ways, to solve a problem."

## 32.7 Types of Reasoning

**1. Inductive Reasoning**—In this kind of reasoning a person finds a principle or general rule/law, on the basis of the elements or examples, which he had find with his personal experience. It is believed that there is no pre-defined principle in this kind of reasoning. Coming of reasoning have three levels: (1). Inspection, (2).experiment, (3). Generalization. In this first of all elements are inspected. A principle is imagined after inspection and its reality is tested after experimenting/using it. A general principle is defined as a result of experiment/use. Example of inductive reasoning can be seen in the education of language, such as teacher has to define noun in grammar. Teacher does not tell the definition of noun in beginning. Students are firstly introduced with the name of thing, place and persons, then students are helped to reach the conclusion with the help of question, that the name of a thing, person or place is called noun.

**2. Deductive Reasoning**—Pre-defined thinking or principles are accepted in this kind of reasoning and the reality of an object or situation is proved on the basis of it. For example, every person is mortal. Ram is a person, means he is mortal.

On the above bases of reasoning, in the words of **Bhatia** we can say that "Inductive process is the process of discovery/research and 'Deductive process' is the process of experiment and evidence".

Notes

### **32.8 Training of Logical Thinking**

Mental power of child develops only with the help of reasoning and thinking. Therefore in education for thinking-process it is important to develop logical-power. Following things to be consider for logical thinking-power of children:

1. **Present the Proper Problem:** For logical thinking expected problem should present to him by considering his past experience, mental and educational level.
2. **Development of Concentration, Attachment and Research:** Teacher should avail required opportunities for the development of these tendencies. Logical thinking cannot be made in the absence of these tendencies.
3. **Present the Practical Problems:** The problems present in front of students should be related to their current practical life and should be useful.
4. **Use of Proper Teaching-Techniques:** in the development of logical thinking power problem based activities such as, project-activities, question-answer-process and Speech competition, debate competition, discussion programs are very helpful. Reasoning power is used in these and required opportunity for the development of imagining power and conceptual thinking are available.
5. **Principle of Innovation:** To encourage the interest for a problem within children new problems should be presented. They should avail the opportunities to 'learn by doing' and learn by experience' and they should be motivated for it.
6. **Deep Study of Subject:** Children should be motivated for the deep study of the related subjects according to the situation and requirement. It helps in the development of logical-thinking.
7. **Use of Inductive Process:** Teacher should use inductive process for teaching syllabus. Teachers should not put the solution of a problem, infect should ask to the students for solution. This process develops the maximum logical-thinking.
8. **Scientific use of Reasoning and Problem-Solution:** Teacher should teach about the scientific-process of reasoning. Students themselves can consider a principle with the help of this process.

### **Self Assessment**

Fill in the blanks:

1. Man accomplish the ..... activity at the level of thinking.
2. In relation to the thinking Ross said that thinking is the ..... aspect of mental-process.
3. .... is an important means of thinking.
4. .... is the best form of reasoning.

### **32.9 Meaning of Problem-Solving**

Problem-solution is an important part of reasoning. It has been cleared that the aim of reasoning/ argument is the solution of a problem. Stanley Grey has defined problem-solution as: "Problem-solving is a process of overcoming difficulties that appear to interfere with the attainment of a goal.

D.V. have explained about five reasoning situations and reasoning is called as logical-thinking. It is explained earlier. Problem is solved only with the help of logical thinking.

### 32.10 Methods of Problem Solving

Problem solving has following methods:

1. **Solution of problem without learning and by nature/behavior:** the species of lower section use this kind of method to solve their problem. For example, snake and Honey Bee are always ready to sting for their protection.
2. **Trial and error Method:** Tharndike used a cat and confirmed that animals solve their problem by trial and error. Similarly when men try to solve a problem at that time a process of trial and error runs in the mind of men in the form of thinking which is problem related, out of which any one solution solve his problem.
3. **Perception Method:** problem can be solved by this process. In this relation the experiment made by Koehler on chimpanzee is remarkable.
4. **Scientific Method:** today scientific method is used for problem-solution in every field. In this work is done in a well managed manner from the beginning to the end. In this first of all the problem related facts are collected by actual inspection, after that grouping of the facts made according their similarities and finally a conclusion is brought out by analyzing it.

At the end we can say that training of logical thinking should be given in education. Teacher should be well trained in scientific method of problem-solving and it should be used for every subject and levels as per the requirement.

### 32.11 Summary

- Thinking-process has an important role in the development of the world. Human being is considered as the best amongst all the species only because of thinking-power. It is a thinker by nature. This power is a god gift to him. According to the psychology thinking is a mental process in which sensation, obviousness, concentration, memory and imagining are involved.
- The mental process, in which we use the conclusions of our past experience to face new situations and to solve a problem, is called 'thinking'.
- Thinking is a cognitive process. It includes conceptual and imaginary knowledge. In other words, thinking or thoughts is involved in every mental activity of a person. It is the mental process of a person that makes us ready to face a new situation. Because of the thinking a person can think of a possible event or draw a picture in mind and tries to adjust according to the situation. Animals solve their problems by trying and mistake. But human beings complete this process at ideational level. Symbols or language is used to solve the problem at the time of thinking.
- Psychologist said about the following types of thinking: Obvious thinking, imaginary thinking, conceptual thinking, and logical thinking.
- In the field of education thinking is the important activity of human mind. Thinking has the highest post in mental development. It is very important to develop thinking power for the smooth functioning of educational activities.
- Reasoning is the best form of thinking. Reasoning is a process of thinking, the concepts earned in it are used to define a situation and for solution. When a problem arises then a person needs to consider about it. In this situation of reasoning-thinking arises.
- Getting a conclusion is the major element of reasoning. To reach on a conclusion it is important to have a well organized mental activity and managed reasonable thinking process.
- Mental power of child develops only with the help of reasoning and thinking. Therefore in education for thinking-process it is important to develop logical-power.

Notes

**32.12 Keywords**

1. **Thought** – Idea, Reason.
2. **Inductive Reasoning** – Generalization.
3. **Deductive Reasoning** – Reasoning from the general to the particular (or from cause to effect).

**32.13 Review Questions**

1. What do you mean by thinking? Define the nature of thinking.
2. Define the types of thinking.
3. Describe the tools of thinking.
4. Define the importance of language as a medium of thinking.
5. Describe the importance of thinking in education.
6. Describe problem solving through reasoning.
7. Define the methods of problem solving.

**Answers: Self-Assessment**

1. Trial and Error
2. Cognitive
3. Language
4. Thinking

**32.14 Further Readings**



*Books*

1. Importance of Education for Children and Information – *Seema Chopra, Hindi Book Center, New Delhi.*
2. Education Psychology – *S.H. Sinha & Rachna Sharma, Atlantic Publication, New Delhi.*
3. Education Psychology – *S.K. Mangal, P.H.I. Learning Private Ltd., New Delhi.*
4. Adhigamkarta Ka Vikas or Shikshan Adhigam Parkiriya – *A.K. Verma, Hindi Book Center, New Delhi.*

**LOVELY PROFESSIONAL UNIVERSITY**

Jalandhar-Delhi G.T. Road (NH-1)  
Phagwara, Punjab (India)-144411  
For Enquiry: +91-1824-521360  
Fax.: +91-1824-506111  
Email: [odl@lpu.co.in](mailto:odl@lpu.co.in)

